THINKING ARABIC TRANSLATION

A course in translation method: Arabic to English

James Dickins
Sándor Hervey
Ian Higgins

FACULTY OF ARTS AND HUMANITIES
Dr. Binibrahim Archive

THINKING ARABIC TRANSLATION

A Course in Translation Method: Arabic to English

James Dickins
Sándor Hervey
Ian Higgins

Routledge
Taylor & Francis Group
LONDON AND NEW YORK

FACULTY OF ARTS AND HUMANITIES
WWW.KAUFS.ORG
Dr. Binibrahim Archive

First published 2002
by Routledge
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4RN

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada
by Routledge
270 Madison Ave, New York, NY 10016

Reprinted in 2005

Transferred to Digital Printing 2006

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group

© 2002 James Dickins, Sándor Hervey, Ian Higgins

Typeset in Times by Ian Higgins, Cupar, Fife
Printed and bound in Great Britain by TJI Digital, Padstow, Cornwall

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

Publisher's Note
This book has been prepared from camera-ready copy provided by the authors

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
A catalog record for this book has been requested.

ISBN 0-415-25064-1 (hbk)
0-415-25065-x (pbk)

Dr. Binibrahim Archive

Contents

Acknowledgements xi

Introduction 1

1 Preliminaries to translation as a process 6

1.1 Basic definitions 6
1.2 Inter-semiotic translation 7
1.3 Intralingual translation 8
1.4 Interlingual translation 10

Practical 1.1 Intralingual translation: 'Today I attempted' 12
Practical 1.2 Gist translation: تغيير الحكومة المصرية 13

2 Preliminaries to translation as a product 15

2.1 Degrees of freedom in translation 15
2.1.1 Interlinear translation 15
2.1.2 Literal translation 16
2.1.3 Free translation 16
2.1.4 Communicative translation 17
2.1.5 From interlinear to free translation 17
2.2 Equivalence and translation loss 18
2.2.1 Equivalence 19
2.2.2 Translation loss 21
2.2.2.1 Translation by omission 23
2.2.2.2 Translation by addition 24
2.2.2.3 Controlling translation loss 25

Practical 2.1 Literal vs balanced translation: وتميز حكم المحافظين 25
Practical 2.2 Degrees of freedom in translation: ماذا ستقول أمك 27

Dr. Binibrahim Archive

3 Cultural transposition 29

3.1 Basic principles 29
3.2 Exoticism 29
3.3 Calque 31
3.4 Cultural transplantation 32
3.5 Cultural borrowing 32
3.6 Communicative translation 35
3.7 Transliterating names 35

Practical 3.1 Cultural transposition: وحين كان يسترد أنفاسه 36
Practical 3.2 Cultural transposition: وليس هناك إخصائي 38

4 Compensation 40

4.1 Basic principles 40
4.2 Categories of compensation 44

Practical 4.1 Compensation: كنت دائماً ضد الرئيس رابين 49
Practical 4.2 Compensation: أن ترى واحدا يجري 51

5 Denotative meaning and translation issues 52

5.1 Denotative meaning 52
5.1.1 Synonymy 52
5.1.2 Hyperonymy-hyponymy 54
5.1.3 Particularizing translation and generalizing translation 56
5.1.4 Partially overlapping translation 57
5.2 Semantic repetition in Arabic 59
5.2.1 Other forms of parallelism 62

Practical 5.1 Denotative meaning: تقف البشرية اليوم 63
Practical 5.2 Denotative meaning and semantic repetition: وبهذا الاسلوب البارز 64

6 Connotative meaning and translation issues 66

6.1 Basic principles 66
6.2 Attitudinal meaning 66
6.3 Associative meaning 68
6.4 Affective meaning 69
6.5 Allusive meaning 70
6.6 Collocation and collocative meaning 71
6.7 Reflected meaning 72

Dr. Binibrahim Archive

6.8 Other types of connotative meaning 73

Practical 6.1 Collocation: (a) وتشمل هذه النظم, (b)تقوم العديد 74
Practical 6.2 Collocation: (b) أن الحرب دائما, (b) خسرت الرئاسة 75
Practical 6.3 Connotative meaning: الرحلة 75

Introduction to the formal properties of texts 77

7 Phonic/graphic and prosodic issues in translation 80

7.1 The phonic/graphic level 80
7.1.1 Alliteration, assonance, and rhyme 81
7.1.2 Onomatopoeia 85
7.2 The prosodic level 86
7.2.1 Rudiments of English and Arabic versification 88
7.2.1.1 English 89
7.2.1.2 Arabic 90
7.2.2 Translating Arabic verse 91

Practical 7.1 The phonic/graphic and prosodic levels: دع الايام تفعل ما تشاء 93
Practical 7.2 The phonic/graphic level: تتابعت الاعوام 95

8 Grammatical issues in translation 96

8.1 Introduction 96
8.2 The grammatical level 96
8.2.1 Words 97
8.2.2 Grammatical arrangement 97
8.2.3 Morphological repetition 100
8.2.3.1 Pattern repetition 100
8.2.3.2 Root repetition 103
8.2.3.3 Suffix repetition 108
8.2.4 Lexical repetition 108
8.2.4.1 Lexical item repetition 109
8.2.4.2 Phrase repetition 111

Practical 8.1 Lexical item and other forms of repetition: حوار الثقافات 112

9 Sentential issues in translation 113

9.1 The sentential level 113
9.2 Textual variables on the sentential level 114

Dr. Binibrahim Archive

9.2.1 Prosodic features 114
9.2.2 Theme and rheme 116
9.2.2.1 Sentence stress 117
9.2.2.2 Emphatic preposing 118
9.2.2.3 Basic theme-rheme translation issues 119
9.2.3 Foregrounding and backgrounding 119
9.2.4 Interaction of theme-rheme and main-subordinate elements 121
9.2.5 Translation of Arabic coordinate clauses 124

Practical 9.1 Theme and rheme, and mainness and subordination: لقد دفعت السعودية 125
Practical 9.2 Theme and rheme, mainness and subordination, coordination: وكأن القدر 126

10 Discourse and intertextual issues in translation 127

10.1 Introduction 127
10.2 The discourse level 127
10.2.1 Cohesion and coherence 128
10.2.1.1 Sentence splitting 136
10.2.1.2 Textual restructuring 137
10.2.1.3 Paragraphing 138
10.3 The intertextual level 138
10.3.1 Genre membership 139
10.3.2 Quotation and allusion 141

Practical 10.1 The discourse level: cohesive-device revision of TT ولكن هذه الثمار السياسية 142
Practical 10.2 The discourse level: من شارع الستين 144

11 Metaphor 146

11.1 Introduction 146
11.2 General definition of metaphor 147
11.2.1 Lexicalized metaphor and non-lexicalized metaphor 147
11.2.1.1 Categories of lexicalized metaphor 149
11.2.1.2 Categories of non-lexicalized metaphor 149
11.3 Basic translation techniques for metaphor 150
11.3.1 Dead metaphors 150
11.3.2 Stock metaphors 151
11.3.3 Recent metaphors 152
11.3.4 Non-lexicalized (conventionalized and original) metaphors 152
11.4 Extended and mixed metaphors 155
11.5 Metaphor downtoning 158

Dr. Binibrahim Archive

Practical 11.1 Metaphor downtoning: ومنذ اللحظة 159
Practical 11.2 Metaphor: قال صابر مخاطبا نفسه 161

12 Language variety and translation: register, sociolect and dialect 162

12.1 Basic principles 162
12.2 Register 162
12.2.1 Tonal register 163
12.2.2 Social register 163
12.3 Sociolect 165
12.4 Dialect 166
12.4.1 Diglossia 167
12.5 Code-switching 169

Practical 12.1 Tonal register: سيادة الأخ العزيز 172
Practical 12.2 Code-switching: الاشتراكية زي ما قال الميثاق 173

13 Textual genre as a factor in translation 175

13.1 Introduction 175
13.2 Treatment of subject matter 178
13.3 Oral and written texts 179

Practical 13.1 Genre: اختطاف الطائرة .. اختطاف العقل 182
Practical 13.2 Genre: الشيخ شيخة 183

14 Translating technical texts 184

14.1 Introduction 184
14.2 Lexical problems in technical translation 184
14.3 Conceptual problems in technical translation 188
14.4 Legality and accuracy 189
14.5 Generic features of English technical texts 190
14.6 Information sources 192

Practical 14.1 Translation of technical terms: وذلك خلال الفترة ١٩٩٣ – ٢٠٠٠ 193
Practical 14.2 Technical translation: الزحار العصوي 194

15 Translating constitutional texts 196

15.1 Definition 196

Dr. Binibrahim Archive

15.2 General structure 196
15.2.1 Preamble 196
15.2.2 Main text 200
15.2.2.1 Subdivisions 200
15.2.2.2 Salient linguistic features of the main text 202
15.3 Concluding remarks 203

Practical 15.1 Constitutional translation: دستور دولة الكويت 203
Practical 15.2 Constitutional translation:
مقتطفات من ميثاق جامعة الدول العربية 205

16 Translating consumer-oriented texts 207

16.1 Introduction 207
16.2 Tourist material 207
16.2.1 English-language tourist material 208
16.2.2 Arabic tourist material 208
16.3 Cultural stereotyping 210
16.4 Genre-mixing in consumer-oriented texts 212

Practical 16.1 Translation of consumer-oriented texts: consideration of 'Fez has a lot to be proud of' ST and
ان كانت مدينة فاس تفخر TT 213
Practical 16.2 Translation of consumer-oriented texts:
مقرونة في الكوشة 215

17 Revising and editing TTs 217

17.1 Introduction 217
17.2 Revision 218
17.3 Editing 221

Practical 17.1 Revising and editing: سقطرى جزيرة السعادة 223
Practical 17.2 Revising and editing: الأردن.. على العهد 225

18 Summary and conclusion 228

Glossary 232

References 244

Index 250

Dr. Binibrahim Archive

Acknowledgements

We owe a debt of gratitude to many people without whose help and advice this book could not have been written. In particular, we would like to thank: Muhammad Al-Fuhaid, Hasan Al-Shamahi, John Bery, Lynne Bery, Tony Burns, Tamara Hervey, Hilary Higgins, Roger Keys, Richard Kimber, Tim Mackintosh-Smith, Dinah Manisty, Salah Niazi, Jenny Shouls, Kid Wan Shum, Paul Starkey, John Steinhardt, Jack Wesson, and Emma Westney.

Richard Kimber also gave generously of his time and expertise in helping us produce the camera-ready copy of the book: we are particularly grateful to him for that.

James Dickins acknowledges the help of the University of Durham, for granting him Study Leave from October to December 2000, and unpaid leave of absence from January 2001 to September 2001. He also thanks the Yemen Center for Arabic Studies, and its Director Sabri Saleem, for giving him membership of the Center while he was completing his work on the book during the academic year 2000–2001, and for making his stay in Yemen so uncomplicated and enjoyable.

Finally, we would like to thank the students of Arabic>English translation over the years at the Centre for Middle Eastern and Islamic Studies, University of Durham. Not only have their positive criticisms of previous versions done a great deal to improve this book; but a number of them have also contributed more directly, material from their translation projects being a major source of translation examples which we use.

The authors and publisher are grateful for permission to reproduce the following copyright material: Extract from THE COMPLETE YES MINISTER by Jonathan Lynn and Antony Jay reproduced with the permission of BBC Worldwide Limited. Copyright © Jonathan Lynn and Antony Jay 1990.

المكتبة الشاملة
كلية الآداب والعلوم الإنسانية
قسم اللغة الإنجليزية وآدابها
FACULTY OF ARTS AND HUMANITIES
WWW.KAUIS.ORG

Introduction

This book is a practical course in translation from Arabic to English. It has grown out of a course piloted at the University of Durham, and has its origins in *Thinking Translation*, a course in French–English translation by Sándor Hervey and Ian Higgins, first published in 1992. The approach is essentially the same as in that book, but a number of key concepts, notably cultural transposition, compensation and genre, have been considerably redefined and clarified in the light of a decade's experience in teaching all five versions of the course – German, Spanish and Italian, as well as French and Arabic. This book also contains topics not found in the versions for European languages, dealing with various forms of repetition and semantic parallelism in Arabic, as well as a chapter on metaphor, which poses specific challenges in Arabic>English translation.

'Can translation be taught?' The question is asked surprisingly often – sometimes even by good translators, whom one would expect to know better. Certainly, as teachers of translation know, some people are naturally better at it than others. In this, aptitude for translation is no different from aptitude for any other activity: teaching and practice help anyone, including the most gifted, to perform at a higher level. Even Mozart had music lessons.

Most of us, however, are not geniuses. Here again, anyone who has taught the subject knows that a structured course will help most students to become significantly better at translation – sometimes good enough to earn their living at it. This book offers just such a course. Its progressive exposition of different sorts of translation problem is accompanied with plenty of practice in developing a rationale for solving them. It is a course not in translation theory, but in translation method, encouraging thoughtful consideration of possible solutions to practical problems. Theoretical issues do inevitably arise, but the aim of the course is to develop proficiency in the method, not to investigate its theoretical implications. The theoretical notions that we apply are borrowed eclectically from translation theory and linguistics, solely

with this practical aim in mind.

If this is not a course in translation theory or linguistics, it is not a language-teaching course either. The focus is on how to translate. It is assumed that the student already has a good command of Arabic and is familiar with the proper use of dictionaries and, where appropriate, databases. The course is therefore aimed at final-year undergraduates, and at postgraduates or others seeking an academic or professional qualification in translation. That said, the analytical attention given to a wide variety of texts means that students do learn a lot of Arabic – and probably a fair bit of English too.

This last point is important. While our main aim is to improve quality in translation, it must be remembered that this quality requires the translator to have an adequate command of English as well as Arabic. Assuming that this is the case, translator training normally focuses on translation into the mother tongue, because higher quality is achieved in that direction than in translating into a foreign language. Hence the almost exclusive focus on translation into English in this course. By its very nature, however, the course is also useful for Arab students seeking to improve their skills in translation into English: this is a staple part of English studies throughout the Arab world, and *Thinking Arabic Translation* offers a new methodology and plenty of practical work in this area.

The course has a progressive structure, with an overall movement from general genre-independent issues to specific genre-dependent ones. Chapters 1–4 deal with the fundamental issues, options and alternatives of which a translator must be aware: translation as process, translation as product, cultural issues in translation, and the nature and crucial importance of compensation in translation. Chapters 5–11 deal with translation issues relating to key linguistic notions: semantics (denotative and connotative meaning, and metaphor), and the formal properties of text (considered on six levels of textual variables from the phonic to the intertextual). Chapters 12 and 13 deal with stylistic issues (register, sociolect, dialect), and genre. Chapters 14–16 focus on specific genres in which Arabic>English translators might do professional work: technical (scientific) translation, constitutional translation, and consumer-oriented translation. Finally, Chapter 17 deals with revision and editing.

Chapter by chapter, then, the student is progressively trained to ask, and to answer, a series of questions that apply to any text given for translation. Pre-eminent among these are: 'What is the purpose of my translation, and what are the salient features of this text?' No translation is produced in a vacuum, and we stress throughout the course that the needs of the target audience and the requirements of the person commissioning the translation are primary factors in translation decisions. For this same reason, we always include a translation brief in the assignment. As for the salient features of the text, these are what add up to its specificity as typical or atypical of a particular genre or genres. Once its genre-membership, and therefore its

purpose, has been pinned down, the translator can decide on a strategy for meeting the translation brief. The student's attention is kept focused on this issue by the wide variety of genres found in the practicals: in addition to technical, legal and consumer-oriented texts, students are asked to work on various sorts of journalistic, literary, and academic texts, political speeches, tourist brochures, etc.

The sorts of question that need to be asked in determining the salient features of any text are listed in the schema of textual matrices at the end of this Introduction. The schema amounts to a check-list of potentially relevant kinds of textual feature. On the whole, the features in the schema of textual matrices are presented in the order in which they arise in the course. However, there are two exceptions. Firstly, metaphor is included within the semantic matrix, where it most coherently belongs (its placing at Chapter 11, after the chapters on the formal properties of text, is motivated by the fact that metaphor is a complex issue, with a bearing on stylistic and generic issues, discussed in Chapters 12 and 13, as well as semantic ones). Secondly, as a reminder of the prime importance of purpose and genre, the genre matrix is placed at the top of the schema.

There are two reasons for keeping discussion of genre as such until Chapter 13, even though its decisive importance is stressed throughout. The first is that the genre-membership of a text cannot be finally decided until the other salient features have been isolated. The second is that we have found that students are more confident and successful in responding to genre requirements after working on semantic and formal properties of texts and on language variety than before. This is particularly true of texts with hybrid genre-features. Apart from genre, the schema of textual matrices outlines the investigation, in Chapters 3 and 5–11, of translation issues raised by textual features. (Compensation, the subject of Chapter 4, is not a textual feature, and so does not figure in the schema.) Students are advised to refer to the schema whenever they tackle a practical: it is a progressive reminder of what questions to ask of the text set for translation.

While the course systematically builds up a methodological approach, we are not trying to 'mechanize' translation by offering some inflexible rule or recipe. Very much the opposite: translation is a creative activity, and the translator's personal responsibility is paramount. We therefore emphasize the need to recognize options and alternatives, the need for rational discussion, and the need for decision-making. Each chapter is intended for class discussion at the start of the corresponding seminar, and a lot of the practicals are best done by students working in small groups. This is to help students keep in mind that, whatever approach the translator adopts, it should be self-aware and methodical.

The course is intended to fit into an academic timetable lasting one year. Each chapter needs at least 2 hours of seminar time. It is vital that each student should have the necessary reference books in class: a comprehensive

Arabic-English dictionary (we recommend Wehr), a similar-sized English-Arabic dictionary, a monolingual Arabic dictionary (such as المنجد في اللغة والإعلام 1996), an English dictionary and an English thesaurus. Some of the practical work will be done at home – sometimes individually, sometimes in groups – and handed in for assessment by the tutor. How often this is done will be decided by tutors and students between them. Full suggestions for teaching and assessment can be found in James Dickins, Sándor Hervey and Ian Higgins, *Thinking Arabic Translation: Tutor's Handbook* (Routledge 2002), which can be obtained from the address given on the opening page of this book.

Further materials relating to this course can be obtained directly from James Dickins at the following address: Dept. of Arabic (Institute for Middle Eastern and Islamic Studies), School of Modern Languages and Cultures, University of Durham, Al-Qasimi Building, Elvet Hill Road, Durham DH1 3TU, United Kingdom (e-mail: james.dickins@durham.ac.uk, or James.Dickins@urz.uni-heidelberg.de). They are also available on James Dickins' homepage at the University of Heidelberg, Department for Languages and Cultures of the Near East – Semitic Studies (<http://semitistik.uni-hd.de/dickins/index.htm>, or <http://semitistik.uni-hd.de/dickins/dickins/index_e.htm>). The materials include additional discussion of Arabic>English translation issues, additional practical materials, and further handouts which considerations of space precluded us from including in the Tutor's Handbook. The materials are particularly suitable for tutors teaching more intensive Arabic>English translation courses of three or more class hours per week. Any comments on this book are welcome, particularly those relating to possible improvements. These can be sent direct to James Dickins at the above address.

We have used a number of symbols throughout this book, as follows:

{ } Indicates key elements in ST and/or TT where these might not otherwise be clear.

ø Indicates zero elements in translation (translation by omission).

bold When technical or theoretical terms first occur, they are set out in bold type; they are also listed in the Glossary.

Ch. Section reference to section in another chapter (e.g. Ch. 9.2.2 means 'Section 9.2.2').

§ Section reference to section in the same chapter.

SCHEMA OF TEXTUAL MATRICES

Question to ask about the text	**MATRIX OF FEATURES**	Examples of typical features
What genre(s) does this text belong to:	**GENRE MATRIX** (Ch. 13) Genre-types: literary religious philosophical empirical persuasive hybrid Oral vs written:	 short story, etc. Quranic commentary, etc. essay on good and evil, etc. scientific paper, balance sheet, etc. law, advertisement, etc. sermon, parody, job contract, etc. dialogue, song, sub-titles, etc.
Are there significant features presenting a choice between:	**CULTURAL MATRIX** (Ch. 3) Exoticism Calque Cultural borrowing Communicative translation Cultural transplantation	 wholesale foreignness idiom translated literally, etc. name of historical movement, etc. public notices, proverbs, etc. Romeo recast as قيس, etc.
Are there significant instances of:	**SEMANTIC MATRIX** (Chs. 5, 6, 11) Denotative meaning Attitudinal meaning Associative meaning Affective meaning Allusive meaning Collocative meaning Reflected meaning Metaphorical meaning	 synonymy, etc. hostile attitude to referent, etc. gender stereotyping of referent, etc. offensive attitude to addressee, etc. echo of proverb, etc. collocative clash, etc. play on words, etc. original metaphor, etc.
Are there significant features on the:	**FORMAL MATRIX** (Chs. 7–10) Phonic/graphic level Prosodic level Grammatical level: lexis syntax Sentential level Discourse level Intertextual level	 alliteration, onomatopoeia, etc. vocal pitch, rhythm, etc. archaism, overtones, etc. simple vs complex syntax, etc. intonation, subordination, etc. cohesion markers, etc. pastiche, Quranic allusion, etc.
Are there significant instances of:	**VARIETAL MATRIX** (Ch. 12) Tonal register Social register Sociolect Dialect	 ingratiating tone, etc. Islamist intellectual, etc. urban working class, etc. Egyptianisms, etc.

1

Preliminaries to translation as a process

1.1 BASIC DEFINITIONS

An obvious place to begin a translation course is to examine translation as a process – what it is that the translator actually does. To do this, we must note at the outset a few basic terms that will be used throughout the course:

Text Any given stretch of speech or writing assumed to make a **coherent** whole. A minimal text may consist of a single word – for instance, the road sign قف 'stop' – provided this is construed as an independent message. A maximal text may run into thousands of pages. An example of a maximal text in Arabic would be the many volumes of كتاب تاريخ الرسل والملوك by the classical Islamic writer محمد بن جرير الطبري, sometimes referred to in English as Tabari's *Annals*.

Source Text (ST) The text requiring translation.

Target Text (TT) The text which is a translation of the ST.

Source Language (SL) The language in which the ST is spoken or written.

Target Language (TL) The language into which the ST is to be translated.

Strategy The translator's overall 'game-plan', consisting of a set of strategic decisions taken after an initial reading of the ST, but before starting detailed translation.

Strategic decisions The first set of reasoned decisions taken by the translator. These are taken before starting the translation in detail, in response to the following questions: 'What is the message content of this particular ST? What are its salient linguistic features? What are its principal effects? What **genre** does it belong to and what audience is it aimed at? What are the functions and intended audience of my translation? What are the implications of these factors? If a choice has to be made among them, which ones should be given priority?'

Decisions of detail Reasoned decisions concerning the specific problems of grammar, **lexis** (vocabulary), etc., encountered in translating particular expressions in their particular context. Decisions of detail can only be made in the light of strategy. Naturally, however, problems of detail may arise during translating which raise unforeseen strategic issues and oblige the translator to refine the original strategy somewhat.

With these terms in mind, the translation process can be broken down into two types of activity: understanding an ST and formulating a TT. These do not occur successively, but simultaneously; indeed, one often does not even realize that one has imperfectly understood the ST until coming up against a problem in formulating the TT. When this happens, it may be necessary to go back and reinterpret the ST in the light of one's new understanding of it. This reinterpretation sometimes means that the original strategy has to be revised, this revision in turn entailing changes to some of the decisions of detail already taken. Nevertheless, it is useful to discuss ST interpretation and TT formulation as different, separable processes.

The component processes of translation are not different from familiar things that all speakers and listeners do every day. Comprehension and interpretation are processes that we all perform whenever we listen to or read a piece of linguistically imparted information. Understanding even the simplest message potentially involves all our experiential baggage – the knowledge, beliefs, suppositions, inferences and expectations that are the stuff of personal, social and cultural life. Understanding everyday messages is therefore not all that different from what a translator does when first confronting an ST – and it is certainly no less complicated.

In everyday communication, evidence that a message has been understood may come from appropriate practical responses – for example, if someone has asked you for a spoon, and you give them a spoon and not a fork. Or it may come from an appropriate *linguistic* response – such things as returning a greeting correctly, answering a question satisfactorily, or filling in a form. None of these are translation-like processes, but they do show that the comprehension and interpretation stage of translation involves a perfectly ordinary, everyday activity that simply requires a standard command of the language used.

1.2 INTER-SEMIOTIC TRANSLATION

One everyday activity that does resemble translation proper is what Roman Jakobson calls **inter-semiotic translation** (Jakobson 1971: 260–6), that is, translation between two semiotic systems (a semiotic system being a system for communication). 'The green light means go' is an act of inter-semiotic translation, as is 'The big hand's pointing to twelve and the little hand's

www.kaues.org

pointing to four, so it's four o'clock'. In each case, there is translation from a non-linguistic communication system (traffic lights, clock-face) to a linguistic one. To this extent, everyone is a translator of a sort.

1.3 INTRALINGUAL TRANSLATION

Still more common are various sorts of linguistic response to linguistic stimuli which are also very like translation proper, even though they actually take place within a single language. These sorts of process are what Jakobson (ibid.) calls **intralingual translation**.

We will consider the two extremes of intralingual translation, to see what its major implications are. Take the following scenario. Jill is driving Jack through the narrow streets of a small town. A policeman steps out and stops them. As he leans to speak to Jill, she can see over his shoulder that, further on, a lorry has jackknifed and blocked the street. At one extreme of intralingual translation lies the kind of response typified in this exchange:

POLICEMAN	There's been an accident ahead, Madam – I'm afraid you'll have to turn left down St Mary's Lane here, the road's blocked.
JILL	Oh, OK. Thanks.
JACK	What did he say?
JILL	We've got to turn left.

The policeman's essential message is 'Turn left'. But he has been trained in public relations and he does not want to sound brusque. So he starts by mollifying the driver with a partial explanation, 'There's been an accident', and then presents his instruction somewhat apologetically, by introducing it with 'I'm afraid'. 'St Mary's Lane' even implies a shared sense of local solidarity with the motorist; but the policeman also adds 'here', in case Jill does not in fact know the town. Finally, he completes his explanation.

When Jack asks what the policeman has said, however, Jill separates the gist of the policeman's message from all the circumstantial details and the tonal subtleties, and reports it in her own words. This is an example of a type of intralingual translation which we shall call **gist translation**. The example also shows two other features which intralingual translation shares with translation proper. First, Jill's is not the only gist translation possible. For instance, she might have said, 'We've got to go down here'. Amongst other things, this implies that at least one of the people in the car does not know the town: the street name would be of no help in identifying which road is meant. A third possibility is, 'We've got to go down St Mary's Lane'; if Jack and Jill do know the town, the gist of the policeman's message is accurately conveyed.

The other feature shared by intralingual translation and translation proper is that the situation in which a message is expressed crucially affects both

www.kaues.org

how it is expressed and how it is received. By 'situation' here we mean a combination of three elements:

1. Linguistic context (for example, the policeman's words and Jack's question).
2. Non-linguistic circumstances (such as being stopped in a car and having to take a diversion).
3. The experiential baggage of the participants (knowing or not knowing the town; familiarity or unfamiliarity with conventions for giving and receiving instructions; liking or disliking the police, etc.).

There are so many variables in the message situation that it is impossible to predict what the gist translation will be or how the addressee will take it. For example, Jill might simply have said, 'Turn left', a highly economical way of reporting the gist – no bad thing when she is concentrating on driving. However, depending on how she says it, and how Jack receives it, it could give the impression that the policeman was rude.

Another reason why 'Turn left' could sound rude is that, grammatically, it looks like direct speech – an imperative – whereas all Jill's other gist translations are clearly *in*direct speech (or 'reported speech'). All translation might be regarded as a form of indirect speech, inasmuch as it does not repeat the ST, but reformulates it. Yet most TTs, like 'Turn left', mask the fact that they are indirect speech by omitting such markers as 'The author says that ...' or modulation of point of view (as in substituting 'we' for 'you', or 'he' for 'I'). As a result, it is very easy for reformulation consciously or unconsciously to become distortion, either because the translator misrepresents the ST or because the reader misreads the TT, or both.

Gist translation, like any translation, is thus a process of *interpretation*. This is seen still more clearly if we take an example at the opposite extreme of intralingual translation. Jill might easily have interpreted the policeman's words by expanding them. For example, she could build on an initial gist translation as follows:

> We've got to go down St Mary's Lane – some fool's jackknifed and blocked the High Street.

Here, she puts two sorts of gloss on the policeman's message: she adds details that he did not give (the jackknifing, the name of the street) and her own judgement of the driver. We shall use the term **exegetic translation** to denote a translation that explains and elaborates on the ST in this way. The inevitable part played by the translator's experiential baggage becomes obvious in exegetic translation, for any exegesis by definition involves explicitly invoking considerations from outside the text in one's reading of it – here, the jackknifed lorry, Jill's knowledge of the town, and her attitude to other

www.kaues.org

road-users.

An exegetic translation can be shorter than the ST, as in this example, but exegesis is usually longer, and can easily shade into general observations triggered by the ST but not really explaining it. Knowing the town as she does, Jill might easily have gone on like this:

> That's the second time in a month. The street's just too *narrow* for a thing that size.

The explanation added in the second sentence is still just about admissible as exegetic translation, but it does go much farther than the policeman's statement.

As the above examples suggest, it is sometimes hard to keep gist translation and exegetic translation apart, or to see where translation shades into comment pure and simple. It certainly seems very hard to achieve an ideal **rephrasing**, a halfway point between gist and exegesis that would use terms radically different from those of the ST, but add nothing to, and omit nothing from, its message content. Might one say that 'I consumed a small quantity of alcohol approximately 60 minutes ago' is a rephrasing of 'I had a little drink about an hour ago'? If it is, it is distinctly inexact: the tone and **connotations** of the two utterances are very different, and 'a small quantity of alcohol' and 'a little drink' can hardly be said to have the same **denotative meaning**.

1.4 INTERLINGUAL TRANSLATION

Just as it is possible to have intralingual gist and exegetic translation, so it is possible to have interlingual translation (i.e. translation proper) which involves gist or exegesis. In Arabic>English translation, translations which involve gisting are most likely to arise where the Arabic ST involves a high degree of repetition of meaning (i.e. **semantic repetition**). Consider the following example (Johnstone 1991: 89–90):

> الشعر تعبير وتصوير لمشاعر الشعراء وأفكارهم سواءً كانت التجربة واقعية أو من نسج خيال الشاعر. وفي كلتا الحالتين فإن التجربة صادقة، لأنه حتى ولو كانت التجربة غير واقعية – أي خيالية – فإن الشاعر يعيش فيها مدة طويلة قبل أن ينظم شعره يحس فيها نبضات قلبه ويشعرها تسري في دمائه.

A fairly **literal translation** of this reads as follows (Johnstone 1991: 90):

> Poetry is an expression and description of the feelings of poets and their thoughts, whether the experience be real or from the fabric of the poet's imagination. And in both cases, the experience is true, because even if the experience is not real – that is, imaginary – the poet lives in it for a long

www.kaues.org

time before he composes his poetry, sensing it in the pulses of his heart and feeling it flow in his blood. (75 words)

A rather more **idiomatic** translation might read:

> Poetry is an expression of the thoughts and feelings of the poet. Whether the experience be real or imaginary, it is true in the sense that the poet has spent a great deal of time experiencing it internally before composing his poetry. (42 words)

Good examples of exegetic translation in various degrees can be found in different English interpretations of the Quran. Consider for example the following three translations of سورة الإخلاص by Rodwell (1909), Al-Hilali and Khan (1997), and Turner (1997) (the translations are presented with corresponding verse numbering to the original; the translation of Al-Hilali and Khan has been slightly amended, to omit information which is irrelevant to the current discussion):

بِسمِ اللّهِ الرَحْمَنِ الرَحِيم

(١) قُلْ هُوَ اللّهُ أَحَدٌ

(٢) اللّهُ الصَّمَدُ

(٣) لَمْ يَلِدْ وَلَمْ يُولَدْ

(٤) وَلَمْ يَكُن لَّهُ كُفُواً أَحَدٌ

Rodwell

In the name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful

1. SAY: He is God alone:
2. God the eternal!
3. He begetteth not, and He is not begotten
4. And there is none like unto Him.

Al-Hilali and Khan

In the name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful

1. Say, O Muhammad: He is Allah, (the) One.
2. Allah As-Samad (the Self-Sufficient Master, Whom all creatures need. He neither eats nor drinks).
3. He begets not, nor was He begotten,
4. And there is none co-equal or comparable unto Him.

www.kaues.org

Turner

In the Name of God, the Compassionate, the Merciful.

1. Say: 'My God is One;
2. The cosmos is a manifestation of His eternal names, for He is mirrored in all things in a most subtle manner, and He is free from all wants and needs.
3. He does not beget or produce anything, nor is he begotten or produced by anything
4. And there is nothing in the whole of the cosmos that can be likened to Him.'

Rodwell's translation here can be regarded as having no exegetical elements. Al-Hilali and Khan include an exegetical gloss 'O Muhammad', and another gloss on As-Samad (which they transliterate rather than translating), and they translate كفوا as 'co-equal or comparable', which is arguably an exegetical expansion. Turner's is the most obviously exegetical version, and he refers to his interpretation as an '"exegetically-led" reading' (Turner 1997: xvi).

In general, while translation proper may include elements of gist or exegesis, the dominant mode of translation is one which involves rephrasing between the ST and TT.

PRACTICAL 1

Practical 1.1 Intralingual translation

Assignment

(i) Identify the salient features of content and expression in the following text, and say what its purpose is.

(ii) Recast the text in different words, adapting it for a specific purpose and a specific public. Define carefully what the purpose and the public are.

(iii) Explain the main textual changes you made. (Do this by inserting into your TT a superscript note-number after each point you intend to discuss, and then discussing these points in order, starting on a fresh sheet of paper. Whenever you annotate your own TTs, this is the system you should use.)

Contextual information

This text is taken from the narrative version of the satirical BBC television programme *Yes, Minister*, which revolves around the manipulation of the incompetent Minister for Administrative Affairs, Jim Hacker, by the wily Permanent Secretary of the Department, Sir Humphrey. Hacker is trying to reorganize the Department. Sir Humphrey has no intention of letting this happen. In this extract from his diary, Hacker tells what happens when he

www.kaues.org

broaches the subject (Lynn and Jay 1990: 135).

ST

Today I attempted to explain the new system to Sir Humphrey, who effectively refused to listen.

Instead, he interrupted as I began, and told me that he had something to say to me that I might not like to hear. He said it as if this were something new!

As it happens, I'd left my dictaphone running, and his remarks were recorded for posterity. What he actually said to me was: 'Minister, the traditional allocation of executive responsibilities has always been so determined as to liberate the Ministerial incumbent from the administrative minutiae by devolving the managerial functions to those whose experience and qualifications have better formed them for the performance of such humble offices, thereby releasing their political overlords for the more onerous duties and profound deliberations that are the inevitable concomitant of their exalted position.'

I couldn't possibly imagine why he thought I wouldn't want to hear that.

Presumably, he thought it would upset me – but how can you be upset by something you don't understand a word of?

Yet again, I asked him to express himself in plain English. This request always surprises him, as he is always under the extraordinary impression that he has already done so.

Practical 1.2 Gist translation

Assignment

Produce a gist translation of the following extract (from the Kuwaiti newspaper, الوطن, February 1988). The TT should comprise about 90 words including the headline. You are an official employed by the New Zealand embassy in Cairo, and you are doing the translation for the embassy political officer. She is interested in the main characters and events but does not need to know all the individuals involved. Identify which elements you decided to remove from your translation, and explain why you did so.

www.kaues.org

ST

تغيير الحكومة المصرية قريبا
عبيد أقوى المرشحين لرئاستها

القاهرة – مكتب *الوطن*

علمت *الوطن* ان د. عاطف صدقي رئيس الوزراء المصري سوف يتقدم باستقالة وزاراته الى الرئيس المصري حسني مبارك خلال الأيام القليلة المقبلة بعد فشلها في تنفيذ توجيهات مبارك الاخيرة بضرورة ايجاد حلول عاجلة للمشكلات الاقتصادية الداخلية مثل الاجور والاسعار وتعيين الخريجين والاسكان وغيرها.

وكان الرئيس مبارك بعد عودته من جولته الخليجية والاوروبية عقد اجتماعا ضم عددا من الوزراء المعنيين في مصر وطالبهم بالعمل على رفع المعاناة عن المواطنين وخاصة فيما يتعلق بمشكلتي الارتفاع الجنوني للاسعار ونقص عدد كبير من السلع الغذائية والتموينية. في غضون مهلة لا تتجاوز شهر مارس المقبل، وهو ما تفيد المؤشرات الى فشل الحكومة الحالية في تحقيقه بالإضافة الى الخلافات التي استفحلت بين اعضاء الوزارة في الفترة الاخيرة وخاصة بين د. عاطف صدقي وكل من صفوت الشريف وزير الاعلام المصري واحمد سلامة وزير شؤون مجلس الشعب بالشورى المصري. وايضا الاتهامات الموجهة الى وزير البترول وما زالت معلقة حتى الآن، بدون تحقيق.

www.kaues.org

2

Preliminaries to translation as a product

2.1 DEGREES OF FREEDOM IN TRANSLATION

As we saw in Chapter 1, translation can be viewed as a process. However, in each of the examples where the driver 'translated' the policeman's words, the evidence we had for the process was a *product* – a gist translation and an exegetic translation. Here, too, it is useful to examine two diametric opposites: in this case, two opposed degrees of freedom of translation, showing extreme SL bias on the one hand and extreme TL bias on the other.

2.1.1 Interlinear translation

At the extreme of SL bias is **interlinear translation**, where the TT does not necessarily respect TL grammar, but has grammatical units corresponding as closely as possible to every grammatical unit of the ST. Here is an example of an interlinear translation of an Arabic proverb (found, with some variants, in a number of Arabic dialects):

إللي فات مات
The/What passed died

The following is an interlinear translation of the first line of one of the pre-Islamic معلقة poems, معلقة لبيد. In this translation ~ indicates that the two English words so linked correspond jointly to one Arabic word in the ST; - indicates that the two English words so linked correspond to two linked Arabic forms or words in the ST, and // indicates a hemistich (half-line) break in the middle of the line. This is a standard feature of traditional Arabic poetry, and is marked in the ST by a space between the words

www.kaues.org

فَمُقامُها and بِمنَى which is longer than the spaces between other words in the line.

عَفَتِ الدِّيارُ محلُّها فَمُقامُها بِمنَى تَأَبَّدَ غَوْلُها فَرِجامُها

Disappeared the-camping~grounds alighting~places-their and-stopping ~places-their // in-Mina become~deserted Ghaul-its and-Rijam-its

As is apparent from the incomprehensibility of the English TT here, interlinear translation is normally only employed where the purpose of the translation is to shed light on the structure of the ST. Mainly used in descriptive linguistics or language teaching, interlinear translation is of no practical use for this course, and we shall not consider it further.

2.1.2 Literal translation

Interlinear translation is actually an extreme form of the much more common literal translation. In literal translation proper, the denotative meaning of words is taken as if straight from the dictionary (that is, out of context), but TL grammar is respected. Because TL grammar is respected, literal translation very often unavoidably involves **grammatical transposition** – the replacement or reinforcement of given parts of speech in the ST by other parts of speech in the TT. A simple example is translating the colloquially-oriented الدنيا شمس as 'It's sunny': the TT has a 'dummy-subject' 'it' where the ST has the word الدنيا ('the world'), and an adjective 'sunny', where the ST has the noun شمس ('sun').

The following is the first line of معلقة لبيد, with a literal translation:

عَفَتِ الدِّيارُ محلُّها فَمُقامُها بِمنَى تَأَبَّدَ غَوْلُها فَرِجامُها

The camping grounds have disappeared – their alighting places and their stopping places // at Mina; its Ghaul and its Rijam have become deserted

In this translation, the standard grammar and word order of English are respected; however, everything which might be transferred on a simple word-by-word basis from the Arabic is so transferred. For most purposes, literal translation can be regarded as the practical extreme of SL bias.

2.1.3 Free translation

At the opposite extreme, where there is maximum TL bias, is **free translation**. Here there is only a global correspondence between the textual units of the

www.kaues.org

ST and those of the TT. A possible free translation of the colloquial Arabic proverb إللي فات مات, discussed above, would be 'Let bygones be bygones'. Here the grammar is completely different and the **metaphor** of 'dying' is lost. Similarly, a free translation of the proverb يوم لك ويوم عليك might be 'You win some, you lose some'; here the grammar and vocabulary are completely different.

2.1.4 Communicative translation

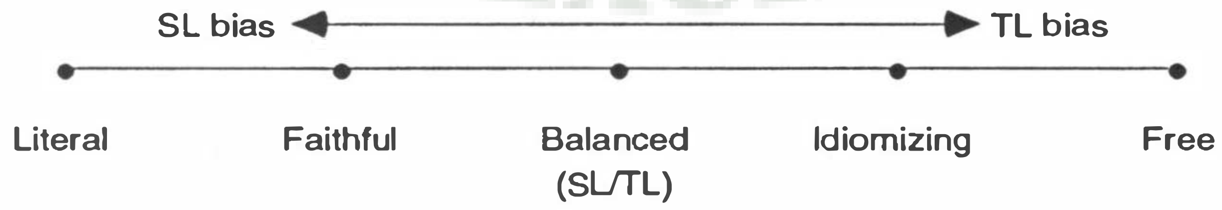
These examples of free translation are also examples of **communicative translation**. A communicative translation is produced, when, in a given situation, the ST uses an SL expression standard for that situation, and the TT uses a TL expression standard for an equivalent target culture situation. 'Let bygones be bygones' is an obvious translation of إللي فات مات, and, in some situations at least, would be virtually mandatory. This is true of very many culturally conventional formulae that do not invite literal translation. Public notices, proverbs, and conversational clichés illustrate this point:

ممنوع التدخين	No smoking	(public notice)
ضرب عصفورين بحجر واحد	To kill two birds with one stone	(Standard Arabic proverb)
لا شكر على واجب	Don't mention it	(conversational cliché)

As these few examples suggest, communicative translation is very common. Communicative translation apart, however, this degree of freedom is no more useful as standard practice than interlinear translation, because potentially important details of message content are bound to be lost.

2.1.5 From interlinear to free translation

Between the two extremes of literal translation and free translation, the degrees of freedom are infinitely variable. Whether there is any perfect halfway point between the two is open to question. However, in assessing translation freedom, it is useful to situate the TT on a scale between extreme SL bias and extreme TL bias, with notional intermediate points schematized as in the following diagram, adapted from Newmark (1981: 39):



www.kaues.org

By an **idiomizing translation,** we mean one that respects the ST message content, but prioritizes TL 'naturalness' over faithfulness to ST detail; it will typically use **idioms** or familiar phonic and rhythmic patterns to give an easy read, even if this means sacrificing nuances of meaning or tone. By 'idiom' we mean a fixed figurative expression whose meaning cannot be deduced from the denotative meanings of the words that make it up, as in 'football's not *my cup of tea*', 'that's a *different kettle of fish*', etc. Note that 'idiomizing' is not synonymous with 'idiomatic': throughout this course we use the term 'idiomatic' to denote what sounds 'natural' and 'normal' to native speakers – a **linguistic expression** that is unexceptional and acceptable in a given language in a given context.

The five points on the scale – as well as the rarely used interlinear translation – can be illustrated by the following translations of the phrase مثل هذه الاشياء عليها إقبال كثير الآن.

[INTERLINEAR	Like these things to them demand much now.]
LITERAL	The likes of these things have much demand now.
FAITHFUL	Things like these are in great demand now.
BALANCED	This kind of thing's in great demand at the moment.
IDIOMIZING	This type's all the rage.
FREE	This one's dead trendy.

Note that the last four TTs are all idiomatic, but only one of them is an idiomizing translation. It should also be noted that quite frequently, as translations get more free, they become more informal, as illustrated by these examples. There is, however, no necessary correlation between informality and freeness of translation. The pompous 'Such artifacts are at the absolute pinnacle of their popularity, madam' is just as possible a free translation of مثل هذه الاشياء عليها إقبال كثير الآن as is 'This one's dead trendy'.

2.2 EQUIVALENCE AND TRANSLATION LOSS

In defining communicative translation, we used the term 'equivalent target culture situation'. As a matter of fact, most writers on translation use the terms 'equivalence' and 'equivalent', but in so many different ways that equivalence can be a confusing concept even for teachers of translation, let alone their students. Before going further, then, we need to say what we mean, and what we do not mean, by 'equivalence' and 'equivalent'. Since this is not a course in translation theory, we shall not go in detail into the more general philosophical implications of the term 'equivalence'. Nida (1964), Toury (1980), Holmes (1988) and Snell-Hornby (1988) between them provide a useful introduction to the question.

www.kaues.org

2.2.1 Equivalence

The many different definitions of equivalence in translation fall broadly into one of two categories: they are either descriptive or prescriptive. Descriptively, 'equivalence' denotes the relationship between ST features and TT features that are seen as directly corresponding to one another, regardless of the quality of the TT. Thus, descriptively, the following utterances are equivalents:

ممنوع الدخول forbidden is the entrance
مع السلامة with the well-being

Prescriptively, 'equivalence' denotes the relationship between an SL expression and the canonic TL rendering of it as required, for example, by a teacher. So, prescriptively, the following pairs of utterances are equivalents:

ممنوع الدخول no entry
مع السلامة goodbye

An influential variant of prescriptive equivalence is the 'dynamic equivalence' of the eminent Bible translator Eugene Nida. This is based on the 'principle of equivalent effect', which states that 'the relationship between receptor and message should be substantially the same as that which existed between the original receptors and the message' (Nida 1964: 159). Nida's view does have real attractions. We shall be suggesting throughout the course that there are all sorts of reasons – reasons of grammar, idiom, context, genre, etc. – why a translator might not want to translate a given expression literally. A case in point is communicative translation, which may be said to be an example of 'dynamic equivalence' (cf. Nida 1964: 166: 'That is just the way we would say it'). However, there is a danger, especially for student translators with exceptional mother-tongue facility, that 'dynamic equivalence' might be seen as giving carte blanche for excessive freedom – that is, freedom to write more or less anything as long as it sounds good and does reflect, however tenuously, something of the ST message content. This danger is a very real one, as any teacher of translation will confirm. It is in fact a symptom of theoretical problems contained in the very notion of 'equivalent effect', most notably the normative ones.

To begin with, who is to know what the relationship between ST message and source-culture receptors is? For that matter, is it plausible to speak of *the* relationship, as if there were only one: are there not as many relationships as there are receptors? And who is to know what such relationships can have been in the past? In any case, few texts have a *single* effect, even in one reading by one person.

A good example of the problematicity of achieving an equivalent effect in

www.kaues.org

Arabic>English translation is the translation of a piece of ancient Arabic poetry, such as معلقة لبيد. Even in principle, it seems impossible to achieve in an English translation the effect created by معلقة لبيد on the original audience of the poem, i.e. the Arabs of pre-Islamic Arabia. In fact, it seems impossible even to determine what these effects might have been. Equally, it seems almost certain that the effects achieved on a modern Arabic audience will be quite different from those achieved on the original audience. The differences between the two audiences are obviously enormous – pre-Islamic pagan Bedouins vs mainly Muslim town-dwellers and villagers; a largely illiterate audience listening to an essentially oral performance in a poetic genre with which it is likely to be intimately acquainted, vs an exclusively literate audience, which is likely to be making use of a heavily annotated edition in a school or university, and which is used to a modern version of Standard Arabic (even in the poetic domain) significantly different from the Arabic of pre-Islamic poetry.

All this illustrates the dangers in the normative use of the term 'equivalence' to imply 'sameness', as it does in logic, mathematics and sign-theory. In mathematics, an equivalent relationship is objective, incontrovertible and, crucially, reversible. In translation, however, such unanimity and such reversibility are unthinkable for any but the very simplest of texts – and even then, only in terms of denotative meaning. For example, if هل أعجبتك مصر؟ translates as 'Do you like Egypt?', will **back-translation** (that is, translating a TT back into the SL) automatically give هل أعجبتك مصر؟, or will it give هل تعجبك مصر؟, or هل تحب مصر؟? The answer depends, as it always does in translation matters, on context – both the context of the ST utterance and that of the TT utterance. The simplest of contexts is usually enough to inhibit the reversibility that is crucial to equivalence in the mathematical sense. And certainly even something as elementary as the difference in tense gives هل أعجبتك مصر؟ and هل تعجبك مصر؟ potentially quite distinct interpretations.

It would seem that, in so far as the principle of equivalent effect implies 'sameness' or is used normatively, it is more of a hindrance than a help, both theoretically and pedagogically. Consequently, when we spoke of an 'equivalent target culture situation', we were not intending 'equivalent' to have a sense specific to any particular translation theory, but were using it in its everyday sense of 'counterpart' – something different, but with points of resemblance in relevant aspects. This is how the term will be used in this book.

We have found it useful, both in translating and in teaching translation, to avoid an absolutist ambition to *maximize sameness* between ST and TT, in favour of a relativist ambition to *minimize difference*: to look not for what is to be put into the TT, but for what one might save from the ST. There is a vital difference between the two ambitions. The aim of maximizing sameness encourages the belief that, floating somewhere out in the ether, there is the

www.kaues.org

'right' translation, the TT that is 'equi-valent' to the ST, at some ideal point between SL bias and TL bias. But it is more realistic, and more productive, to start by admitting that, because SL and TL are fundamentally different, the transfer from ST to TT *inevitably* entails difference – that is, loss.

2.2.2 Translation loss

It is helpful here to draw an analogy with 'energy loss' in engineering. The transfer of energy in any machine necessarily involves energy loss. Engineers do not see this as a theoretical anomaly, but simply as a practical problem which they confront by striving to design more efficient machines, in which energy loss is reduced. We shall give the term **translation loss** to the incomplete replication of the ST in the TT – that is, the inevitable loss of textually and culturally relevant features. This term is intended to suggest that translators should not agonize over the loss, but should concentrate on reducing it.

In fact, the analogy with energy loss is imperfect: whereas energy loss is a loss (or rather, a diversion) of energy, translation loss is not a loss *of* translation, but a loss *in* the translation process. It is a loss *of* textual effects. Further, since these effects cannot be quantified, neither can the loss. So, when trying to reduce it, the translator never knows how far there is still to go.

Nevertheless, despite the limitations of the analogy, we have found it practical for translators, students and teachers alike. Once one accepts the concept of inevitable translation loss, a TT that is not, even in all important respects, a replica of the ST is not a theoretical anomaly, and the translator can concentrate on the realistic aim of reducing translation loss, rather than the unrealistic one of seeking the ultimate TT.

A few very simple examples, at the level of sounds and denotative meanings of individual words, will be enough to show some of the forms translation loss can take and what its implications are for the translator.

There is translation loss even at the most elementary level. True SL–TL homonymy rarely occurs (since there is almost always some difference in pronunciation across languages), and rhythm and intonation are usually different as well. For instance, in most contexts بقرة and 'cow' will be **synonyms**, and there will be no loss in denotative meaning in translating one with the other. But بقرة and 'cow' clearly sound different: there is significant translation loss on the **phonic** and **prosodic** levels. In a veterinary textbook, this loss is not likely to matter. But if the ST word is part of an alliterative pattern in a literary text, or, worse, if it rhymes, the loss could be crucial.

Even if the ST word has entered the TL as a loan-word (e.g. 'intifada'), using it in the TT entails translation loss in at least two different ways. For example, English-speakers pronounce 'intifada' differently from the way in which Arabic speakers pronounce انتفاضة (consider, for example, the pronunciation of the ض in Arabic); so using it in an English TT involves loss

www.kaues.org

on the phonic level. In any case, 'intifada' still sounds foreign (cf. Ch. 3.5) in English, despite the relative frequency of use in newspapers and political writing over the past few years. Accordingly, using 'intifada' in an English TT introduces a foreign element which is not present in an Arabic ST, thereby losing the cultural neutrality of the ST expression.

In the opposite sort of case, where the ST contains a TL expression (e.g. كمبيوتر 'computer', موبايل 'mobile phone'), it is tempting to see the TT as 'correcting' the ST, and therefore producing 'gain' rather than 'loss'. In fact, however, there is no less loss. If Arabic موبايل is translated as 'mobile phone' (as it might well be in many contexts), there is palpable phonic and prosodic loss, because the ST expression and the TT expression are pronounced in ways which are clearly different from one other. There is also grammatical translation loss, because the TT is less economical than the ST, and there is **lexical** translation loss, because TT 'mobile phone' loses the foreignness that موبايل has in Arabic. And a translation of Arabic كمبيوتر as English 'computer' involves not only a loss of foreignness but also an addition of a transparent link with 'compute' which is lacking in the SL form.

As these examples suggest, it is important to recognize that, even where the TT is more explicit, precise, economical or vivid than the ST, this difference is still a case of translation loss. Some writers refer to such differences as 'translation gains'. It is certainly true that the following TTs, for example, can be said to be grammatically more economical, sometimes even more elegant and easier to say, than their STs. But these so-called 'gains' are by the same token grammatical, phonic or prosodic failures to replicate the ST structures, and are therefore by definition instances of translation loss, as in the following examples:

ST	*TT*
cross-eyed	أحول
Islamic jurisprudence	فقه
سيارة أجرة	taxi
كلب بحر	shark

Conversely, if we reverse these columns, we have a set of TTs that are clearer, or more vivid than their STs: these TTs, too, all show translation loss, because the ST structures have been violated:

ST	*TT*
أحول	cross-eyed
فقه	Islamic jurisprudence
taxi	سيارة أجرة
shark	كلب بحر

www.kaues.org

If translation loss is inevitable even in translating single words, it is obviously going to feature at more complex levels as well – in respect of connotations, for example, or of **sentence** structure, discourse, language variety, and so on. Examples will arise in Practicals 2.1 and 2.2, and many more later on, chapter by chapter, as we deal with these and other topics.

2.2.2.1 Translation by omission

The most obvious form of translation loss is when something which occurs in the ST is simply omitted from the TT. Such **omission** occurs fairly frequently in Arabic/English translation, and is therefore worth specifically identifying. (For helpful further discussion of translation by omission, see Baker 1992: 40–2.)

Omission can occur for many legitimate reasons; the following are a few illustrative examples. Quite often, omission reflects the different ways in which Arabic and English link bits of text together (i.e. different patterns of **cohesion**; cf. Ch. 10.2.1). Arabic radio broadcasts, for example, often make use of the phrase و... هذا to introduce a piece of information which is related to the material which has gone before, but takes the broadcast onto a new sub-topic. Normally, the best translation of this in English is to simply miss the phrase out. Similarly, one often finds the phrase جدير بالذكر (also associated 'variants' such as ومما يجدر ذكره) at the start of paragraphs in Arabic newspapers; this can be regarded as a signal in Arabic that what comes next is **background information** to the main argument (cf. Hatim 1997: 67–74). Again, one would normally not expect this to be translated in an English TT.

Another occasion for omission is when the information conveyed is not particularly important, and adding it would unnecessarily complicate the structure of the TT. Consider, for example, the following extract from an Arabic newspaper وكان الرئيس الامريكي بيل كلينتون قد أكد مساء أول من أمس [...] . Given a context in which it is not particularly important that this statement was made in the evening, a reasonable translation of this would be along the lines 'Two days ago, the American President, Bill Clinton, confirmed [...]' (Ives 1999: 3); unlike Arabic, English does not afford a particularly elegant or stylistically normal way in this context of expressing the concept 'two days ago in the evening'.

Cultural difference (cf. Chapter 3) provides another area in which simple omission may be a reasonable strategy. For example, when a Christian-oriented Lebanese newspaper refers to the former Phalangist leader as الشيخ بيار جميل, the obvious translation is 'Pierre Gemayel' (Jones 1999: 5); not enough hangs on the associations of respect in الشيخ here to warrant including any equivalent in the TT. Similarly, in most contexts, the phrase بابا الفاتيكان يوحنا بولس الثاني is likely to be most reasonably translated

www.kaues.org

as ‘Pope John-Paul II’ with the omission of any English equivalent of the ST الفاتيكان; most Western readers are likely to be unaware of any popes (such as the Coptic pope) other than the Catholic one, and even if they are aware of these other possibilities, such knowledge will in many contexts be irrelevant, since it is only the Catholic pope in English who is typically referred to as ‘the Pope’.

2.2.2.2 Translation by addition

Translation by **addition** is translation in which something is added to the TT which is not present in the ST. Like omission, addition is a fairly common feature of Arabic/English translation and is therefore worth specifically identifying.

Examples of translation by addition frequently occur where either general considerations of English usage or specific contexts require something to be added. Consider the phrase from a newspaper text about the Kosovo war of 1999 منذ الهيمنة التركية. This is much more acceptably translated as ‘ever since the days of Turkish hegemony’ (Ives 1999: 13) than as ‘ever since Turkish hegemony’ (‘time of Turkish hegemony’ would also be possible). The operative principle here seems to be that English resists regarding ‘hegemony’ as a concept involving time more strongly than does Arabic with respect to هيمنة. In English it is therefore necessary to add ‘days of’ (or something similar).

A similar example, which involves the specific context, rather than general considerations of usage, is the following from the novel مدينة البغي by عيسى بشارة

هو كاتم أنفاسه ومغمض عينيه عما يجري

This has been translated (Brown 1996: 58) as:

> He was holding his breath and had closed his eyes to what was going on around him

The context here is fairly personal; the author is interested in the events immediately surrounding the central character of the novel, صابر. The translator has accordingly chosen to add ‘around him’, since this is an obvious idiomatic means of expressing the personal nature of what is involved. There is, however, no equivalent of ‘around him’ (e.g. حوله) in the Arabic ST (although it would be perfectly possible to have one); nor is any dictionary likely to list ‘to go on around [one]’ as an equivalent of جرى. Accordingly, it is justifiable to identify this as a case of translation by addition.

www.kaues.org

2.2.2.3 Controlling translation loss

As we have suggested, translation loss is an inevitable consequence of the fact that languages and cultures are different. Given this, the challenge to the translator is not to eliminate it, but to control and channel it by deciding which features, in a given ST, it is most important to respect, and which can most legitimately be sacrificed in respecting them. The translator has always to be asking, and answering, such questions as: does it *matter* if 'Do you like Egypt?' does not reflect the distinction between هل أعجبتك مصر ؟ and هل تعجبك مصر ؟? Does it matter if موبايل is foreign in Arabic, but 'mobile phone' is not foreign in English, and sounds different in each case? If إللي فات مات is phonically, rhythmically, grammatically, lexically and metaphorically different from 'Let bygones be bygones'? As we have already suggested, there is no once-and-for-all answer to questions like these. Everything depends on the purpose of the translation and on what the role of the textual feature is in its context. Sometimes a given translation loss will matter a lot, sometimes little. Whether the final decision is simple or complicated, it does have to be made, every time, and the translator is the only one who can make it.

PRACTICAL 2

Practical 2.1 Literal vs balanced translation

Assignment

(i) With a view to producing your own balanced TT, consider the following text and the literal TT which follows it. Make a note of any elements in the literal TT which immediately strike you as unidiomatic.

(ii) Discuss the strategic problems confronting the translator of the text, and outline your own strategy for dealing with them in order to produce a balanced TT.

(iii) Translate the text into English.

(iv) Explain the decisions of detail you made in producing your TT.

Contextual information

This text is taken from an unsigned article entitled الانتخابات البريطانية, which appeared in May 1997 in the London-based political magazine العالم (from Conduit 1998: 19-21). The article deals with the British general election of that year, which brought the Labour party into power following over seventeen years of Conservative rule, first under Margaret Thatcher as Prime Minister and then John Major. The section of the article from which the ST is taken discusses the nature of the Conservative government under Margaret Thatcher. It begins with a comparison between the Thatcher government and the previous Labour administration.

www.kaues.org

ST

وتميز حكم المحافظين بنزوعه الأكثر وضوحا ومبدئية الى قيم الرأسمالية الغربية وبتبنيهم برنامجاً تدريجياً شاملاً من اجل الفصل بين الدولة والمجتمع وبدء مشروع التخلي التدريجي للدولة عن مهمة الرعاية الاجتماعية وفسح المجال امام حركة الاستثمار ورؤوس الاموال عن طريق تقليل الضرائب. وقد انطلقت تاتشر من تصور فلسفي ايديولوجي متصلب حاربت به النقابات وكسرت شوكتها ثم نقلت ملكيات الدولة العامة في الشركات الكبرى وحولتها الى القطاع الخاص وفتحت الباب امام المواطنين لاقتناء اسهمها وشملت سياسة التخصيص اكثر من عشرين شركة كبيرة منها شركة الحديد الصلب وشركة الغاز والكهرباء والهاتف والنفط والمطارات. كما اعطت لمستأجري المساكن الحكومية الحق في شراء وتملك مساكنهم وغيرها من الاجراءات التي اجبرت فيها الدولة على التنازل عن ممتلكاتها لصالح المواطنين. فكانت النتيجة هي ان شهدت بريطانيا في الثمانينات حركة اقتصادية وانتعاشا نسبيا وتدفق رؤوس الاموال الاجنبية وتكونت قناعة الناخب البريطاني بالفوائد المباشرة الملموسة لحكم المحافظين.

Literal TT

The rule of the Conservatives was distinguished by its clearer and more principled striving for the values of Western capitalism and by their adoption of a gradual, total programme in order to separate the state and the society; and the start of the project of gradual relinquishing of/by the state of/from the task of social care and the clearing of the way in front of the movement of investment and capital by means of the reduction of taxes. And Thatcher set off from an unyielding philosophical-ideological conception with which she fought the unions and broke their power; then she transferred the public properties of the state in the great companies and converted them to the private sector, and opened the door in front of the citizens to buy their shares; and the policy of privatization covered more than twenty large companies, including the iron–steel company, the gas company, the electricity, the telephone, the oil, and the airports. She also gave the renters of government houses the right to buy and own their houses, and [she undertook] other measures in which she forced the state to give up its properties to the benefit of the citizens. And/So the result was that Britain in the eighties witnessed an economic movement and a relative revival, and the inpouring of foreign capital, and the conviction of the British voter came into being of the tangible, direct benefits of the rule of the Conservatives.

www.kaues.org

Practical 2.2 Degrees of freedom in translation

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate the text as part of an anthology of modern Arabic short stories. Your intended readership are educated English-speakers with only a general knowledge of the Arab world.

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Explain the main decisions of detail you made in producing your TT, paying special attention to the question of where on the free-literal continuum the translation is most appropriately placed.

Contextual information

This passage is taken from the short story النار والماء by the Syrian writer زكريا تامر (from St John 1999: 22–4). The main characters فواز and إلهام are two young people from a poor part of town who have fallen in love. The two have just met up, as previously agreed, in another part of town. At the start of this extract, إلهام is speaking:

ST

« – ماذا ستقول أمك عندما تراني معك؟ »

« – ستزغرد طبعا».

« – الزغردة في الأعراس».

« – طبعا سيكون هناك عرس».

« – عرس من؟ ».

« – عرس ولد اسمه فواز.».

« – ومن العروس؟ »

« – العروس بنت اسمها إلهام».

ضحكت إلهام بغبطة وحياء.

قال فواز: «سأطلب منك طلبا».

«– اطلب».

« – أريد أن أرى وجهك».

قالت: «انظر اليه. من يمنعك؟ »

قال: «أريد أن أراه دون هذا الحائط الأسود».

وأشار بسبابته الى الحجاب.

قالت إلهام: «لا».

« – أنت الآن بعيدة عن الحارة ولا أحد هنا يعرفنا فلماذا الخوف؟ ».

فرفعت إلهام الحجاب عن وجه أبيض وعينين سوداوين. فهتف بإعجاب ونشوة: «آه».

www.kaues.org

فقالت إلهام متسائلة بمكر: «هل سمعت أغنية تحبها؟».
« - أريد منك شيئا آخر».
« - أنت طماع».
« - أريد أن أمسك يدك».
« - سأصرخ حتى يأتي رجال الشرطة».
« - اصرخي».
« - سيأتي رجال الشرطة».
« - فليأتوا .. سأقول لهم: البنت خطيبتي ولا يحق لكم التدخل في الحياة الخاصة للمواطنين».
« - كلام لطيف».
« - سيدركون خطأهم ويعتذرون وينسحبون خجلين».

www.kaues.org

3

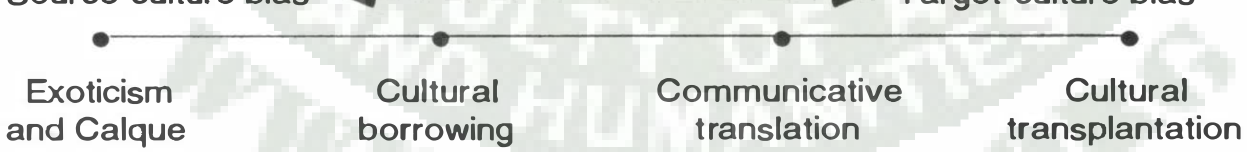
Cultural transposition

3.1 BASIC PRINCIPLES

In this chapter, we complete our introduction to the notion of translation loss by looking at some implications of the fact that translating involves not just two languages, but a transfer from *one culture to another*. General cultural differences are sometimes bigger obstacles to successful translation than linguistic differences.

We shall use the term **cultural transposition** for the main types and degrees of departure from literal translation that one may resort to in the process of transferring the contents of an ST from one culture to another. Any degree of cultural transposition involves the choice of features indigenous to the TL and the target culture in preference to features with their roots in the source culture. The result is to reduce foreign (that is SL-specific) features in the TT, thereby to some extent naturalizing it into the TL and its cultural setting.

The various degrees of cultural transposition can be visualized as points along a scale between the extremes of *exoticism* and *cultural transplantation*.



3.2 EXOTICISM

The extreme options in signalling cultural foreignness in a TT fall into the category of **exoticism**. A TT marked by exoticism is one which constantly uses grammatical and cultural features imported from the ST with minimal adaptation, and which thereby constantly signals the exotic source culture

www.kaues.org

and its cultural strangeness. This may indeed be one of the TT's chief attractions, as with some translations of classical Arabic literature that deliberately trade on exoticism. A TT like this, however, has an impact on the TL public which the ST could never have had on the SL public, for whom the text has no features of an alien culture.

A sample of exoticism in translation from Arabic would be a more or less literal translation of the following simple conversation (we have given versions of the conversation in both Standard Arabic, as it might appear in a short story or novel, and the contextually more natural colloquial Arabic):

	Literal translation		**Standard Arabic**		**Colloquial Arabic (Egyptian)**
A	Peace be upon you.	A	السلام عليكم	A	سلام عليكم
B	And upon you be peace.	B	وعليكم السلام	B	وعليكم سلام
A	How is the state?	A	كيف الحال؟	A	إزي الحال؟
B	Praise be to Allah.	B	الحمد لله	B	الحمد لله.
	How is your state?		كيف حالك انت؟		إزيك إنت؟
A	Praise be to Allah;	A	الحمد لله.	A	الحمد لله.
	how is the family?		كيف الأهل؟		إزي الأهل؟
	If Allah wills, well.		إن شاء الله بخير		إن شاء الله بخير
B	Well, praise be to Allah.	B	بخير الحمد لله	B	بخير الحمد لله
	etc.		etc.		etc.

Sometimes the nature of the ST makes it virtually impossible to avoid exoticism in the TT. Consider the following from the Classical Arabic text البخلاء by الجاحظ (from Lane 1994: 48, 56–7) in which formal features of the ST are extremely important, but are not easily matched by typical formal features of English:

وليس من أصل الأدب ولا في ترتيب الحكم ولا في عادات القادة ولا في تدبير السادة، أن يستوي في نفيس المأكول وغريب المشروب وثمين الملبوس وخطير المركوب، والناعم من كل فن واللباب من كل شكل، التابع والمتبوع والسيد والمسود [...]

> It is not consistent with the principles of etiquette, the hierarchy of authority, the customs of leaders, and the good rule of princes that the follower and the followed, the ruler and the ruled become equals with respect to precious food and marvelous drinks, valuable clothes and noble horses, and the finest and best kinds of things.

www.kaues.org

3.3 CALQUE

Sometimes, even where the TT as a whole is not marked by exoticism, a momentary foreignness is introduced. A **calque** is an expression that consists of TL words and respects TL **syntax**, but is unidiomatic in the TL because it is modelled on the structure of an SL expression. This lack of idiomaticity may be purely lexical and relatively innocuous, or it may be more generally grammatical. The following calques of Arabic proverbs illustrate decreasing degrees of idiomaticity:

اللي فات مات	What is past has died
يوم لك ويوم عليك	A day for you, a day against you
زاد الطين بلة	It increased the clay moistness

For most translation purposes, it can be said that a bad calque (like the third example) imitates ST features to the point of being ungrammatical in the TL, while a good one (like the first example) compromises between imitating ST features and offending against TL grammar. Any translator will confirm that it is easy, through ignorance, or – more usually – haste, to mar the TT with bad calques. However, it is conceivable that in some TTs the calque – and ensuing exoticism – may actually be necessary, even if its effects need to be palliated by some form of **compensation**.

For example, if the strategy is to produce a TT marked by exoticism, the proverb يوم لك ويوم عليك may well be calqued as 'A day for you, a day against you'. But, because of the prevailing exoticism of the TT, it might not be clear that this is actually a proverb. This would be a significant translation loss if it were important that the reader should realize that the speaker is using a proverb. In that case, the loss could be reduced with an explanatory addition such as 'you know the saying': 'You know the saying: "A day for you, a day against you".'

What was originally a calqued expression sometimes actually becomes a standard TL cultural equivalent of its SL equivalent. Perhaps the most obvious example of a calque from Arabic into current English is 'Mother of ...', from the Arabic أم المعارك used by Saddam Hussein to describe the 'battle' between Iraqi troops and those of the coalition organized to drive the invading Iraqi army from Kuwait. (In fact, this is often mis-calqued into English as 'Mother of all ...', rather than simply 'Mother of ...'.)

Standardized calques from English into modern Arabic include إعادة تدوير 'recycling', لاعنف 'non-violence', لعب دوراً 'play a rôle', among many others.

www.kaues.org

3.4 CULTURAL TRANSPLANTATION

At the opposite end of the scale from exoticism is **cultural transplantation**, whose extreme forms are hardly translations at all, but more like adaptations – the wholesale transplanting of the entire setting of the ST, resulting in the entire text being rewritten in an indigenous target culture setting.

An example of cultural transplantation is the remaking of the Japanese film 'The Seven Samurai' as the Hollywood film 'The Magnificent Seven'. An example involving Arabic would be the retelling of a Juha joke with the replacement of Juha and other typical Middle-Eastern characters with characters typical of the TL culture, and corresponding changes in background setting. In a British context, one might, for example, begin the 'translation' of the joke 'A man walked into a pub'.

It is not unusual to find examples of cultural transplantation on a small scale in translation. For example, in a scene from the short story النار والماء by the Syrian writer زكريا تامر, some rich adolescent girls are poking fun at a girl and boy from a poor part of town who are wandering around together, obviously in love. One of the rich girls calls out «قيس وليلى», alluding to the story of the semi-legendary doomed love affair between the poet قيس بن المُلَوَّح (also known as مجنون) and a woman called ليلى. This has been translated (St John 1999: 30) as 'Just like Romeo and Juliet'.

By and large, normal translation practice avoids the two extremes of wholesale exoticism and wholesale cultural transplantation. In avoiding the two extremes, the translator will consider the alternatives lying between them on the scale given at the end of § 3.1 of this chapter.

3.5 CULTURAL BORROWING

The first alternative is to transfer an ST expression verbatim into the TT. This is termed **cultural borrowing**. It introduces a foreign element into the TT. Of course, something foreign is by definition exotic; this is why, when the occasion demands, it can be useful to talk about exotic elements introduced by various translation practices. But cultural borrowing is different from exoticism proper, as defined above: unlike exoticism, cultural borrowing does not involve adaptation of the SL expression into TL forms.

An example of cultural borrowing would be the rendering of a culturally specific term by a **transliteration**, without further explanation. Thus, for example, فوطة, as used in Iraq, would be rendered by 'futa', rather than, say, by 'wrap' or 'robe' (a فوطة in Iraq being a sarong-like garment which is worn by women). A cultural borrowing of this kind might well be signalled by the use of italics.

Sometimes, the nature of the text may make the use of exoticism more or less unavoidable. Consider the following, from a fairly academic text about

www.kaues.org

the Academy of Musical Studies in Iraq, which describes a concert given by the Academy (Evans 1994: ١٦٥).

> تلخص منهاج الحفلة في (١٥) فقرة .. (٦) منها تمثل الاتجاه العربي المصري كما نعرفه من الراديو والتلفزيون. وهذه الفقرات الست اشتملت على غناء الموشحات وعلى تقاسيم متأثرة بالمدرسة المصرية – للآلات العربية الكلاسيكية كالقانون والعود والناي. أضف الى ذلك تأثير المدرسة المصرية في تكوين الفرق الموسيقية التي تدخل فيها الآن الكمان بأعداد كبيرة.

This has been translated (Evans 1994: 15) as:

> The concert programme consisted of fifteen sections, six of which were in the Egyptian style as we know it from radio and television. These six parts comprised *muwashshahat* and solos influenced by the Egyptian School – from classical instruments such as the *qanun*, the *ud* and the *nay*. The structure of the music groups was also influenced by the Egyptian School, as they also contained large numbers of violins.

Here the word كمان translates easily into English as 'violin' – since exactly the same instrument is used in both cultures. However, the other instruments are specific to the Middle East. A قانون is an instrument rather like a dulcimer, whose strings are plucked using metal plectrums attached to the fingers; an عود is a short-necked lute, the strings of which are plucked with a plectrum; and a ناي is a flute without a mouthpiece, made of bamboo or more rarely of wood, which, unlike the European flute, is held in a slanting forward position when blown (cf. Wehr). Translating قانون as 'dulcimer', or ناي as 'flute' would significantly distort what is meant by the Arabic; even translating عود as 'lute' (the word 'lute' is derived from the Arabic العود) would disguise the fact that an عود is recognizably different from a European lute. Similarly, translating موشح as 'strophic poem' or the like, would here disguise the precise nature of the material being used, as well as the fact that what is being dealt with here is poetry set to music. Cultural borrowing on this scale introduces so many exotic elements into the TT that it almost shades into exoticism proper.

Where precise technical terms are important, one solution is for the translator to add a glossary at the end of the book, or to use footnotes or endnotes. Alternatively, where the translator decides that for some reason it is necessary to retain an SL term, but also to make it plain to the reader roughly what is meant, it is sometimes possible to insert an explanation, or partial explanation, into the TT alongside the cultural borrowing, normally as unobtrusively as possible. Using this technique, the above extract could have been translated along the following lines:

www.kaues.org

> The concert programme consisted of fifteen sections, six of which were in the Egyptian style as we know it from radio and television. These six parts comprised pieces involving the *muwashshah* verse form and solos influenced by the Egyptian School – from classical instruments such as the plucked dulcimer (the *qanun*) and the Arab lute (the *ud*) and the *nay* flute. The structure of the music groups was also influenced by the Egyptian School, as they also contained large numbers of violins.

This translation sounds somewhat strained, but elsewhere the combination of cultural borrowing plus additional explanatory material can be a useful technique. An example is the following (from Pennington 1999: 4), which deals with the response of American Muslims to the use of the crescent and star as a general symbol of Islam in American public places:

> واعترضت قلة منهم بحجة ان الهلال والنجمة في أمريكا «بدعة» تخالف الاسلام [...]

> A few of them objected, on the grounds that the American use of the Crescent and Star is *bid'a* ('innovation', which Islam opposes) [...]

Here, the English gloss 'innovation' on the Arabic word بدعة has been unobtrusively introduced into the TT. (The translator has also included 'which Islam opposes' inside the brackets, in contrast with تخالف الاسلام in the ST, which is part of the main text.)

Sometimes, a cultural borrowing becomes an established TT expression. Examples from Arabic into English are often religious in nature; e.g. 'imam', 'Allah', 'sheikh'. A recent cultural borrowing is 'intifada' (cf. Ch. 2.2.1). Cultural borrowings shade into: (i) forms which were originally borrowed, but which are no longer regarded as foreign, e.g. 'algebra' (from الجبر), (ii) forms which have been borrowed, but have shifted meaning in the course of borrowing, e.g. 'algorithm' (ultimately from الخوارزمي, the man who invented them), and (iii) forms which have been borrowed, but have a sense in the TL which is not the normal sense in the SL, e.g. 'minaret' (from منارة, where the word for 'minaret' in most of the Arab world is مئذنة), 'alcohol' (from الكحل, which means 'antimony' in Arabic). It is possible to include these latter types under cultural borrowings, although they might more reasonably be regarded as simple denotative equivalents (cf. Chapter 5), inasmuch as the words are no longer popularly regarded as 'foreign' in nature.

www.kaues.org

3.6 COMMUNICATIVE TRANSLATION

As we have seen (Ch. 2.1.4), communicative translation is normal in the case of culturally conventional formulae where literal translation would be inappropriate.

Examples of stock phrases in Arabic and English are ممنوع التدخين 'no smoking', ممنوع الدخول 'no entry'. Problems may arise where the TL has no corresponding stock phrase to one used in the SL, e.g. because there is no cultural equivalent. Consider, in this regard, the use of religious formulae in everyday Arabic; إن شاء الله, الحمد لله, عليكم السلام ورحمة الله وبركاته. 'Equivalents' for these can be found in English, but they will often either seem unnatural or will involve considerable rephrasing. إن شاء الله, for example, may often be most naturally rendered by 'I hope', a formula in English which clearly lacks the religious aspect of the original Arabic. Similarly, take the phrase نعيماً, said to someone who has had their hair cut, and the reply أنعم الله عليك. Here نعيماً might be translated as 'Your hair looks nice' ('Congratulations' in this context seems over-enthusiastic in English), to which the most natural reply would be something like, 'Thanks very much', or 'Oh, that's kind of you to say so'. These are not, however, stock phrases in the same sense as the Arabic نعيماً and أنعم الله عليك, and it would be wrong to over-use them in a TT.

Regarding proverbial expressions, consider again إللي فات مات. Three possible translations of this might be:

LITERAL	That which has passed has died
BALANCED	What's past is gone
COMMUNICATIVE	Let bygones be bygones/What's done is done

In most contexts, one might expect 'Let bygones be bygones' to be the most reasonable translation. However, in a context in which the word 'past' figures prominently, it might be that the second translation would be appropriate, since it would echo the key word directly. Similarly, one might want to avoid the use of the proverb 'Let bygones be bygones' in a context where it could make the TT more clichéd than the ST.

3.7 TRANSLITERATING NAMES

The issues involved in cultural transposition are well illustrated in the transliteration of names. In transliterating Arabic names, it is possible to follow either one of a number of more or less standard transliteration systems or to adopt a more ad hoc approach. A transliteration of the mountainous area of Yemen بعدان using a transliteration system, for example, might be *baʿdân*. Here the symbol ʿ transliterates the Arabic letter ع, while the symbol

www.kaues.org

â transliterates the Arabic combination آ. The advantage of a transliteration system is that it allows the reader to reconvert the English back into Arabic script. However, since this is something which is only normally required in an academic context, the use of transliteration systems is generally limited to academic translations. The use of a transliteration system in other cases may give a stronger sense of the exotic than is appropriate for the context.

The use of a more ad hoc approach is illustrated by the transliteration of بعدان as *Ba'dan* or *Badan*. The advantage of this approach is that the transliterated form looks more like an English word; there are no obviously strange symbols involved – although the transliteration may contain elements which are not standard letters in English, an example in this case occurring in the first transliteration of بعدان, *Ba'dan*, which involves the use of the apostrophe. The disadvantage of the ad hoc approach is that the transliteration adopted may suggest a pronunciation of the word in English which is very far from the pronunciation of the Arabic original. The form *Badan* for example is supposed to render the Arabic بعدان in this case. However, the same English form could also correspond to Arabic forms such as بَدَن or بادَن or بِدان etc.

Many Arabic proper names have transliteration-type English equivalents. For instance, عَمّان is standardly 'Amman'. In other cases the transliteration-type English equivalent is more localized. In many part of the Middle East, the name حسين is standardly transcribed as 'Hussein', or 'Hussain'; in north Africa, however, where French is the dominant European language, the standard transcription is 'Hoceine'.

Some Arabic proper names, obviously, have standard indigenous English equivalents which cannot properly be regarded as transliterations; e.g. 'Cairo' for القاهرة, 'Damascus' for دمشق. Other cases are even more complicated; for example for الدار البيضاء, English uses 'Casablanca', i.e. the Spanish name for the city, of which the Arabic is itself a calque.

Where there is a standard indigenous English equivalent, a translator would be expected to use this, except where there is a compelling reason not to do so; e.g. a need to introduce a greater degree of exoticism into the TL text than would be conveyed by the use of the standard English TL equivalent.

PRACTICAL 3

Practical 3.1 Cultural transposition

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate the text as part of a collection of translations of short stories by يوسف إدريس which you are

www.kaues.org

producing. The intended readership consists of educated native English speakers with general knowledge of the Arab world, but no specific expertise in Arabic or Islamic culture. Accordingly, the translation is expected to be readily understandable to the target audience. However, it should attempt to avoid extreme deviations from the source culture (cultural transplantation).

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Explain the main decisions of detail you made in producing your TT.

Contextual information

The text is taken from مشوار, a short story by the Egyptian writer يوسف إدريس (1954: 140) about a village policeman, الشبراوي, who is detailed to take a deranged woman زبيدة from her home in the Delta to a mental hospital in Cairo. الشبراوي has become detained in Cairo, and it is now evening. الشبراوي has been thinking about what he can do with زبيدة overnight. At this point in the story, the two characters find themselves caught up in the popular Sufi ceremonies which regularly take place by the mosque of السيدة زينب (who was a granddaughter of the Prophet) in central Cairo.

This text contains a number of features which are taken from Egyptian Arabic. In this regard you may find the following information useful:

حُرْمه This means 'woman' as well as 'sanctity', 'inviolability' in both Standard Arabic and colloquial Egyptian. However, it is more commonly used to mean 'woman' in Egyptian. As the double meaning 'inviolability/woman' suggests, the word carries strong cultural associations of the status of women in Egyptian society. The rendering of the feminine suffix as ـه here, rather than ـة, indicates the colloquialism.

حِسْبة In Standard Arabic حسْبة means 'arithmetical problem, sum' (Wehr), but in Egyptian collóquial it has the sense of 'calculation'. Here what is meant is the cost of the hotel.

بالراحة In Standard Arabic this means 'leisurely, gently, slowly, at one's ease' (Wehr). Here the author has used the phrase in the more colloquial sense of 'at least'.

على الله The phrase على الله is used in Egyptian Arabic 'to imply misgiving about an outcome' (Badawi and Hinds). حكاية in Egyptian Arabic can mean 'matter', 'affair' (as well as 'story'). Here what seems to be meant is that الشبراوي can't afford the hotel.

www.kaues.org

ST

وحين كان يسترد أنفاسه لاحت له فكرة اللوكاندة ، ولكنه نبذها في الحال فهما اثنان ، وزبيدة حرمه وخطرة ، والحسبة فيها بالراحة خمسون ستون قرشا ، والحكاية على الله .

ولم يبتعد الشبراوي كثيرا فقد تربع أمام جامع السيدة وجذبها حتى تهاوت بجانبه ، الحياء يمنعه من البكاء فلم يكن يعتقد أن انسانا آخر في العالم له مثل تعاسته .. وبؤسه، وكان مجاذيب السيدة حولهما كالنمل ، وحين زغردت زبيدة ضاع صوتها في تمتمة الشيوخ وبسملتهم وزقزقة النساء ودوامات الذكر ..

Practical 3.2 Cultural transposition

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate the text as part of a brochure for a British museum exhibition on folk customs in Sudan. The intended readership of the brochure will be museum-visitors who do not necessarily know anything about Sudan.

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Explain the decisions of detail you made in producing your translation.

Contextual information

The text is taken from a book entitled الشلوخ by the Sudanese academic يوسف فضل حسن (1986: 51–2). This book is a study of the origins and social significance of the traditional custom of 'scarification' (التشليخ) in northern Sudan: that is, the making of long cuts (normally either vertical or horizontal) into people's cheeks with a sharp blade or razor, in order to produce a lasting scar on the face. A scar produced in this way is called a شَلخ or شَلْخة (plural شلوخ). The action of producing the scar is referred to in this book as فصادة (cf. Wehr for general senses of فصد).

Boys typically underwent scarification around the age of five, and girls around the age of ten. The custom of scarification has in effect died out in the last few decades (although it may still persist in some very isolated rural communities).

The second paragraph of this extract begins with a recapitulation of some ideas which have been discussed just prior to the extract itself (hence the opening phrase نخلص من هذا كله).

You may also find the following information useful:

www.kaues.org

الدامر *'Ed Damer'*: town on the Nile, north of Khartoum.

الجعليين 'the *Ja'aliyyin*': large tribal grouping in northern Sudan (sg. جعلي).

عَبّاسي – refers to the tracing of ancestry to the paternal uncle of the Prophet العباس بن عبد المطلب.

الشايقية 'the *Shaygiyya*': tribe in northern Sudan. The *Shaygiyya* are sometimes classified as part of the *Ja'aliyyin*.

حساب الجمل – a system of numerical representation which predates the introduction of Arabic numerals (الأرقام الهندية) in the Arab world. Each letter represents a particular number. Accordingly, by adding together the numerical values of each of the letters which make up a particular word, it is possible to calculate a numerical value for the entire word.

طريقة 'religious brotherhood, dervish order' (Wehr).

ST

وليس هناك اخصائي معلوم ينفرد بإجراء عمليات الفصادة. إذ الغالب أن يقوم بها الحجّام أو المزين أو البصير (الطبيب البلدي) أو القابلة وأمثالهم. وهناك من اشتهروا بإجراء هذه العملية لحسن أدائهم لها، مثل بنت المزين التي كانت تعيش في الدامر في أواسط هذا القرن وكانت قبلة لكثير من الراغبات في الشلوخ من سائر المناطق المجاورة.

نخلص من هذا كله الى أن المجموعات الجعلية العباسية، عدا الشايقية قد اقتبست الشلوخ العمودية الثلاثة من تقليد قديم كان سائدا في تلك المناطق وان هذه الشلوخ من علامات التمييز. ويقول بعض الجعليين ان الثلاثة خطوط العمودية أي ١١١ – مائة واحدى عشر تعني كلمة كافي، احد أسماء الله الحسنى، اذا اسقطت بحساب الجمل. وعلى ضوء ما توصلنا اليه من قدم هذه الشلوخ الثلاثة خطوط العمودية في تلك المنطقة فإن هذا التفسير غير منطقي.

ومع أن كلمتي (مشلخ جعلي) تشيران اساساً الى الثلاثة خطوط العمودية، فإن الجعليين قد عرفوا علامات تمييز أخرى. ومن أشهر هذه العلامات (السلم) ذو الدرجة الواحدة وهو كالحرف أتش H بالحروف اللاتينية [...] ويسمي البعض هذا الشلخ بسُلّم الشيخ الطيب البشير الجموعي (١٨٧٤–١٨٢٤) منشئ الطريقة السمانية في السودان.

www.kaues.org

4
Compensation

4.1 BASIC PRINCIPLES

In Chapter 3.3, we referred to the need on some occasions to palliate the effects of the use of calque by some form of compensation. The example we gave was the insertion of 'You know the saying' before 'A day for you, a day against you', to make it clear that this is a proverb and not an original formulation. This example is the tip of an iceberg. Compensation, in one or another of its many forms, is absolutely crucial to successful translation. In this chapter, we shall look more closely at what compensation is and is not, and at a few of the forms it can take.

To introduce the question we shall take examples from the last sentence of the ST in Practical 3.1, from the short story مشوار (إدريس 1954: 127):

[...] كان مجاذيب السيدة حولهما كالنمل ، وحين زغردت زبيدة ضاع صوتها في تمتمة الشيوخ وبسملتهم وزقزقة النساء ودوامات الذكر ..

A possible translation of زغردت in this extract is 'let out a ululation'. This would maintain a certain foreignness, the assumption being that even a reader who did not know what a ululation was in the context of women's behaviour in social gatherings in Egypt would be able to guess that it was some sort of culture-specific vocal sound. However, in a different context, or with a different readership, this assumption might not be justified – 'ululation' could sound facetious or comic. These effects would be a betrayal of the ST effects, and therefore count as a serious translation loss. The loss could be palliated by adding an exegetic element (cf. Ch. 1.3), along the lines 'let out a ululation as women do at times of great joy'. This does not make the idea of ululation any less unfamiliar in itself, but it does make the unfamiliarity less likely to have a misleading effect. This exegetic translation is a simple example of compensation: that is, mitigating the loss of important ST features by approximating their effects in the TT through means other than those used

www.kaues.org

in the ST. In other words, one type of translation loss is palliated by the deliberate introduction of another, considered less unacceptable by the translator. So, in our example, adding 'as women do at times of great joy' incurs great translation loss in terms of economy, denotative meaning (cf. Chapter 5) and cultural presupposition, but this is accepted because it significantly reduces an even greater loss in terms of message content. It is important to note the ad hoc, one-off, element in compensation: this is what distinguishes it from constraint, as we shall see in a moment.

Translators make this sort of compromise all the time, balancing loss against loss in order to do most justice to what, in a given ST, they think is most important. Our main aim in this book is to encourage student translators to make these compromises as a result of deliberate decisions taken in the light of such factors as the nature and purpose of the ST, the purpose of the TT, the nature and needs of the target public, and so on. In taking these decisions, it is vital to remember that compensation is not a matter of inserting any elegant-sounding phrase into a TT to counterbalance any weaknesses that may have crept in, but of countering a specific, clearly defined, serious loss with a specific, clearly defined less serious one.

To discern the parameters of compensation a bit more clearly, we can begin by looking at another expression in the extract from مشوار cited above, the final two words دوامات الذكر. There is a double difficulty here.

The first difficulty is the word ذكر. In a Sufi context, ذكر involves chanting a religious phrase, typically الله, or one of the other names of God. In this context, this would be a communal practice. A transliteration of ذكر as a cultural borrowing – e.g. 'dhikr' – would be incomprehensible to any but a specialist reader. An exegetic translation would be clearer, e.g. 'communal invocations of the name of God'. This rendering is like a dictionary entry, a paraphrase which defines the term ذكر, for which there is no conventional lexical equivalent in English (cf. the definition in Wehr of ذكر in Sufism as 'incessant repetition of certain words or formulas in praise of God, often accompanied by music and dancing'). Such a translation incurs notable translation loss in that it is less economical and semantically less precise than the ST ذكر, but this loss is not as serious as the obscurity of English 'dhikr' would be.

We can use this case to explore the boundary between compensation and constraint. This is a less straightforward example of compensation than was the exegetic translation of زغرد. 'Ululate' is a fairly common lexical equivalent for زغرد – although we may note that even this involves semantic distortion; Collins English Dictionary defines 'ululate' as 'to howl or wail, as with grief', and the word is derived from the Latin *ulula* 'screech owl', which suggests a sound rather different from the 'ululation' of women in the Middle East. Nonetheless, given that 'ululate' is commonly used to translate زغرد, the translator can freely choose whether to use it on its own and accept the slight obscurity and the misleading connotations, or whether to minimize

www.kaues.org

these by introducing a different loss in terms of denotative meaning and economy. ذكـر is different. To the extent that 'dhikr' is not feasible, the translator has no choice but to paraphrase. In principle, where there is no choice, there is constraint, not compensation. In our example, of course, there is still an element of choice, in that it is the translator who decides what the paraphrase will be; to this extent, there is an element of compensation in the translation. This would change if the paraphrase became the conventional TL rendering of ذكر. Once a rendering has entered the bilingual dictionary as a conventional lexical equivalent, using it is not a case of compensation. Thus, if the dictionary gave the meaning of ذكر as 'communal invocation of the name of God', and if this were standardly used as this equivalent in English, using this rendering in a TT would not be an instance of compensation, but of constraint – there would be little option but to adopt the conventional rendering.

The boundary between compensation and constraint is more clearly seen in communicative translations. For example, if we can imagine the very first time زاد الطين بلة was translated as 'it made matters worse', this was a case of compensation: the calque 'it increased the clay moistness' is, effectively, ungrammatical and meaningless. The first translator was prepared to incur major semantic and grammatical loss in order to avoid meaninglessness, an even greater loss. This was a resourceful piece of compensation. Since then, however, in so far as the communicative translation is mandatory, the translator is not exercising true choice, but simply identifying the conventionally correct translation.

Of course, the translator may decide that, in a given context, adopting the conventional dictionary translation would incur unacceptable translation loss. If the conventional translation is modified in order to palliate the loss, this may well be a case of compensation. To return to our example from مشوار given above, two key elements in the sentence as a whole are كان [مجاذيب السيدة حولهما] كالنمل 'teemed like ants' (the implication of 'communal') and the clashing noise of many voices (زغردت '[let out a] ululation', تمتمة 'murmuring', زقزقة 'chirping', and ذكر 'invocations'). Supposing the dictionary gives 'communal invocations of the name of God' as the conventional translation of ذكر. It may be felt, in this particular context, that 'invocations' would be too abstract, denoting a particular mode of relationship with God and losing the stress on 'voice' that is conveyed in the ST implication of 'chanting'. The translator might then decide on a new rendering of ذكر. One possibility is 'communal chanting(s) of the name of God', which keeps both elements, but loses that of 'throng of people'. A third possibility is to keep all three elements, as in 'communal chanted invocations', or 'chanted communal invocations' – but these collocations (cf. Ch. 6.6) sound odd in English, more like technical definitions than expressive descriptions. This loss in idiomaticity might be avoided by conflating 'communal' and 'chanting' into a single verb, as in 'chorusing invocations of the name of God'; the loss

www.kaues.org

here is that the element of musicality which is typically present in ذكر is at best only implicit: a chorus of voices does not necessarily sing – it can just as easily be speaking or shouting.

All these alternatives therefore incur significant loss. But to the extent that each is a one-off, unpredictable translation, created to meet the demands of a specific context, they are all instances of compensation, rather than of constraint. Whichever one is chosen, the translator is balancing loss against loss in an attempt to preserve in the TT the textual effects which are deemed most important in this particular ST, even though they are produced there by different means.

The second difficulty posed by دوامات الذكر is the use of دوامات 'whirlpools' as the first part of this genitive structure. The metaphor is clear, vivid and appropriate, fitting in well with the imagery of throng (especially the teeming ants) and noise-of-many-voices. But a literal translation, such as 'whirlpool of communal invocations', is inelegant (where the ST is not), and perhaps somewhat obscure. It could even be positively misleading, with a connotation of 'fast and short', via **collocative meanings** (Ch. 6.6) of 'whirlwind' – cf. 'whirlwind campaign/romance/tour', etc. The temptation is strong to drop the image, accept the loss, operate a grammatical transposition and use an adjective like 'ceaseless' or 'unceasing'. 'Eddying' would be closer than these in terms of denotative meaning, but 'eddying of communal invocations' is almost as obscure as 'whirlpool of communal invocations'; any sense it does make is too gentle and decorative. Yet the whirlpool image is too important in this text to be surrendered without a fight. Can it be preserved through compensation? In such cases, it is always worth looking to see where else in the clause, sentence or paragraph the image might be fitted in, without loss of **coherence** or idiomaticity, and without too great a loss of ST textual effect. The essential point is that Zubaida's voice is lost in a whirlpool of other voices. One possibility is therefore to combine grammatical transposition and a change of place in the sentence. Here are two alternatives for discussion:

> ... her voice was whirled away among the pious murmurings ...
> ... her voice was whirled away, lost among the pious murmurings ...

Another possibility is to keep the noun 'whirlpool', but to apply it to all the voices:

> ...when Zubaida let out a ululation, it was lost in a whirlpool of voices, the pious murmurings,...

In all three versions, the specific application of دوامات to ذكر is lost, and the grammar is changed. But at least the strategic connection between teeming people and whirling voices is kept. In any case, the adjective 'ceaseless' can

www.kaues.org

still be applied to whatever rendering is chosen for ذكر: if this is done, the ST emphasis on the insistent presence of the invocations/chants is kept, since they are marked apart from the murmurings and cries/chirpings. There is thus, in the sentence as a whole, grammatical loss and a loss in semantic precision; but there would have been a far greater loss if 'whirlpool' had been applied to 'invocations', or if it had been dropped altogether. Each of these three alternatives is a good example of compensation: although the ST effects are not preserved completely, far less of them is lost than would have been the case if the translator had not introduced the specific, anodyne, losses we have outlined.

4.2 CATEGORIES OF COMPENSATION

In discussing TTs, it is sometimes helpful to distinguish between different categories of compensation. We shall suggest three. Remember, however, that most cases of compensation belong to more than one category. The most important thing is not to agonize over what label to give to an instance of compensation, but to be clear what loss it compensates for and how it does so. Remember, too, that the question of how to compensate can never be considered in and for itself, in isolation from other crucial factors: context, style, genre, the purpose of the ST and the TT.

Compensation is needed whenever consideration of these factors confronts the translator with inevitable, but unwelcome compromise. Simply put, it is a less unwelcome compromise. It usually entails a difference in kind between the ST textual effect and the TT textual effect. We shall call this **compensation in kind**. It can take very many forms. For instance, it may involve making explicit what is implicit in the ST, or implicit what is explicit. Denotative meaning may have to replace **connotative meaning**, and vice versa. Compensation may involve substituting concrete for abstract, or abstract for concrete. It nearly always involves different parts of speech and **syntactic** structures from those indicated by literal translation. In some texts, compensation in kind might involve replacing a piece of Classical Arabic poetry by an analogous piece of English poetry. An ST pun may have to be replaced with a different form of word play. All these sorts of substitutions may be confined to single words, but they more usually extend to whole phrases, sentences, or even paragraphs. Sometimes, a whole text is affected. For instance, quite apart from lexical or grammatical considerations, if a poem is heavily marked by **rhyme** and **assonance**, and the translator decides that for some reason rhyme and assonance would lead to unacceptable translation loss, compensation might consist of heavily marking the TT with rhythm and **alliteration** instead.

All the examples of compensation we have discussed so far are various sorts of compensation in kind. Here is another, taken from a translation of

www.kaues.org

the opening two paragraphs of the short story نخلة على الجدول by the Sudanese writer الطيب صالح. This section consists of an exchange between Sheikh Mahjoub and Hussein the Merchant, who wants to buy the produce of his date palm. What is striking about Hussein the Merchant's speech is that it uses Standard Arabic (and a rather formal version of Standard Arabic at that), whereas almost all the other dialogue in the story uses Sudanese colloquial. The use of Standard Arabic here is intended to emphasize the haughtiness of Hussein the Merchant, clearly distinguishing his character from others within the short story. The original Arabic reads:

«يفتح الله»
«عشرون جنيها يا رجل، تحل منها ما عليك من دين ، وتصلح بها حالك. وغداً العيد ، وانت لم تشتر بعد كبش الضحية! واقسم لولا انني اريد مساعدتك ، فان هذه النخلة لا تساوي عشرة جنيهات».

This has been translated (Montgomery 1994: 21) as:

> 'No deal!'
> 'Look here my man, with twenty pounds you could settle your debts and make your life a lot easier. The Eid festival is tomorrow and you haven't even bought a sacrificial lamb yet. As I would not ordinarily pay more than ten pounds for a date palm like this, I would like to think that I am being of some assistance to you.'

The style of this translation is somewhat formal and stilted, and is hardly typical of everyday spoken English; take for instance 'my man' (for يا رجل), 'ordinarily' (where 'normally' might be expected), and 'I am being of some assistance to you' (for اريد مساعدتك). This is deliberate compensation in kind; whereas Hussein the Merchant's haughtiness is conveyed in the Arabic by the use of standard Arabic, in English it is conveyed by the use of a rather stuffy **register**.

Compensation also usually entails change of place, the TT textual effect occurring at a different place, relative to the other features in the TT, from the corresponding textual effect in the ST. We shall call this **compensation in place**. Moving 'whirlpool' so that it qualifies 'murmurings' and 'cries' as well as 'invocations' is a good example. And, as in the same example, compensation very often involves both change in kind and change in place. Here is another example, from the story النار والماء by زكريا تامر. The ST phrase البسيها وتعالي خوفي اخوتي الصغار فهم كالعفاريت has been translated as 'You can put it on and frighten my naughty little brothers' (St John 1999: 29). Here the prepositional phrase كالعفاريت is not translated literally, 'like devils': grammatically, 'my little brothers for they are like devils' would not fit in idiomatically; and semantically it would give a sense of evil not intended in the ST. So the translator has made use of compensation

www.kaues.org

in kind, replacing the Arabic clause فهم كالعفاريت by an appropriate English adjective 'naughty'. This compensation in kind, however, also involves compensation in place; the clause فهم كالعفاريت of the ST is lost from its position after the noun in the ST, to be rendered by an adjective before the noun in the TT. That is, while a literal translation ('for they are like devils') would entail unacceptable grammatical and semantic loss, omitting the idea altogether would be just as unacceptable; the ST introduces grammatical and semantic changes (and therefore losses), but these are compensated for because the changes preserve the idiomaticity and the essential message content.

Another example of compensation in place and kind is found in a translation of السيد ومراته في مصر by بيرم التونسي. This is a play, written in Egyptian colloquial Arabic, in the 1930s, about the return to Egypt of an Egyptian couple who have spent the last few years in Paris. In our example the wife adopts a pseudo-French style of broken Arabic as she is discussing how a French woman might view Egypt:

> أيوه بقت تقول له مصر كله ناس وسخين كتير .. ياكل زي واخد خمار .. وينام زي واخد طور .. والدنيا هنا كله كناسة كتير كتير .. الستات هنا كله يرمي الكناسة في عربيات مخصوصة .

The ST here includes pseudo-Frenchisms on both the phonic and the **grammatical** levels. Phonically, we find خ for ح (واخد for واحد twice; خمار for حمار), and also ط for ت (طور for تور). Grammatically, we find other features felt to be typical of native French speakers, e.g. lack of proper gender agreement. These effects cannot be copied exactly in English, because English is too different from Arabic phonically and grammatically. But to lose them from the TT would be unacceptable – the text would be pointless without them. Accordingly, the translator (Foreman 1996: 35) renders this speech as:

> – Yes, she'd say to me that Egypt is full of extremely feelthy people zey eat and zey sleep like zee peeg and zat everywhere round here is covered in garbage. In France all zee garbage is throuwn on zee dust cart.

The translator has mimicked the pronunciation of English by French speakers (or at least this pronunciation as it is popularly presented); so 'feelthy' for 'filthy', 'zey' for 'they', 'zee' for 'the', 'peeg' for 'pig', etc. He has also introduced some grammatical errors typically made in English by French speakers; e.g. 'zey eat and zey sleep like zee peeg', instead of 'they eat and sleep like pigs'. The pseudo-French forms of the TT, however, do not precisely mirror those of the ST. There is thus a touch of cultural transplantation (Ch. 3.4), and it amounts to compensation in kind and in place: ST phonic and grammatical features are lost, but the textual effects are largely restored by other means and in other places in the TT.

www.kaues.org

Compensation also often involves a change in 'economy', ST features being spread over a longer length of TT. We shall call this **compensation by splitting**. Compensation by splitting very often also involves compensation in kind. Examples are the renderings of زغردت and ذكر above. Here is an example of compensation by splitting that involves minimal change in kind. It is from the novel مدينة البغي, by the Palestinian writer عيسى بشارة. The ST concerns the relations between the workers at a newspaper:

> لم يكن ثمة ود واحترام متبادلان على الصعيد الشخصي يمكن ان يشكلا خطوة في الاتجاه الصحيح لتحقيق الانسجام في العمل على الأقل. ولهذا بقي الجميع يتعاملون بحرص وحذر شديدين .

This has been translated (Brown 1996: 43) as:

> There was neither mutual friendship nor respect on a personal level, which would make possible a step in the right direction towards achieving harmony at work at least. Owing to this, their dealings with each other continued to be motivated by overwhelming greed and extreme caution.

In the ST, the Arabic dual adjective شديدين applies to both حرص 'greed' and حذر 'caution'. However, rather than go for a translation such as 'extreme greed and caution', the translator has opted to split the Arabic adjective شديدين into the two English adjectives 'overwhelming' and 'extreme'. She has done this on the grounds that these two forms collocate more happily with each of their respective nouns than would any single adjective applied to both nouns. In other words, a small loss of accuracy in denotative meaning is compensated for by a greater degree of collocational acceptability than would be possible in literal translation.

A similar rationale applies to the following example, from a book entitled العسكر والحكم في البلدان العربية:

> ومن التناقض الواضح ان ترى الفريق، العسكر الحاكم، الذي يتبنى سياسة التنمية والإنماء والمشاريع الضخمة والمضخمة [...]

This has been translated (Humphrys 1999: 12) as:

> It is clearly contradictory that the ruling military, who adopt a policy of development and promote huge state projects [...]

Here the single word يتبنى in Arabic has been split in the TT, being translated firstly as 'adopt', since this is a word which typically goes with 'development', and secondly as 'promote', since this is word which typically goes with '[state] projects'.

We have labelled the last two examples compensation rather than constraint,

www.kaues.org

because the translation decisions are unpredictable, depending entirely on context: neither splitting is likely to be prescribed in the dictionary. However, translation by expansion is often the conventional, more or less mandatory, solution. In such cases, compensation does not come into the reckoning. For example, فراش in Arabic covers includes both 'moths' and 'butterflies' in English (that is to say, it is a **hyperonym** of 'moth' and 'butterfly'; cf. Ch. 5.1.2). Accordingly, one would expect an Arabic entomological book title الفراش to be translated into English as 'Moths and Butterflies', or as 'Butterflies and Moths'. In either case, there is no question of compensation being involved here.

Similarly, expansion is sometimes dictated by the grammatical or stylistic norms of the TL. For example, subject phrases beginning with أن in Arabic are very typically translated by the initial phrase 'the fact that' in English. Thus, the Arabic [...] أن يكون التوظيف في الجيش will in many contexts almost inevitably be translated as 'The fact that employment in the army is [...]' (Humphrys 1999: 5).

The distinction between compensation in kind, compensation in place and compensation by splitting is a rough-and-ready categorization. One could even argue for a fourth general category, that of 'compensation by merging', as in this description:

> تململ صابر في سريره دون أن يستبدّ به النعاس وجعل يطوف بناظريه في أرجاء الحجرة: طاولة مخلعة صغيرة ، وكتب متناثرة على حصيرة من القش والقصب، وإبريق من الفخار مملوء بالماء، وبعض الملابس الرثة على أحد الجدران.

This has been translated (Brown 1996: 38) as:

> Saber fidgeted in his bed without feeling sleepy. Instead he let his eyes roam about the room: a small broken table, books scattered on a straw mat, a clay pitcher full of water and some old clothes hanging on one of the walls.

Here, حصيرة من القش والقصب has been translated as 'a straw mat' rather than the literal 'straw and cane mat', on the grounds that this is over-descriptive in English, the western target audience caring little for the distinction between 'straw' and 'cane'. Perhaps, then, the semantic loss is compensated for by avoidance of the greater loss in idiomaticity that literal translation would have entailed.

This kind of instance aside, it is certainly true that translation by compression or omission is, like translation by expansion, often virtually mandatory. Consider, for example ...وهذا when used in an Arabic radio broadcast to introduce a new sub-topic, or جدير بالذكر at the start of a paragraph in an Arabic newspaper. Given the mandatory nature of the omission, the notion of

www.kaues.org

compensation is not applicable here.

However many categories of compensation it may be theoretically possible to define, our aim here is not to elaborate a taxonomy, but simply to alert students to the possibilities and mechanisms of compensation, both in producing and in analysing and explaining TTs. In fact, in the case of compensation in kind and in place, it is not usually even necessary to label them as such, because virtually all compensation entails difference in kind and in place. It cannot be stressed too much that the point of this course is to enable students to produce good translations, and to give them an apparatus and a terminology that will help them to say why they are good. The aim is not to show off the terminology for its own sake, but to put it to use where it is helpful.

The most important lesson to be learned from the discussion is that compensation is a matter of choice and decision. It is the reduction of an unacceptable translation loss through the calculated introduction of a less unacceptable one. Or, to put it differently, a deliberately introduced translation loss is a small price to pay if it is used to avoid the more serious loss that would be entailed by literal translation. So where there is no real choice open to the translator, the element of active compensation is minimal. The clearest illustrations of this, as we have seen, are communicative translation and the myriad cases where the generally accepted literal translation involves grammatical transposition and/or expansion or contraction.

Compensation, then, is a matter of conscious choice, and is unlikely to be successful if left purely to inspiration (although a touch of inspiration never comes amiss!). Before deciding on how to compensate for a translation loss, translators are therefore best advised to assess as precisely as possible what the loss is and why it matters, both in its immediate context and in the ST as a whole. Only then can they be reasonably sure of not inadvertently introducing, somewhere in the TT, more serious translation losses than the ones they are trying to reduce.

PRACTICAL 4

Practical 4.1 Compensation

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt, bearing particularly in mind issues raised in this chapter. You are to imagine that the TT is to be published in a section of an American newspaper which contains selections from other newspapers from around the world. No specialist knowledge is to be assumed on the part of the TT reader.

(ii) Translate the text into idiomatic English.

www.kaues.org

(iii) Explain the decisions of detail which you made in producing your TT, paying special attention to whether your rendering is an instance of compensation or of constraint. Where there is compensation, say what loss it compensates for and how it does it.

Contextual information

The ST is the start of an article in the الشرق الأوسط newspaper of 6 November 1995. It was written shortly after the assassination of the Israeli Prime Minister Yitzhak Rabin by an Israeli extremist opposed to the Middle East peace process. The article goes on to express the wish that the Israeli Labour Party, of which Rabin was leader, will continue to support the peace process, and concludes: إننا لا نريد مذابح في منطقتنا. بل نريد الامن والسلام والاستقرار ومهمتنا جميعا أن ندافع عن السلام لنعيش نحن وخصومنا في سلام. The writer of the article was the veteran Egyptian columnist مصطفى أمين, who had a daily 'personal opinion' column in the Saudi-owned but internationally distributed الشرق الأوسط newspaper.

ST

فكرة

مصطفى امين

كنت دائما ضد الرئيس رابين، كنت أعارضه وأقاومه وأقبح من تصرفاته العنيفة ضد العرب، ولكني حزنت لمصرعه، وشعرت بأننا خسرنا خصماً قوياً كان يعرقل المفاوضات، وكان يتشدد في مواقفه ضد العرب، ولكنه كان يحب بلاده، وقد حاربنا وانتصر علينا، ثم حاربناه وانتصرنا عليه في 6 اكتوبر. استنكرت مصرعه لأننا ضد الاغتيالات سواء كان المجني عليه صديقاً أم خصماً، وكان أهم ما في هذا الحادث المؤلم انه أثبت أن العرب ليسوا وحدهم ميدان الاغتيالات، بل ان اسرائيل كذلك تشاركنا هذا البلاء. ونحمد الله ان رابين قتل بيد يهودي، ولو كان القاتل عربياً لانهالت علينا الاتهامات من كل مكان، ولما بقي عربي واحد بغير أن يتهم بأنه قاتل رئيس وزراء اسرائيل. أما الآن فالقاتل شخص واحد لا ملايين العرب الذين يتهمون بكل شيء يحدث في العالم.

www.kaues.org

Practical 4.2 Compensation

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate the text for inclusion in an anthology of modern Arabic short stories. The intended readership is educated English speakers with no specific knowledge of the Arab world.

(ii) Translate the text into English, paying particular attention to issues of compensation.

(iii) Explain the decisions of detail which you made in producing your TT, paying special attention to whether your rendering is an instance of compensation or of constraint. Where there is compensation, say what loss it compensates for and how it does it.

Contextual information

This text is taken from a short story by يوسف إدريس entitled طبلية من السماء in the collection حادثة شرف (n.d.*b*: 40–1), and concerns an incident in the village of Munyat El Nasr.

ST

أن ترى واحدا يجري في منية النصر فذلك حادث .. وكأنه صوت السرينة في عربة بوليس النجدة فلا بد أن وراء جريه أمراً مثيراً . وما أجمل أن يحدث في البلدة الهادئة البطيئة امر مثير !

وفي يوم الجمعة ذاك لم يكن واحد فقط هو الذي يجري في منية النصر ، الواقع أنه كانت هناك حركة جري واسعة النطاق. ولم يكن أحد يعرف السبب .. فالشوارع والأزقة تسبح في هدوئها الأبدي وينتابها ذلك الركود الذي يستتب في العادة بعد صلاة الجمعة ، حيث ترش أرضها بماء الغسيل المختلط بالرغوة والزهرة ورائحة الصابون الرخيص ، وحيث النسوة في الداخل مشغولات باعداد الغداء والرجال في الخارج يتسكعون ويتصعلكون الى أن ينتهي اعداد الغداء .. واذا بهذا الهدوء كله يتعكر بسيقان ضخمة غليظة تجري وتهز البيوت ، ويمر الجاري بجماعة جالسة أمام بيت فلا ينسى وهو يجري أن يلقي السلام ، ويرد الجالسون سلامه ويحاولون سؤاله عن سبب الجري ولكنه يكون قد نفذ . حينئذ يقفون ويحاولون معرفة السبب وطبعا لا يستطيعون ، وحينئذ يدفعهم حب الاستطلاع الى المشي ثم يقترح أحدهم الإسراع فيسرعون ويجدون أنفسهم آخر الأمر يجرون ، ولا ينسون أن يلقوا السلام على جماعات الجالسين فتقف الجماعات ولا تلبث أن تجد نفسها تجري هي الأخرى.

www.kaues.org

5

Denotative meaning and translation issues

5.1 DENOTATIVE MEANING

In this chapter and the next one, we shall consider the two basic aspects of the semantic matrix of language: denotative meaning and connotative meaning.

Translation is concerned with meaning. But, as has already become very clear, the term 'meaning' is elastic and indeterminate, especially when applied to a whole text. This is true even of denotative meaning (also known as **'cognitive'**, **'propositional'** or **'literal'** meaning). Denotative meaning is that kind of meaning which is fully supported by ordinary semantic conventions, such as the convention that 'window' refers to a particular kind of aperture in a wall or roof.

Unfortunately, even dictionary definitions of words are not without their problems. This is because they impose, by abstraction and crystallization of one or more core senses, a rigidity of meaning that words do not often show in reality, and partly because, once words are put into a context, their denotative meanings become even more flexible. These two facts make it difficult to pin down the precise denotative meanings in any text of any complexity. The more literary the text, the more this is so; but it is true even of the most soberly informative texts. In this chapter, we shall discuss three degrees of semantic equivalence – that is, how close given expressions are to having identical denotative meanings.

5.1.1 Synonymy

Denotative meaning is a matter of categories into which a language divides the totality of communicable experience. So, for example, the denotative

www.kaues.org

meaning of the word 'pencil' (in the relevant sense) consists in the fact that all over the world one may find similar objects that are included in the category of 'pencil' – and of course all sorts of other objects that are excluded from it. To define a denotative meaning is to specify a 'range' covered by a word or phrase (in the relevant sense) in such a way that one knows what items are included in that range or category and what items are excluded. It is helpful to visualize denotative meanings as circles, because circles can represent intersections between categories. In exploring correspondence between denotative meanings, it is these intersections that are most significant, because they provide a kind of measure of semantic equivalence. So, for instance, the expressions 'my mother's father' and 'my maternal grandfather' may be represented as two separate circles. The two ranges of denotative meaning, however, coincide perfectly: that is, in every specific instance of use, 'my mother's father' and 'my maternal grandfather' include and exclude exactly the same referents. This can be visualized as sliding the two circles on top of each other and finding that they are same size and cover one another exactly, as in Figure 5.1:

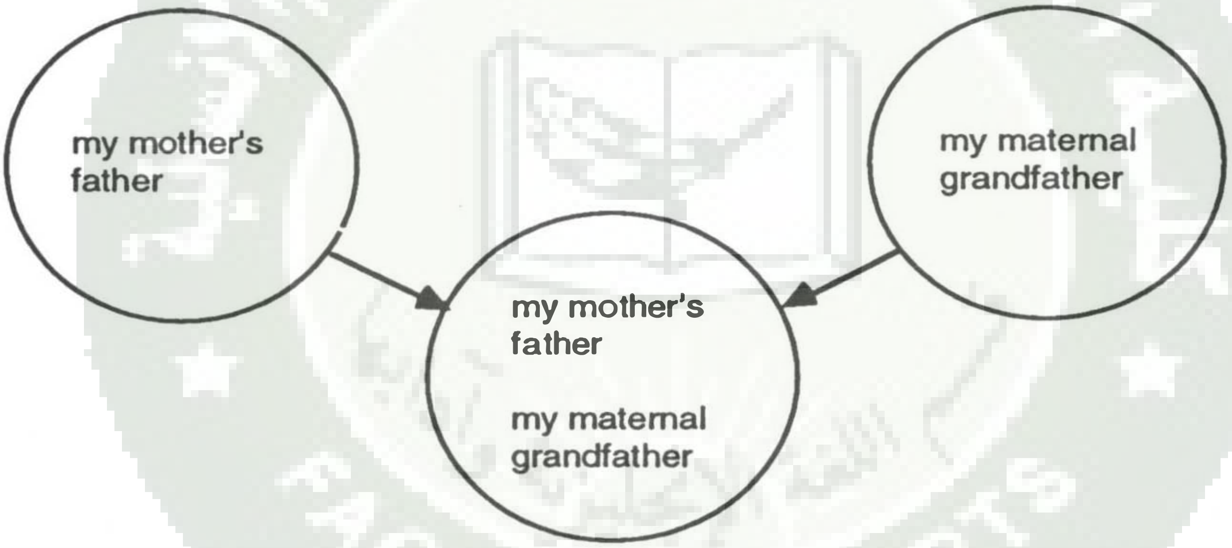


Figure 5.1

This exemplifies the strongest form of semantic equivalence: full **synonymy**: the two expressions are synonyms of one another.

Comparison of denotative meanings can also be made between expressions from two or more different languages. For example, 'maternal uncle' and خال (in one sense of the word خال) cover exactly the same range of meanings and are therefore fully synonymous, as is seen in Figure 5.2:

www.kaues.org

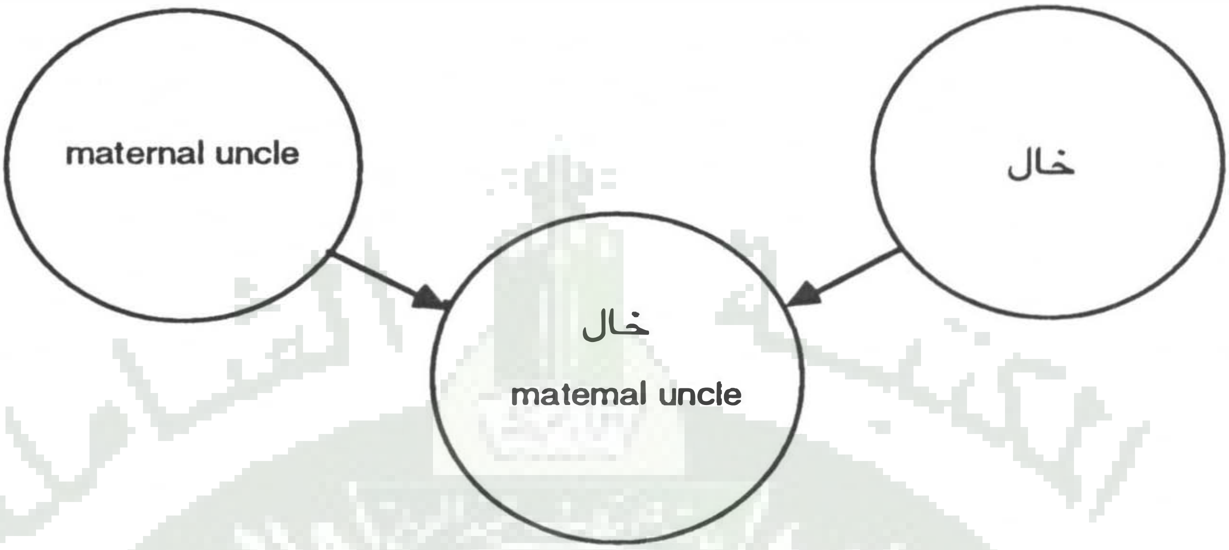


Figure 5.2

5.1.2 Hyperonymy-hyponymy

Unfortunately full synonymy is exceptional, both intralingually and interlingually. Even the nearest semantic equivalent for translating the denotative meaning of an ST expression usually falls short of being a full TL synonym. A simple example of this kind of failure is provided by a comparison between 'uncle' in English and عم and خال in Arabic. Here the English term 'uncle' might be a typical translation equivalent of the Arabic عم or خال; 'uncle' in English lacks the 'technical' associations of 'paternal uncle' and 'maternal uncle', and would therefore be preferred in many contexts in translating عم or خال, regardless of the translation loss involved. From the point of view of denotative meaning, however, 'uncle' has a greater range of meanings than عم or خال, since 'uncle' includes both paternal uncle and maternal uncle. Using in this case half-circles as well as a circle to represent ranges of denotative meaning, we can represent the relationship between 'uncle' in English, and عم and خال in Arabic as in Figure 5.3:

www.kaues.org

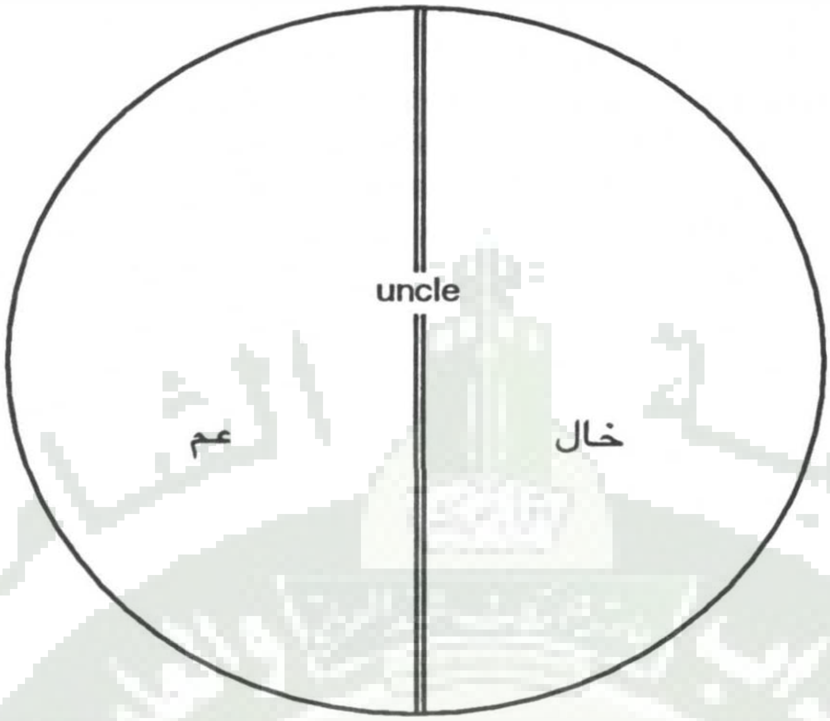


Figure 5.3

The relationship between 'uncle' and عم, and between 'uncle' and خال is known as **hyperonymy-hyponymy**. An expression with a wider, less specific, range of denotative meaning is a hyperonym (or **superordinate**) of one with a narrower and more specific meaning. Conversely, an expression with a narrower, more specific range of denotative meaning is a **hyponym** of one with a wider meaning. Thus عم and خال are both hyponyms of 'uncle'.

Hyperonymy-hyponymy is so widespread in all languages that one can say that the entire fabric of linguistic reference is built up on such relationships. The same external reality can be described and rephrased in an indefinite number of ways, depending on how precise or vague one wants to be – compare 'I bought a Hans Wehr' with these increasingly general rephrasings: 'I bought an Arabic dictionary', 'I bought a dictionary', 'I bought a book', 'I bought something'. Each of these rephrasings is a hyperonym of the ones before it.

By its very nature, translation is concerned with rephrasing in such a way as to lose as little as possible of the integrity of an ST message. All other things being equal, this includes its degree of precision or vagueness. Therefore, the fact that both a hyperonym and a hyponym can serve for conveying a given message is of great importance to translation practice. It means that when there is no full TL synonym for a given ST expression (e.g. 'uncle'), the translator must look for an appropriate TL hyperonym or hyponym. In fact, translators do this automatically.

This is obvious from the translation of pronouns between Arabic and

www.kaues.org

English. English has one second person pronoun 'you', which serves to address one, two or more people or animals (and occasionally also plants, inanimate objects, and even abstract ideas). English 'you' also makes no distinction between the sex of the person or animal being addressed (or the presumed sex of the plant, etc.). Arabic has five second person pronouns: أنتَ, أنتِ, أنتما, أنتم, and أنتنّ, involving distinctions between singular, dual and plural, and masculine and feminine (notions which subsume, but also go beyond, maleness and femaleness). Whenever any one of ST أنتَ, أنتِ, أنتما, أنتم, or أنتنّ is translated as TT 'you', the English TT has employed a hyperonym; and whenever ST 'you' is translated as Arabic TT أنتَ, أنتِ, أنتما, أنتم, or أنتنّ, the Arabic TT has employed a hyponym. There is nothing remarkable about this, and it is only occasionally that a translator opts, or is forced, to do something which deviates from this pattern.

5.1.3 Particularizing translation and generalizing translation

Translating by a hyponym implies that the TT expression has a narrower and more specific denotative meaning than the ST expression. TT خال is more specific than ST 'uncle', adding particulars not present in the ST expression. We shall call this **particularizing translation**, or **particularization** for short. Another example of particularizing translation is the translation صندوق, which could be used for either a 'box' or a 'bin' (amongst other things). Clearly, in the case of a street sweeper putting his rubbish into a صندوق, the more plausible translation would be 'bin', while in the case of someone packing their books up to move them, the more plausible translation would be 'box'. In either case, however, the English particularizes.

Translating by a hyperonym implies that the TT expression has a wider and less specific denotative meaning than the ST expression. In translating from Arabic to English, TT 'uncle' is more general than ST عم (or خال), omitting particulars given by the ST. We shall call this **generalizing translation**, or **generalization** for short. Translating جلابية as 'garment' or مزمار as 'pipe' are other examples of generalization.

In their semantic near-equivalence, particularization and generalization both entail a degree of translation loss: detail is either added to, or omitted from, the ST text. However, in the absence of plausible synonyms, translating by a hyponym or hyperonym is standard practice and entirely unremarkable. Only when a TL hyponym or hyperonym is unnecessary, or contextually inappropriate, or misleading, can a TT be criticized in this respect.

Particularizing translation is acceptable if the TL offers no suitable alternative and if the added detail does not clash with the overall context of the ST or TT. Thus, بلد in Arabic means 'country, town, city, place, community, village' (Wehr). There is no single word in English that covers all these possibilities; therefore in a particular context the translator is likely to have

www.kaues.org

to choose the one of these which he or she feels is most appropriate.

Particularizing translation is not acceptable if the TL does in fact offer a suitable alternative to the additional detail, or if the added detail clashes with the overall context of ST or TT.

As these examples suggest, similar considerations apply to generalizing translation as to particularizing translation. Generalization is acceptable if the TL offers no suitable alternative and the omitted detail is either unimportant in the ST or is implied in the TT context. For instance, Arabic مُحزن refers only to something, such as a film or story, which makes one feel sad. In this it contrasts with حزين, which may refer to a person (or even to some non-human entity such as an animal), who is sad in themselves (i.e. who feels sad), or it may refer to something, such as a story or film, which makes one feel sad. In English the word 'sad' covers both possibilities: 'a sad person', 'a sad story'. Typically, there is unlikely to be any confusion in translating محزن as 'sad', and this is likely to be the most natural-sounding translation in most cases. As the examples 'a sad person' and 'a sad story' suggest, normally the context makes immediately plain in English whether what is intended is a 'feeling sad' or a 'making sad' interpretation.

Generalizing translation is *not* acceptable if the TL does offer suitable alternatives, or if the omitted details are important in the ST but not implied or compensated for in the TT context.

5.1.4 Partially overlapping translation

There is a third degree of semantic equivalence. Consider the following:

لقد وصف الكاتب البريطاني المرموق روبرت فيسك حفلة غناء في بلغراد [...]

This has been translated (Ives 1999: 10) as:

> The distinguished British writer Robert Fisk recently described a concert in Belgrade.

Here the meaning of حفلة غناء overlaps with that of 'concert'. Some concerts are examples of حفلة غناء; those in which there are singing. Similarly, some cases of حفلة غناء are examples of concerts; those which are organized in a formal way with musical players and audience. However, some concerts are not examples of حفلة غناء; those in which there is no singing. Similarly, some cases of حفلة غناء are not examples of concerts; those, for example, in which the حفلة is not organized in a formal way with musical players and audience. That is, 'concert' as a translation of حفلة غناء generalizes by going beyond the idea of singing to include the possibility of music without

www.kaues.org

song; but at the same time it particularizes by excluding the non-organized form of 'party' which is a possible interpretation of حفلة.

Taking the example of English 'concert' and Arabic حفلة غناء, this kind of situation can be visualized as two partially overlapping circles, as in Figure 5.4:

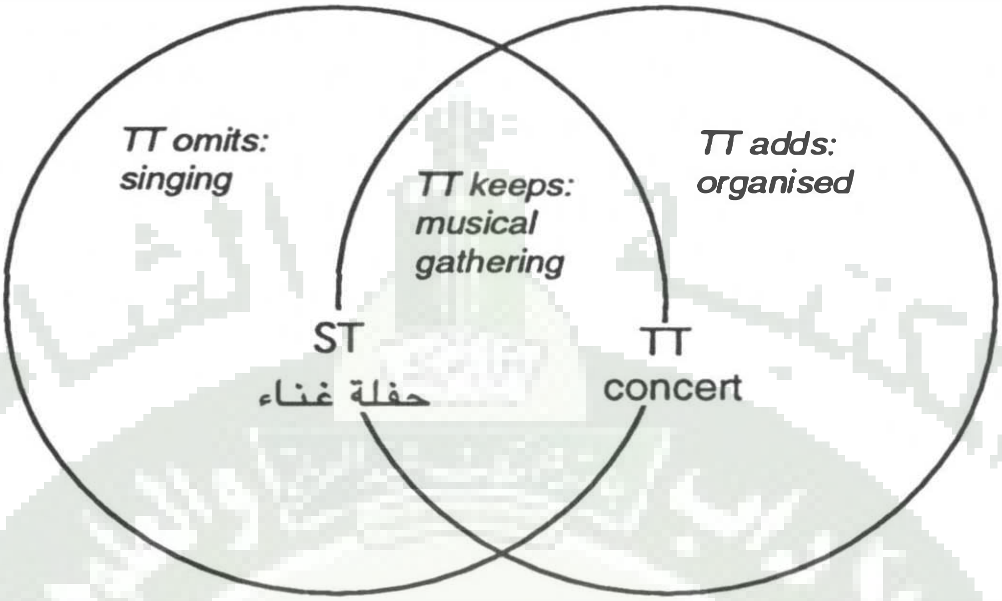


Figure 5.4

Here the area where the circles overlap represents the material the ST and TT have in common. The area on the left where the circles do not overlap represents what is omitted from the TT, and the area on the right where the circles do not overlap represents what is added to the TT. This is another category of degree in the translation of denotative meaning. We shall call it **partially overlapping translation**, or **partial overlap** for short. Partial overlap is common and often unavoidable. It can apply to single words as well as to phrases or whole sentences. If, in a given context, استاذة is translated as 'lecturer', not 'teacher', the TT certainly keeps the reference to someone who instructs. But it also particularizes, because it adds the specific detail that she works in a university and not in a school; and at the same time it generalizes, because it omits detail of her gender.

When the TL offers no suitable alternatives, partial overlap is acceptable if the *omitted* detail is unimportant or is implied in the overall TT context, and if the *added* detail does not clash with the overall ST or TT contexts. Translating أستاذة as 'lecturer' or 'teacher', for example, will – depending on context – normally be as harmless as it is unavoidable.

Partial overlap is unacceptable if the omitted detail is important in the ST but is not implied in the overall context of the TT, or if the added detail clashes with the overall ST or TT contexts. If the TL does not offer suitable alternatives, then only compensation can counteract the omission or addition.

www.kaues.org

So the teacher's gender can be made clear through **anaphora** ('she' or 'her'), and a reference to her workplace can if necessary be inserted into the TT.

5.2 SEMANTIC REPETITION IN ARABIC

Arabic frequently makes use repetition of synonyms or near-synonyms, in a way which is not normally found in English. This kind of repetition is sometimes called semantic repetition (cf. Dickins and Watson 1999: 541–53). Semantic repetition is of two basic kinds: (i) where the two words or phrases used have closely-related but distinguishable meanings; an example of this is الاستقصاء والتحليل 'investigation and analysis'; (ii) where the words or phrases used are fully synonymous or, at least in the context in which they are being used, there is no clear difference in meaning; an example of this is the doublet مستمرة متواصلة in the phrase بصورة مستمرة متواصلة, literally 'in a continuing continuous manner'.

Semantic repetition may involve any of the major parts of speech: nouns, as in الاستقصاء والتحليل; adjectives as in مستمرة متواصلة; verbs, for instance يدهشه ويذهله 'surprise and baffle' in the phrase كان منظرها يدهشه ويذهله (literally 'her look surprised and baffled him'); and adverbs, for instance واجمةً مكتئبةً 'silently and dispiritedly' in the phrase أبصر المرأة نفسها تمشي واجمةً مكتئبةً (literally, 'he saw the same woman walking silently and dispiritedly'; cf. St John 1999: 4–5).

Semantic repetition may be syndetic, i.e. it may involve the use of a **connective** (typically و) or – in the case of adjectives in particular, but also occasionally in the case of nouns and verbs – it may be asyndetic, i.e. it may occur without the use of a connective. An example of syndetic semantic repetition is الهمجي والبربري in the phrase السلوك الهمجي والبربري 'savage and barbaric behaviour'. An example of asyndetic semantic repetition is جميلات انيقات in the phrase فتيات جميلات انيقات, literally 'pretty, elegant girls' (for more details of syndetic vs asyndetic connection in Arabic see Dickins and Watson 1999: 47–9).

A number of techniques can be used to translate semantic repetition into English. The first of these is to merge the two Arabic words into one English word. This is particularly likely to be an appropriate strategy where there is no clear difference in meaning between the two Arabic words. So تدابير صارمة وقاسية may be translated as 'severe measures' (semantic repetition of صارمة and قاسية); [...] قدرة العسكر على تحديث المجتمع وعصرنته [...] may be translated as '[...] the military's ability to modernize society [...]' (semantic repetition of تحديث and عصرنة); بصورة مستمرة متواصلة is likely to be translated as 'continually'. In this last example, the asyndetic coordination between مستمرة and متواصلة makes a single-word translation still more likely; asyndetic doublets are typically used to represent a single concept.

www.kaues.org

A second fairly common technique, and one which is used where the two words in the semantic repetition have clearly different meanings, is to employ at least partial grammatical transposition. So the phrase تحلل القيم والأخلاقيات might be translated as 'the collapse of all moral values'. Here the noun-doublet of the Arabic has been replaced by an adjective-noun phrase in English.

The following are examples of grammatical transposition: وشعر الرجل بالضيق والحرج 'the man began to feel slightly claustrophobic', where the adverb-adjective phrase 'slightly claustrophobic' transposes the Arabic noun doublet الضيق والحرج; similarly لقد أكدت البحوث الجامعية هذه الظاهرة المخلّة وتناولتها بالاستقصاء والتحليل 'Academic research has confirmed and carefully analysed this disgraceful phenomenon', where the adverb-participial phrase 'carefully analysed' transposes the Arabic الاستقصاء والتحليل.

The final two translation techniques which we will consider take account of a feature of semantic repetition which we have not yet looked at: namely that it tends to provide a sense of emphasis. This is both because two words give two sets of meaning (even if it is only the same meaning repeated), and because they are longer and therefore 'heavier' in the sentence than only a single word would be.

The first technique which takes into account the potentially emphatic aspect of semantic repetition is what we shall call **semantic distancing**. This involves relaying both elements of the Arabic doublet by different words in English, but choosing English words whose meanings are more obviously distinct than those of their Arabic counterparts. For example, in وكان منظرها يدهشه ويذهله, the two words يدهش and يذهل are quite close in meaning (and according to Wehr's dictionary even share the English translation equivalents 'baffle' and 'startle'). The phrase has been translated (St John 1999: 5), however, as 'Her appearance had both astonished and alarmed him'; the semantic difference between 'astonish' and 'alarm' is greater than that between أدهش and أذهل. This semantic distancing ensures that the English translation does not involve what would otherwise be the stylistic oddity in English of having two words with virtually the same meaning conjoined with one another.

It is also possible to combine semantic distancing with grammatical transposition. An example of this is أنا مستمر ومتمسك أكثر من أي وقت مضى بمشروع التوحيد والتجديد. This was said by a Lebanese Phalangist politician about his attitude to the Party. It has been translated (Jones 1999: 7) as: 'I remain committed more than ever to the project of unification and reform'. Here the adjectival (active participle) doublet مستمر ومتمسك has been grammatically transposed to a verb-adjective (past participle) doublet 'remain committed'. In addition, however, the senses of مستمر and متمسك have been distanced more in the English version.

One final technique for translating semantic repetition into English is to

www.kaues.org

maintain the same form of repetition. An example of this is السلوك الهمجي والبربري, translatable as 'this savage and barbaric behaviour' (cf. Ives 1999: 15). Here the repetition in English carries the same emphatic – and more specifically emotive – force as it does in Arabic. The convention which operates otherwise in English that words having much the same meaning are not conjoined is overridden.

Something similar happens with respect to formulaic language, especially where this is of a religious or legal nature. The following is from an oath made by members of the Muslim Brotherhood to their first leader حسن البنا:

> [...] «إن من حقك علينا الطاعة والثقة الكاملة والطمأنينة الشاملة وعلى هذا بايعنا وعاهدنا» [...]

This might be translated as:

> [...] 'You have the right to our unquestioning obedience, complete trust and total confidence. This is the oath which we have taken and the pledge which we have made'.

Here the semantic repetition of بايعنا and عاهدنا is retained in the English, and even expanded as 'the oath we have taken', 'the pledge we have made'.

Just as Arabic has semantic repetition involving individual words (lexical items) so it may have semantic repetition involving whole phrases. Here are some examples. [...] بين الشكل والجوهر، بين الاسلوب والمضمون، بين التكتيك والاستراتيجية can be translated as '[...] between form and substance, and between tactic and strategy' (Flacke 1999: 7); here the virtually synonymous Arabic phrases الشكل والجوهر and الاسلوب والمضمون are reduced to the single phrase 'between form and substance' in English. [...] الاجراءات التي تقعد حركة التنمية وتقزّم الإنماء can be translated with semantic distancing, as '[...] the very measures that hinder development and stunt economic growth' (Humphrys 1999: 12). Here the translator has distanced the meaning of تقعد حركة التنمية from that of تقزم الإنماء, particularly by translating التنمية as the general term 'development', and الإنماء by the more specific 'economic growth'.

As with semantic repetition involving individual lexical items, some of the best examples of maintenance of phrasal semantic repetition occur in formulaic language. Consider again الطاعة والثقة الكاملة والطمأنينة الشاملة from the oath made by members of the Muslim Brotherhood to حسن البنا (cited above). This phrase has been translated as 'unquestioning obedience, complete trust and total confidence'. Here the repetition of the Arabic has not only been maintained, but in fact increased by the addition of 'unquestioning' before 'obedience' in the English.

www.kaues.org

5.2.1 Other forms of parallelism

In addition to semantic repetition of words or phrases having the same meaning, Arabic also displays other forms of semantic **parallelism**, that is parallelism involving forms which do not mean the same or nearly the same as one another, but do stand in some fairly recognizable semantic relationship to one another. Consider the following from the start of an article by the Egyptian journalist مصطفى أمين from الشرق الاوسط, 21 September 1982 (reproduced in transcription in Al-Jubouri 1984, on whose account the following analysis is based):

> في استطاعة أي حزب أن ينجح إذا دافع عن قضية الحرية وحقوق الإنسان، إذا احتضن كل مظلوم، إذا قاوم الفساد، إذا ضرب الأمثلة في القدوة الصالحة، إذا حوّل الكلمات إلى أفعال والوعود إلى حقائق. كل حزب يقف إلى جانب الشعب يقف الشعب إلى جانبه يحيط به عندما تُوجَّه إلى ظهره الخناجر وإلى صدره المدافع والسيوف.

Perhaps the easiest form of parallelism to see here is that produced by the use of antonyms or near-antonyms, i.e. words meaning the opposite or nearly the opposite of one another; the one example in this text is ظهر[ه] and صدر[ه] in sentence 2. However, the text also displays other forms of semantic relationship. A number of words and phrases, while not synonyms or even near-synonyms, belong to the same **semantic field**; that is, they are all hyponyms of a given hyperonym. (For a useful discussion of semantic fields, see Baker 1992: 17–23.) Examples in sentence 1 are دافع عن and قاوم (semantic field: 'opposition'); قضية الحرية and حقوق الانسان (semantic field: 'personal rights'); مظلوم and فساد (semantic field: 'justice'); كلمات and وعود (semantic field: 'speaking'); and افعال and حقائق (semantic field: 'states of affairs'); also the entire phrases الكلمات إلى افعال and الوعود إلى حقائق (semantic field: 'words and deeds'). Examples in sentence 2 are الخناجر, المدافع and السيوف (semantic field: 'weapons'). The text also displays one example of the use of converse meanings; in sentence 2 كل حزب يقف إلى جانب الشعب and يقف الشعب إلى جانبه.

Here is an attempted idiomatic translation of this text.

> For any political party to succeed it must be prepared to stand up for freedom of expression and human rights, to protect the weak, to oppose corruption, to set itself the highest standards, and to act according to these standards. Any party which supports and defends the people will find that it is supported and defended by the people.

The English TT retains some of the parallelism of the Arabic ST. Some of the parallel elements belonging to the same semantic field have been retained; in sentence 1, 'stand up for' and 'protect' (corresponding to the ST دافع عن

www.kaues.org

and قاوم); 'freedom of expression' and 'human rights' (corresponding to ST قضية الحرية and حقوق الانسان). The example of converse meaning is also effectively retained, in sentence 2: 'Any party which supports and defends the people' and 'it is supported and defended by the people' (corresponding to ST كل حزب يقف إلى جانب الشعب and يقف الشعب إلى جانبه).

However, the English TT also removes or modifies significant elements of the parallelism of the Arabic ST. In sentence 1, the complex ST parallelism of الكلمات إلى افعال and الوعود إلى حقائق is reduced to the phrase 'act according to these standards', albeit with some compensatory repetition in the TT with the previous phrase 'set itself the highest standards'. In sentence 2, there is a double parallelism in the phrase إلى ظهره الخناجر وإلى صدره المدافع والسيوف: ظهر and صدر are antonyms (i.e. they have opposite denotative meanings), and خناجر, مدافع and سيوف belong to the same semantic field. But this double parallelism is subsumed into the English TT 'supports and defends' and 'supported and defended', which more obviously translate the Arabic كل حزب يقف إلى جانب الشعب and يقف الشعب إلى جانبه The double repetition of the TT 'supports and defends' and 'supported and defended' is an attempt to relay some of the rhetorical force of the complex repetition of the ST.

The use of parallelism is a fairly typical feature of Arabic, particularly of persuasive texts (cf. Ch. 13.2). It is also a feature of English. However, as the analysis of the above Arabic ST and English TT suggests, parallelism tends to be more widely used in Arabic than in English. Accordingly in translating from Arabic to English it is not infrequently necessarily to reduce the use of parallelism.

PRACTICAL 5

Practical 5.1 Denotative meaning

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate it as part of an anthology of political writing from the Middle East. The readership is expected to have general knowledge of the Arab world, but no specific expertise in Islamic thought.

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Explain the main decisions of detail you made in producing your TT.

www.kaues.org

Contextual information

The text is from: معالم في الطريق (قطب 1990: 5), by the leading Egyptian Islamist سيد قطب (1906–1966). The text was written around 1962, while سيد قطب was a political prisoner in Egypt. The text reflects the global political situation of the time, in which the world was seen as becoming increasingly polarized between the communism of Eastern Europe, led by the Soviet Union, and the capitalism of the West, led by the United States.

ST

تقف البشرية اليوم على حافة الهاوية .. لا بسبب التهديد بالفناء المعلق على رأسها .. فهذا عَرَضٌ للمرض وليس هو المرض .. ولكن بسبب إفلاسها في عالم «القيم» التي يمكن أن تنمو الحياة الإنسانية في ظلالها نموّاً سليماً وتترقى ترقياً صحيحاً . وهذا واضح كل الوضوح في العالم الغربي ، الذي لم يعد لديه ما يعطيه للبشرية من «القيم» بل الذي لم يعد لديه ما يُقنع ضميره باستحقاقه للوجود ، بعدما انتهت «الديمقراطية» فيه الى ما يشبه الإفلاس ، حيث بدأت تستعير – ببطء – وتقتبس من أنظمة المعسكر الشرقي وبالخاصة في الانظمة الاقتصادية! تحت اسم الاشتراكية !

كذلك الحال في المعسكر الشرقي نفسه .. فالنظريات الجماعية وفي مقدمتها الماركسية التي اجتذبت في أول عهدها عدداً كبيراً في الشرق – وفي الغرب نفسه – باعتبارها مذهباً يحمل طابع العقيدة ، قد تراجعت هي الأخرى تراجعاً واضحاً من ناحية «الفكرة» حتى لتكاد تنحصر الآن في «الدولة» وأنظمتها والتي تبعد بعداً كبيراً عن أصول المذهب .. وهي على العموم تناهض طبيعة الفطرة البشرية ومقتضياتها ، ولا تنمو إلا في بيئة محطمة ! أو بيئة قد ألفت النظام الدكتاتوري فترات طويلة !

Practical 5.2 Denotative meaning and semantic repetition

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate it as a piece of literary-critical writing to appear in a specialist literary journal.

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Explain the main decisions of detail you made in producing your TT.

www.kaues.org

Contextual information

The writer of this passage شوقي ضيف was a well-known literary critic (from Monteil 1960: 335). Note that Taha Hussein was blind, and had to dictate material which he wrote, rather than writing it down directly himself.

ST

وبهذا الاسلوب البارز الذي يمس القلوب ويثير العواطف بما فيه من سلاسة وعذوبة وصفاء وقدرة على التصوير والتلوين، كتب طه حسين هذه الترجمة الذاتية «الايام»، كما كتب بقية قصصه وكتبه. وقد تُرجمت الايام الى الانجليزية والفرنسية والروسية والصينية والعبرية.

ومن اهم ما يميز طه حسين في الايام وغير الايام: اسلوبه المتموج الزاخر بالنغم، فلا تستمع الى كلام له، حتى تعرف بطوابعه المزينة في عباراته الملفوفة التي يأخذ بعضها برقاب بعض، في جرس موسيقي بديع.

وكأنه يرى أن الادب الجدير بهذا الاسم، هو الذي يروع السمع كما يروع القلب في آن واحد، وهو لذلك يوفّر لصوته كل جمال ممكن. ومن الغريب أنه لا يعدّل عبارة يمليها ولا يعدّ محاضرة قبل إلقائها. فقد أصبح هذا الاسلوب جزءا من نفسه وعقله، فهو لا يملي ولا يحاضر الا به. وكثيرا ما تجد فيه الالفاظ المكررة، وهو يعمد إلى ذلك عمدا، حتى يستتم ما يريد من إيقاعات وأنغام ينفذ بها الى وجدان سامعه وقارئه.

www.kaues.org

6
Connotative meaning and translation issues

6.1 BASIC PRINCIPLES

Denotative meaning as discussed in Chapter 5 is only one aspect of verbal meaning. The meaning of a text comprises a number of different layers: referential content, emotional colouring, cultural associations, social and personal connotations, and so on. The many-layered nature of meaning is something translators must never forget.

Even within a single language, synonyms are usually different in their overall semantic effects – compare 'clergyman' and 'sky-pilot', 'adder' and 'viper', 'go away' and 'piss off', etc. Each of these expressions has overtones which differentiate it from its synonym. We shall call such overtones connotative meanings – that is, associations which, over and above the denotative meaning of an expression, form part of its overall meaning. In fact, of course, connotative meanings are many and varied, and it is common for a single piece of text, or even a single expression, to combine more than one kind into a single overall effect. However, it is useful at this stage to distinguish six major types of connotative meaning, because learning to identify them sharpens students' awareness of the presence and significance of connotations in STs and TTs alike. Note that, by definition, we are only concerned here with socially widespread connotations, not personal ones. Only in exceptional circumstances do translators allow personal connotations to influence a TT.

6.2 ATTITUDINAL MEANING

Attitudinal meaning is that part of the overall meaning of an expression which consists of some widespread *attitude to the referent*. The expression

www.kaues.org

does not merely denote the referent in a neutral way, but also hints at some attitude to it.

So, for instance, in appropriate contexts, 'the police', 'the filth' and 'the boys in blue' are synonyms in terms of denotative content, but they have different overall meanings. 'The police' is a neutral expression, but 'the filth' has pejorative overtones and 'the boys in blue' affectionate ones. These attitudes to the police are not part of the denotative meaning of the expressions, but it is impossible to ignore them in responding to the expressions. It is therefore important not to overlook them when translating.

It is relatively difficult to find examples of attitudinal meaning in Standard Arabic which is an intrinsic feature of the word itself. This is at least in part because of the formal nature of Standard Arabic. As can be seen from the example 'the boys in blue' vs 'the police', there is typically a close relation between attitudinal meaning and informality. Formal terms show a markedly smaller tendency to display attitudinal meaning than do informal terms. The inherent formality of Standard Arabic therefore correlates with the relative infrequency of words having strong attitudinal connotations.

This does not mean, however, that attitudinal meaning is unimportant in translating Standard Arabic into English, since an attitudinal meaning can sometimes emerge from the context of usage of a word in an Arabic ST. In such cases it is sometimes appropriate to use a word with a different denotative meaning in English. Consider the following:

باختصار، توفر الانقلابات العسكرية الفرص لتحويل قادتها من مناصب عسكرية الى زعامات سياسية [...]

This has been translated (Humphrys 1999: 9) as:

> In short, military coups provide their perpetrators with the opportunity to move from military posts to political leadership [...]

This is taken from a book which deals with the relationship between the military and political power in the Arab world, and which is very critical of military involvement in Arab politics. Accordingly قادة 'leaders' in this context acquires rather negative overtones. In the TT, the translator reflects this by using the word 'perpetrators'. The negative aspect of 'perpetrators' is part of its denotative meaning, not its connotative meaning: it is by definition not possible to perpetrate a good deed.

It is also important to remember that, since English makes widespread use of attitudinal meaning, such meaning is likely to figure in idiomizing translations in particular. In such cases, the translator has to make sure that the TT attitudinal meaning does not clash with the context. Consider the following from a poem by نزار قباني:

www.kaues.org

آه يا بيروت.. يا أنثايَ من بين ملايين النساءْ

This has been translated (Rolph 1995: 23) as:

Ah Beirut ... my lady amongst millions of women

In Arabic أنثى 'female' and امرأة 'woman' (plural نساء) have clearly differentiated meanings; أنثى is a hyperonym of امرأة. In the TT, however, the translator has used 'lady' and 'women'. 'Lady' and 'woman' are synonyms in English, the difference between them being that 'lady' has overtones of respect.

Another example of the use of attitudinal connotation in translation is provided by this extract concerning the behaviour of Serbian troops towards Kosovo Albanians, taken from an article on the subject which is very sympathetic to the Albanian side:

ولقد راحوا يقتحمون البيوت بيتاً بيتاً [...]

This has been translated (Ives 1999: 9) as follows:

They have raided homes one by one.

Here 'homes' can be contrasted with its near-synonym 'houses'. 'Houses' is a neutral word in English, whereas 'home' has warm emotional connotations.

6.3 ASSOCIATIVE MEANING

Associative meaning is that part of the overall meaning of an expression which consists of expectations that are – rightly or wrongly – *associated with the referent* of the expression. The word 'nurse' is a good example. Most people automatically associate 'nurse' with the idea of female gender, as if 'nurse' were synonymous with 'female who looks after the sick'. This unconscious association is so widespread that the term 'male nurse' has had to be coined to counteract its effect: 'he is a nurse' still sounds semantically odd, even today.

Any area of reference in which prejudices and stereotypes, however innocuous, operate is likely to give examples of associative meaning. Consider in this respect the associations of 'Crusade' in English, which continue to be positive (regardless of recent Western scholarly reassessments in this area), and contrast this with the strongly negative associations of حملة صليبية in Arabic. Conversely, the word جهاد in Arabic has highly positive associations, but in English the cultural borrowing 'jihad' is chiefly associated with organizations such as Islamic Jihad, which are widely regarded in the West

www.kaues.org

as extremist and anti-democratic.

Similarly, Westerners who know something about Islam might regard Ramadan as a time of self-denial and fasting, which it is. However, in Muslim countries, Ramadan is also a time of celebration, in which children are allowed to stay up late, when there is a lot going on in the streets into the middle of the night, when families who have been separated come together again, etc. These associations are likely to be missed even by an informed Western readership of a text in which Ramadan figures, unless they have some personal experience of the Middle East.

Given the relative cultural distance between the Arab world and the English-speaking world, associative meanings are likely to be a problem. Consider the potential difficulty of translating مقهى into English; a denotative near-equivalent might be 'tea-house', 'tea-garden', 'coffee-house', or possibly 'cafe'. However, in terms of the cultural status of the مقهى as the centre of informal male social life, the nearest equivalent in British culture might be the pub. Given the Islamic prohibition on the drinking of alcohol, however, such a translation would in most cases be obviously ruled out.

Another example of how associative meaning may motivate a shift in denotative meaning between the ST and the TT is provided by the following, which describes a young man tending his dying mother: ثم شد الغطاء على جسمها الهرم. This is translated (Brown 1996: 32) as: 'then pulling the covers over her frail body'. Here, the translator has not translated هرم by a TL term which is roughly synonymous with it, such as 'old' or 'aged'. ('Aged' here is perhaps relatively acceptable, although it provides information which is already well known to the reader, and therefore seems irrelevant in this context. For further discussion of the odder translation 'then pulling the covers over her old body', see § 6.7.) Rather than using the term 'old' or 'aged', the translator has taken the association of هرم 'old' with frailty (old people tend to be frail, particularly if they are very ill), and has accordingly used the denotative meaning 'frail' to render this associative meaning of هرم.

6.4 AFFECTIVE MEANING

Affective meaning is an *emotive effect worked on the addressee* by the choice of expression, and which forms part of its overall meaning. The expression does not merely denote its referent, but also hints at some attitude of the speaker or writer to the addressee.

Features of linguistic politeness, flattery, rudeness or insult are typical examples of expressions carrying affective meanings. Compare, for example, 'Silence please' and 'Shut up', or الرجاء الصمت and أُسكت in Arabic. These expressions share the same core denotative meaning of 'Be quiet', but the speaker's implied attitude to the listener produces a different affective

www.kaues.org

impact in each case: polite in the first, rude in the second.

Not only imperative forms, but also statements and questions, can have alternative forms identical in basic denotative meaning yet totally different in affective meaning. An example is 'I want the bog', which carries affective overtones of disrespect or at least extreme familiarity, vs 'I need to go to the lavatory', whose formality and politeness suggests respect for the addressee.

Clearly, translators must be able to recognize affective meanings in the ST. But they must also be careful not to introduce unwanted affective meanings into the TT. To take an example from colloquial Arabic (Sudanese), a customer in a general store says أدِيني كيلو رز 'Give me a kilo of rice'. In accordance with the standard conventions in Arabic for requests which can be easily complied with, no politeness formula is included here. It would of course be possible to translate this sentence into English as 'Give me a kilo of rice'. However, this might sound rude, since the normal convention in English in shops is to use terms such as 'Please' and 'Thank you' (often repeatedly throughout the exchange). A safer option might be to cushion the TT, by translating the ST as something like 'A kilo of rice, please', or 'May I have a kilo of rice please'.

It is fairly easy to confuse attitudinal meaning with affective meaning. The difference is that attitudinal meaning involves attitude to the referent (i.e. the person or thing referred to), whereas affective meaning involves attitude to the addressee (i.e. the person spoken to). Where the referent is also the addressee, affective meaning and attitudinal meaning will coincide.

6.5 ALLUSIVE MEANING

Allusive meaning is an intertextual feature (cf. Ch. 10.3.2). It occurs when an expression evokes an associated saying or quotation in such a way that the meaning of that saying or quotation becomes part of the overall meaning of the expression.

For instance, in the novel مدينة البغي *The City of Oppression*, by the Palestinian novelist عيسى بشارة, the city in question is clearly Jerusalem (or a fictional equivalent). The term مدينة البغي, which is used as the name of the city, alludes to the fact that Jerusalem is sometimes referred to as مدينة السلام 'City of Peace'. It also perhaps recalls St Augustine's 'City of God' (عيسى بشارة is a Christian, and makes widespread use of Christian symbolism in this work). For Arabic readers, a further possible allusive meaning is مدينة النبي, i.e. the term from which is derived the name for the city 'Medina' المدينة (in pre-Islamic times known as يثرب). For English-speaking readers, particularly those of a Protestant background, the TT 'City of Oppression' might also carry echoes of John Bunyan's 'City of Destruction' in *A Pilgrim's Progress*, although it is extremely doubtful that these would have been intended in the ST.

www.kaues.org

Another example of allusive meaning is from the oath which members of the Muslim Brotherhood swore to حسن البنا and which read «الالتزام التام بالإخلاص والثقة والسمع والطاعة في العسر واليسر والمنشط والمكره». This perhaps contains an allusion to the Quran, سورة الشرح, verse 5 فَإِنَّ مَعَ العُسْرِ يُسْرًا and verse 6 إِنَّ مَعَ العُسْرِ يُسْرًا.

6.6 COLLOCATION AND COLLOCATIVE MEANING

The term 'to collocate' means 'to typically occur in close proximity with'; hence a 'collocation' is an occurrence of one word in close proximity with another. 'Pretty' and 'handsome', for example, have a shared sense of 'good looking' in English. However, 'pretty' collocates readily with 'girl', 'boy', 'woman', 'flower', 'garden', 'colour', 'village', while 'handsome' collocates with 'boy', 'man', 'car', 'vessel', 'overcoat', 'airliner', 'typewriter' (cf. Leech 1981: 17; also, for translation implications of collocation, see Baker 1992: 46–63).

The importance of finding appropriate collocations in translation can be illustrated by the following examples: التعاون الوثيق 'close cooperation' (not, for example, 'firm cooperation'), الذكاء التجاري 'commercial acumen' (cf. the slight oddity of 'commercial intelligence'), ابتسامة مصطنعة 'forced smile' (cf. the oddity of 'artificial smile').

An important area for collocation is the use of conjoined phrases on the pattern 'X and Y'. Thus, English tends to say 'knives and forks' rather than 'forks and knives', and 'pots and pans' rather than 'pans and pots', and for أصحاب النفوذ وأهل الود one would expect 'the rich and powerful' (rather than 'the powerful and rich'); for ١٤ الف جندي وضابط عراقي one would expect '14,000 Iraqi officers and men' (rather than '14,000 Iraqi men and officers'). Some collocations of this kind have become established idioms. Thus, من دمه ولحمه has to be translated as 'his own flesh and blood', rather than the reverse 'his own blood and flesh', or some alternative phrasing such as 'his own blood and body'. ('His own blood and body would have the disadvantage that, for a reader of Christian background, it would have an allusive meaning of 'Last Supper' and an associative meaning of 'Eucharist'.)

Deriving from the notion of collocation is the notion of **collocative meaning**. This is the meaning given to an expression over and above its denotative meaning by the meaning of some other expression with which it collocates to form a commonly used phrase. An example is the word 'intercourse'. This has largely dropped out of usage in modern English, because of its purely connotative sexual associations, derived from the common collocation 'sexual intercourse'.

Clearly the translator has to be able to recognize and render ST collocative meanings. But it is just as important to avoid unwanted collocative clashes in the TT. Consider the following: الايام الماضية بكل دفقها الدموي [...]

www.kaues.org

[...] الشديد الحرارة. A fairly literal translation of this would be 'the past with all its extremely hot bloodshed'. This does not work in English, and although a factor in this failure may be that the phrase sounds over-dramatic, a toned-down version works no better, e.g. 'The past with all its hot bloodshed'. The failure of these proposed translations has to do partly with the fact that 'hot bloodshed' is not a standard collocation in English. However, collocational failure is made worse by the existence of the phrase 'hot-blooded' meaning 'short-tempered', 'easily angered'; i.e. 'hot bloodshed' involves a collocational clash with 'hot-blooded'. A more plausible translation of this phrase is something like: '[...] the past with all its terrible bloodshed [...]' (cf. Ives 1999: 14). We shall consider this example further from the perspective of metaphor (Ch. 11.3.4).

Collocative meaning can also be an aid to the translator, allowing him or her to make use of collocations in the TT which are appropriate to the denotative meaning of the ST, but which might otherwise seem odd on the TL. An example from the Syrian poet نزار قباني is the following:

أحمل الزمن المحترق في عيني

This has been translated (Rolph 1995: 10) as:

I carry this scorched era in my eyes

Here, 'scorched era' sounds more acceptable than other more literal alternatives because of the existence of the phrase 'scorched earth'. The denotative meaning of 'scorched earth' gives 'scorched era' a collocative meaning which is strongly suggestive of the devastation wrought by war. We shall return to this example in Ch. 8.2.1.

6.7 REFLECTED MEANING

Reflected meaning is the meaning given to an expression over and above the denotative meaning which it has in that context by the fact that it also calls to mind another meaning of the same word or phrase. Thus, if someone says, 'Richard Nixon was a rat', using 'rat' in the sense of 'a person who deserts his friends or associates' (Collins English Dictionary), the word 'rat' not only carries this particular denotative meaning, but also conjures up the more basic denotative meaning of the animal 'rat'. (Note also the standard collocation 'dirty rat'.)

Reflected meaning is normally a function of **polysemy**, i.e. the existence of two or more denotative meanings in a single word. The simplest forms of reflected meaning are when a single word has two or more senses, and its use in a particular context in one of its senses conjures up at least one of its other

www.kaues.org

senses, as in the example 'rat' above. A similar example in Arabic is calling someone حمار. In colloquial Arabic, حمار applied to a person means 'stupid'. However, this metaphorical meaning also very strongly calls to mind the more basic sense of حمار 'donkey'.

Reflected meanings do not usually occur spontaneously to the listener or reader. When an expression is taken in isolation, its reflected meaning or meanings are usually merely latent. It is the textual context that triggers these latent reflected meanings. A good example of context triggering reflected meaning is the possible translation (discussed first in § 6.3 under associative meaning) of ثم شد الغطاء على جسمها الهرم as 'then pulling the covers over her old body'. The reader has, in fact, learnt earlier in the book that the mother of the central character صابر is old. The statement that her body is old, therefore, does not provide any information in this context. In order to extract some meaning, or more technically to find some relevance (cf. Sperber and Wilson 1986), for this comment, the reader therefore looks for another interpretation of 'old' in this context. One possible interpretation which presents itself is that based on another sense of 'old', viz 'former'. That is to say, 'old' is polysemous, having senses 'not new' and 'former', amongst other senses. Thus, the interpretation 'former body' (i.e. not the one which the lady is incarnated in now) momentarily presents itself as a possibility. This is, of course, rejected in the context. However, this reflected meaning of 'old' has enough of an influence here, in combination with the oddity of 'old' in the sense of 'not new' (discussed above), to make the reader feel that 'old' is odd in this context.

Although the six types of connotative meaning which we have discussed above are distinct from one another, it often happens that two or more occur together and nourish each other, as illustrated by the examples of هرم and 'blood and body'. In acquiring a translation method, it is useful to learn to distinguish exactly which sorts of connotative meaning are in play. It is also important to remember that, as with denotative meaning, being receptive to connotative meaning is a matter of considering words and phrases within the particular context in which they occur. It is not the same as looking up every possible use of a word in the dictionary and assuming that they are all relevant in the particular context in question.

6.8 OTHER TYPES OF CONNOTATIVE MEANING

The six types of connotative meaning which we have discussed above are the most important forms of connotative meaning. However, strictly speaking, one may regard any form of meaning which is not denotative as connotative. In this book, we consider three major additional types of connotative meaning. These are emphasis, presentation of information as predictable or unpredictable,

www.kaues.org

and presentation of information as foregrounded or backgrounded. Predictability and unpredictability are typically a function of the formal properties of **theme** and **rheme**, while **foregrounding** and **backgrounding** are a typically a function of the formal features of mainness and subordination; all these features will be dealt with in Chapter 9.

Emphasis may be a function of a number of formal features in Arabic, including semantic repetition (Ch. 5.2), parallelism (Ch. 5.2.1), alliteration, assonance and rhyme (Ch. 7.2.1), **morphological** repetition of all kinds (Ch. 8.2.3), the use of emphatic intonation in speech, or an exclamation mark in writing (Ch. 9.2.1), thematic preposing (Ch. 9.3.2.2), **rhetorical anaphora** (Ch. 10.2.1), and metaphor (Ch. 11). Emphasis may also be conveyed by the use of emphatic particles. An example in English is 'so' (as in 'That was so amusing!'). In Arabic, independent pronouns (أنا, أنتَ, هو, هي, etc.) may also convey emphasis (cf. the example of أنتم in Ch. 9.2.1).

One could go on adding indefinitely to the forms of connotative meaning. For example, an utterance 'Do you want to do the washing up?' uttered in a context where this was clearly a request to do the washing up, could be said to have the connotative meaning 'Do the washing up'. An ironic utterance 'What beautiful weather!' uttered in the context of foul driving rain could be said to have the connotative meaning 'What horrible weather!', etc. The types of connotative meanings we have picked out in §§ 6.2–6.7 and in the previous paragraphs of this section are, however, the most important for translation purposes. These are therefore the ones which students should concentrate on.

PRACTICAL 6

Practical 6.1 Collocation

Assignment

Translate the following extracts, paying particular attention to the English collocational equivalents of the forms in curly brackets.

(a) From العسكر والحكم في البلدان العربية, a book about the role of the military in Arab societies (Humphrys 1999: 6). (Translate the initial النظم as 'societies' here.)

وتشمل هذه النظم التمييز الحاد بين المراتب الاجتماعية، كما تشمل {الهوة الساحقة} التي تفصل بين النخبة العسكرية والجماهير، وعزل النخبة أنفسهم عن مواقع العامة من الناس.

www.kaues.org

(b) From تعريب التعليم في نهايات القرن العشرين, an article in العربي magazine (Stabler 1999: 16):

تقوم العديد من المراكز التعريبية والتعليمية المنتشرة في جميع الدول العربية، بجهد مشكور في سبيل استعادة اللغة العربية {لمكانتها الطبيعية} كلغة العلم والتعليم [...]

Practical 6.2 Collocation

Assignment
Complete the following translations by filling in the blanks.

(a) From لعبة الضفادع والعقارب في عواصم الشرق الاوسط, an article in the Egyptian magazine روز اليوسف (Hetherington 1996: 28):

[...] أن الحرب دائما هي إعلان بالحديد والنار عن الموت والميلاد.
[...] that war is always a declaration by means of _______________ of both _______________.

(b) From الحاج رئيسا للكتائبيين بفارق ٧ أصوات, an article in the Lebanese newspaper النهار (Jones 1999: 7) (the Kataeb, also known as the Phalange, are a Lebanese political party):

خسرت الرئاسة ولكنني ربحت ضمير الكتائب ووجدانهم.
I may have lost the election, but I have won the _______________ of the Kataeb.

Practical 6.3 Connotative meaning

Assignment
(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate the text as part of an anthology of modern Arabic short stories. Your intended readership are educated English-speakers with only a general knowledge of the Arab world.
(ii) Translate the text into English, paying particular attention to connotative translation issues.
(iii) Explain the decisions of detail you made in producing your translation.

www.kaues.org

Contextual information

This passage is from the beginning of a short story by يوسف إدريس called الرحلة (إدريس 1971: 66). This story was written shortly before the death of Nasser (جمال عبد الناصر). يوسف إدريس had originally been an enthusiastic supporter of Nasser, and had written numerous newspaper articles in support of him in the 1950s and early 1960s. However, like many others, he subsequently became disenchanted with Nasser, particularly following Egypt's defeat in the 1967 war against Israel. الرحلة was published in يوسف إدريس's short-story collection بيت من لحم. The story concerns a journey undertaken by a younger man and his father. The relationship between the two men is close, perhaps almost sexual. As the story progresses, it gradually becomes apparent that the father is dead. The story is regarded as a direct criticism of Nasser's regime, and even as a prophetic work predicting Nasser's fast-approaching death.

ST

الرحلة

أنت وأنا ومن بعدنا الطوفان* لا تخف ! سنرحل حالا سنرحل الى بعيد بعيد . الى حيث لا ينالك ولا ينالني احد . الى حيث نكون أحرارا تماما نحيا بمطلق قوتنا وارادتنا وبلا خوف . لا تخف . لقد اتخذت الاحتياطات كلها . لا تخف ! كل شيء سيتم على ما يرام . أعرف أنك تفضل اللون الكحلي . ها هو البنطلون اذن . ها هي السترة . بالتأكيد ربطة العنق المحمرة فأنا أعرف طبعك .. لست بالغ الاناقة نعم ولكنك ترتدي دائما ما يجب ، ما يليق . سأساعدك في تصفيف شعرك . أنت لا تعرف اني أحب شعرك . خفيف هو متناثر وكأنما صنع خصيصا ليخفي صلعتك ولكنه أبيض كله سهل التمشيط . بيدي سأمشطه . بعدها وبالفرشاة نفسها أسوي شاربك . حتى هذا النوع من الشوارب أحبه . هكذا رأيتك مئات المرات تفعل ، وهكذا أحببت كل ما تفعل ، كل ما أصبح لك عادة ، حتى كل ما يصدر كنزوة .أتعرف أني فرحان فرحة لا حد لها . فرحة الإقدام على أمر لن يعرفه سوانا . لست مريضا هذه المرة وأستصحبك كالعادة الى طبيب ، ولسنا في طريقنا لزيارة أقارب مملين . فليظل الامر اذن سرا بيني وبينك .

www.kaues.org

Introduction to the formal properties of texts

We have suggested that translation is most usefully taken not as a matter of replicating an ST in the TL, but as a challenge to reduce translation loss. The threat of loss is most obvious when the translator confronts general issues of cultural transfer like those discussed in Chapter 3. However, many issues of cultural transfer arise not from extra-linguistic cultural sources, but from intra-linguistic sources, and specifically the demonstrable formal properties of the ST. These properties actually present a threat of greater translation loss than the more obvious one posed by the general question of cultural transfer.

We have already seen an aspect of this in respect of semantic repetition (Ch. 5.2). Repetition in Arabic of words with similar meaning in close proximity can be used for emphasis or semantic precision. Frequently, however, it has no more than a marginally decorative purpose. Other forms of repetition, such as **pattern repetition**, **root repetition**, and **lexical item repetition** (Ch. 8), are similarly sometimes used for only marginal decorative effect. These various formal features result in a general cultural tendency, in some kinds of texts at least, for Arabic to be more wordy than English.

Another example where demonstrable formal linguistic features can give rise to problems of cultural transfer is provided by the traditional قصيدة type of poem. The قصيدة is a feature of Arabic culture, and one that in many ways has no correspondence with any form of poetry in English. However, it is at least partially defined by features of versification, i.e. formal features on the prosodic level, which are quite different from features of versification in English poetry.

There are doubtless technical philosophical problems in establishing what the demonstrable properties of texts are, but these problems are not our

www.kaues.org

concern in this course. What matters for us is the fact that meanings and effects triggered by a text must originate from features objectively present in it. This is why the translator has to look at the text as a linguistic object.

In assessing the formal properties of texts, it is helpful to borrow some fundamental notions from linguistics. Linguistics offers a hierarchically ordered series of discrete levels on which the formal properties of texts can be discussed in a systematic way. These levels complement each other, of course. That is, although it is essential to distinguish between them when analysing texts, they do not actually function separately from one another: textual features on a given level always have their effect in terms of features on all other levels.

It is obvious that in any text there are many points at which it could have been different. Where there is one sound there could have been another (compare 'road tolls' and 'toad rolls'). Or where there is a question mark there might have been an exclamation mark (compare 'What rubbish?' with 'What rubbish!'). Or where there is an allusion to the Bible there might have been an allusion to Shakespeare. All these points of detail where a text could have been different – that is, where it could have been another text – are what we shall call **textual variables**. These textual variables are what the series of levels defined in linguistics make it possible to identify.

Taking the levels one at a time has two main advantages. First, looking at textual variables on a series of isolated levels makes it possible to see which are important in the ST and which are less important. As we have seen, all ST features inevitably fall prey to translation loss in some respect or other. For example, even if the TT conveys the denotative meaning (Ch. 5) exactly, there will at the very least be phonic loss (Ch. 7), and very likely also loss in terms of connotations (Ch. 6), register (Ch. 12), and so on. It is therefore excellent translation strategy to decide in broad terms which category or categories of textual variable are indispensable in a given ST, and which can be ignored. To show what we mean by 'broad terms', we can take a simple example on the **sentential level** of textual variables. If a particular text contains complex sentences, the translator can scan on the sentential level and decide whether this stylistic feature has a significant function. If it does not, then the strategic decision will probably be that keeping the complexity in the TT is less important than producing a clear, idiomatic TT in the kind of style expected of TL texts of that particular type. In a literary ST, on the other hand, complex sentence-structure may be crucial to textual effects: in that case, the strategic decision on the sentential level might well be to create similar effects through complex sentences in the TT, and to be prepared to sacrifice details on other levels which, in this ST, have lower priority.

The other advantage in scanning the text level by level is that a TT can be assessed by isolating and comparing the formal variables of ST and TT. The translator or editor is thus able to see precisely what textual variables of the ST are absent from the TT, and vice versa. This makes the assessment of

www.kaues.org

translation loss less impressionistic, which in turn permits a more self-aware and methodical way of reducing it.

We suggest six levels of textual variables, hierarchically arranged, in the sense that each level is built on top of the preceding one. Thus, we can think of the **phonic/graphic level** as being at the bottom of the hierarchy, followed further up by the prosodic level, the grammatical level, the sentential level, the **discourse level**, and at the very top the **intertextual level**. These features constitute the formal matrix, which is part of the overall schema of textual matrices, represented at the end of the Introduction to this book. Note that the representation there places the elements of the formal matrix in the reverse order to the hierarchy as we have just outlined it: thus, the phonic/graphic level is represented at the top and the intertextual level at the bottom, etc. This is because the representation of the schema of textual matrices in the Introduction typically presents elements in the order in which they occur in the book (as discussed in the Introduction itself), not according to any more abstractly conceived overall hierarchy.

Using the term 'hierarchy' here is not meant to imply that features on a 'higher' level are by definition more important than those on a 'lower' level: the variables only have their effect in terms of one another, and their relative importance varies from text to text or even utterance to utterance. Other categories and hierarchies could have been adopted: we have chosen this hierarchy because of its practicability, not for its coherence in abstract linguistic terms. We shall progress 'bottom up', from phonic detail to intertextual considerations. We have chosen this order simply because we have found that students are more comfortable with this than with a 'top down' approach. In Chapters 7–10, we shall work our way up through the levels, showing what kinds of textual variable can be found on each, and how they may function in a text. This method does not imply a plodding or piecemeal approach to translation: applying the matrix analysis quickly becomes automatic and very effective.

FACULTY OF ARTS AND HUMANITIES WWW.KAUES.ORG

www.kaues.org

7

Phonic/graphic and prosodic issues in translation

7.1 THE PHONIC/GRAPHIC LEVEL

Although they are the 'lowest' in the hierarchy, the phonic/graphic and prosodic levels of textual variables demand as much attention as any other – even if the considered decision proves to be that they are not important enough in a given ST to be allowed to influence translation choice.

Taking a text on the phonic/graphic level means looking at it as a sequence of sound-segments (or *phonemes*), or as a sequence of letters (or *graphemes*), or as both. Oral texts are normally only looked at in phonic terms. Written texts are always first encountered on the graphic level, but they may need to be looked at in phonic terms as well – in fact, from a translation point of view, they are more often considered phonically than graphically. Although phonemes and graphemes are different things, we shall normally refer to the 'phonic/graphic level', whether the text in question is an oral one or a written one.

Language is nothing without the sounds of the utterances we hear, or the shape on the page of those we read: every text is a phonic/graphic configuration. These configurations are restricted by the conventions of the language the text is couched in. This is why, the occasional coincidence apart, no TT can reproduce exactly the same sequence of sound-segments/letters as any ST. This always and automatically constitutes a source of translation loss. The real question for the translator, however, is whether this loss matters at all. The answer, as usual, is that it all depends.

Generally, we take little or no notice of the sounds or shapes of what we hear and read, paying attention primarily to the message of the utterance. We do tend to notice sounds that are accidentally repeated, but even then we

www.kaues.org

attach little importance to them in most texts, especially in written ones. Often, however, repetition of sounds is a significant factor, so it is useful to have precise terms in which to analyse them.

7.1.1 Alliteration, assonance, and rhyme

Repetition of sounds can generally be classified either as alliteration or as assonance. There are various current definitions of these terms. For this course, we shall define alliteration as the recurrence of the same sound or sound-cluster at the beginning of words, as in *'two tired toads'* or *'all awful ornithologists'*. We define assonance as the recurrence, within words, of the same sound or sound-cluster, as in *'a great day's painting'*, or *'a swift snifter afterwards'*. The two often occur together, of course, as in ***'French influence also explains Frederick II's splendid castles in the South of Italy and Sicily'***. Terminal sounds that are not rhymes are best defined as assonance; the five [z] sounds in the following are most simply described as assonance: *'jazzy photos of animals in zoos'*. A vital point to remember is that, as all these examples show, it is the sound, not the spelling, that counts in discussing alliteration and assonance. Even in Arabic, where the correspondence between graphemes and phonemes is much closer than in English and therefore this is not generally such an issue, the translator has to be aware whether a letter such as ة is to be pronounced as 'a' or as 'at' in a particular context.

In general, the more technical or purely informative the text, the less account translators take of sound patterns, because they hardly ever seem to have any thematic or expressive function. That is true of the sentence about Frederick's castles, and it is true of the following sentence from a text on coalmining: 'Testwork has been carried out on screenbowl centrifuges dewatering froth-floated coal.' The alliteration and assonance in these two examples are incidental to the message.

However, many texts are marked by the deliberate use of phonic patterns for expressive purposes. The less purely factual the text, the more this tends to be the case. The most obvious example is poetry, where various types and degree of rhyme are found, as well as alliteration and assonance. We shall say that two words rhyme where the last stressed vowel, and all the sounds that follow it, are identical and occur in the same order, as in 'br*eam* / s*eem*', 'W*arwick* / euph*oric*', 'incid*entally* / m*entally*'. So, in the mining example, 'screenbowl' and 'coal' are at best imperfect rhymes, because 'coal' is stressed but 'bowl' is not. However, as regards phonic effects, the only difference between poetry and many other genres is one of degree: alliteration, assonance and even rhyme are often exploited in fiction, drama, journalism, polemic, and so on.

What are the implications of these observations for translators? As always, the translator must be guided by the purpose of the text, the needs of the

www.kaues.org

target public and, above all, the function of the phonic feature in its context. In general, the sorts of feature we have been looking at will not have expressive function in a scientific, technical or other purely informative text, so the translator can happily ignore them. Even in the mining example the considerable loss on the phonic/graphic level will simply not matter.

Sometimes, of course, even if the ST contains no marked phonic features, a draft TT will inadvertently contain a distracting concentration of sounds. In general, the translator will want to avoid *introducing* tongue-twisters or other phonic effects that impair the TT's communicative function.

In this light consider the following:

كان يستقصي الحقائق من نقائضها في مجتمع مدينة البغي التي ترعرع فيها [...]

Brown (1996: 13) translates this as:

> He used to study the reality behind the contradictions of the City of Oppression where he grew up.

مجتمع 'society' has not been translated; including 'society' would have resulted in something like 'He used to study the reality behind the contradictions of the society of the City of Oppression where he grew up'. Here the phrase 'contradictions of the society of the City of Oppression' with its multiple alliterations and assonances is particularly difficult to pronounce.

The use of phonic echoes and affinities for thematic and expressive purposes is sometimes called sound-symbolism. It takes two main forms. In the context, the sounds of given words may evoke other words that are not present in the text. Or the sound of a given word occurs in one or more others, and sets up a link between the words, conferring on each of them connotations of the other(s). The first two lines of Keats's 'To Autumn' offer simple examples of both:

> Season of mists and mellow fruitfulness,
> Close bosom-friend of the maturing sun; [...]
> (Keats 1958: 273)

The context is crucial. Given the title of the poem and the reference to fruitfulness, 'mellow' is almost certain to evoke 'yellow', a colour of fruit and autumn leaves. In its turn, the 'sun' is likely to be a rich yellow, glowing like a ripe fruit through the autumn haze. These two effects ensure that the 'mists' are received positively by the reader/listener, and not as cold, damp, and grey. The alliteration in 'mists ... mellow ... maturing' reinforces the effect, and also gives 'maturing' an intransitive sense as well as its transitive one: the sun itself is growing mature as the year advances. Further, if the sun

www.kaues.org

is maturing (whether in the year or in the day), it may well be low in the sky; if so, it looks extra big when seen through the mist, like a swelling fruit. The [m] in 'bosom' links this word, too, with the other three; so the mellow fruits are perhaps reminiscent of milk-filled breasts, as if season, sun and earth are affectionately uniting in maternal bountifulness. This suggestion is itself reinforced by the alliteration and assonance in 'fruitfulness ... friend', and by the alliteration and assonance on [s] throughout the two lines, which associates all these key words still more closely with one another.

Not many translators earn their livings translating poetry, of course. But in respect of sound-symbolism – as of many other things – poetry offers extremely clear examples of vital factors which all translators do need to bear in mind. The Keats example is useful for this very reason. Practically none of the images and associations we saw in those two lines derive from denotative meaning alone – that is why perceiving and reacting to sound-symbolism is bound to be subjective. All of them are reinforced, and some are actually created, by phonic features. Yet those phonic features are objectively present in the text. This points to the first factor that needs to be remembered: unlike many other sorts of symbols, those in 'sound-symbolism' do not have a single unchanging meaning. In fact, none of the phonic features in the lines from Keats has any *intrinsic* meaning or expressive power at all. Such expressiveness as they have derives from the context – and that is the second vital factor. In a different context, the same features would almost certainly have a different effect. The *sounds* of the words have their effect in terms of the denotative and connotative *meanings* of the words. So, without the title, 'mellow' might very well not evoke 'yellow'. Neither is there anything intrinsically mellow, maternal or mature about the sound [m]: the smell in a pig-yard might be described as 'the mingling miasmata from the slime and muck'. And, in [fr], there is as much frightful frumpishness as there is fruitfulness and friendship.

In other words, translators confronted with sound-symbolism have to decide what its function is before they start translating. The aim will be to convey as much of the ST message as possible. If it is essential to this message that the TT convey sound-symbolism, it is almost certain that the TL sounds involved will be *different* from the ST ones: trying to reproduce phonic effects and affiliations in the TT usually entails far too great a loss in respect of denotative and connotative meaning. The translator's question therefore has to be: is what matters the *specific sounds* in the ST's alliteration, assonance, etc., or is it rather *the fact that there is* alliteration, assonance, etc? Fortunately, the latter is usually the case, and it is usually possible to compensate for the loss of given ST phonic details by replacing them with TL ones that have a comparable effect. Consider the following:

كان الحوار حوار جرحى أمضهم الجرح وأعياهم التعب [...]

www.kaues.org

This has been translated (Brown 1996: 21) as:

> Their conversation was that of the wounded, who were tormented by their wounds and worn out by exhaustion.

Here the Arabic makes use of various kinds of repetition (cf. Ch. 8) to achieve a sense of emphasis, stressing the degree to which the people concerned were ground down by their afflictions. The English translation compensates in kind and in place by the use of alliteration ('***w***ounded', '***w***ounds' and '***w***orn'), and assonance ('w***oun***ded', '***to***r***me***n***t***ed', 'w***oun***ds', 'w***orn***', 'ou***t***' and 'ex***hau***stio***n***'), to give a similar sense of emphasis.

Similar remarks apply to rhyme. There can be no hard and fast rule regarding rhyme in translation. Each TT requires its own strategy. Often, producing a rhyming TT means an unacceptable sacrifice of denotative and connotative meaning. With some sorts of ST (especially comic or sarcastic ones), where the precise nuances of meaning are less important than the phonic mockery, it is often easier, and even desirable, to stock the TT with rhymes and echoes that are different from those of the ST, but just as obtrusive, and to similar effect. Some genres of writing in Arabic also make use of rhyme, and particularly of سَجْع, or 'rhymed prose' (cf. Ch. 10.3.1) in contexts where rhyme would be highly inappropriate in English. Consider the following:

> ولم يكن بوسعه ان يطفي نار العين بالإغضاء او يخفي تكشيرة الناب بالإصغاء [...]

This has been translated (Brown 1996: 13) as:

> It was not in his power to smother the fire in his heart with indifference or, by listening, to disguise his grimace.

The Arabic contains a double rhyme, يطفي – يخفي and بالإغضاء – بالإصغاء (it also involves parallelism, Ch. 5.2.1; and pattern repetition, Ch. 8.2.3.1). The rhyme here is obviously deliberate in the Arabic; in fact the writer employs rhyme at various points in the book, particularly in 'poetic' contexts which reflect the inner life of the central character صابر. In the context of an English novel, however, such rhyme would seem highly inappropriate and probably comic. The translator has accordingly ignored the rhyme in her translation.

www.kaues.org

7.1.2 Onomatopoeia

The only time when a translator is likely to want to try replicating ST sounds is when they are onomatopoeic. Onomatopoeia must not be confused with alliteration and assonance. An **onomatopoeia** is a word whose phonic form imitates a sound – 'splosh', 'bang', 'cuckoo', etc.

Standard Arabic has a fair number of words which can be regarded as onomatopoeic; colloquial dialects probably have more. Perhaps the most obvious cases in Standard Arabic are doubled and reduplicative verbs (reduplicative verbs being quadriliteral verbs in which the third and fourth radical repeat the first and second radical). Examples of doubled verbs are: طَقَّ 'to crack, pop; to clack, smack, flap'; صَرَّ 'to chirp; to creak (door); to squeak, screech; to grate, scratch; to gnash, chatter (teeth)'; دَقَّ 'to knock, rap, bang (on the door)'. Examples of onomatopoeic reduplicative verbs are: طَقْطَقَ 'to crack, snap, rattle, clatter, chug, pop, crash'; صَرْصَرَ 'to let out a piercing cry, scream shrilly'; دَنْدَنَ 'to buzz, hum; to drone; to hum softly, croon (a song); to murmur'; هَمْهَم 'to say "hmm"; to mumble, mutter; to grumble; to growl, snarl; to hum, buzz, drone' (all definitions from Wehr).

There are often marked linguistic discrepancies in onomatopoeia as between different languages. Thus, the fact that a word in one language is imitative of a particular sound does not necessarily mean that a word in another language which imitates the same sound will be particularly similar phonically to the word in the first language. Thus, although دَنْ sounds rather like 'drone', it does not sound anything like its most normal translation equivalents 'hum' and 'buzz'. Similarly, the fact that an onomatopoeic word exists in one language to describe a particular sound does not necessarily mean that a similarly onomatopoeic word will exist in another language. Thus, 'snore' is hardly onomatopoeic in English, whereas خَرْخَر is obviously so in Arabic. Finally, while onomatopoeic words in different languages are often in some sense similar in terms of meaning, the range of meaning which they have will very often differ significantly (e.g. هَمْهَم 'to say "hmm"; to mumble, mutter; to grumble; to growl, snarl; to hum, buzz, drone').

Because of the differences in onomatopoeia between languages, care may be needed in translating an ST onomatopoeia, particularly when it has a thematic or expressive function. Frequently, the safest approach may be to translate the ST onomatopoeia with something other than a TT onomatopoeia, with or without some form of compensation. A case in point is the short story by يوسف إدريس entitled لغة الآي آي, which deals with the nature of extreme pain, both physical and psychological. آي آي is an onomatopoeic expression in Egyptian Arabic, rather similar to 'ouch' in English. However, 'The Language of Ouch' sounds rather too difficult to interpret in English to be a viable story title, perhaps because 'ouch' in English is typically used as an interjection. It is also too weak for this context. A stronger alternative, such as 'Aargh', is also unviable, because it is even less like a standard

www.kaues.org

English word than 'ouch'. Given this, it seems better to translate لغة الآي أي by something fairly bland, but comprehensible, such as 'The Language of Pain', albeit that there is fairly significant translation loss in terms of expressiveness.

7.2 THE PROSODIC LEVEL

On the prosodic level, utterances count as 'metrically' structured stretches. 'Metric' here covers three sorts of things. First, in a given utterance, some syllables will conventionally always be accented more than others; on top of their standard accentuation, voice stress and emphasis will be used for greater clarity and expressiveness. Second, clarity and expressiveness also depend on variations in vowel pitch and voice modulation. And third, the speed of vocal delivery also varies, for similar reasons. On the prosodic level, therefore, groups of syllables may form *contrastive* patterns (for example, short, fast, staccato sections alternating with long, slow, smooth ones), or *recurrent* ones or both.

For the translator, there are four factors to be borne in mind when considering the prosodic level. The first factor is that Arabic and English are quite different from one another on the prosodic level, having very different tempi, rhythms and melodic undulations. It is virtually impossible to produce a TT that both sounds natural and reproduces the prosodic characteristics of the ST. Just occasionally, it is worth aiming for similar rhythms in the TT to those of the ST. For instance, if part of the ST's expressive effect stems from imitative rhythms – galloping horses, breaking waves, dripping water, etc. – there would be significant translation loss on the prosodic level if the TT failed to use similar rhythms to similar effect.

However, prosodic translation loss far more commonly arises from a failure to heed one or more of the other three factors. The first of these – i.e. the second factor overall – is the nature and function of intonation and stress. This is relatively straightforward in the case of oral texts. Even in written texts, either the grammatical structure or the context will usually show what the intonation should be when the text is read out loud, and what its communicative purpose is. Consider the following from the short story الخيول by the Iraqi writer عبد الرحمن مجيد الربيعي. A young man has just met a young woman in a hotel:

ST

سألته:

– أحجزت؟

وهز رأسه وقال:

– على وشك.

www.kaues.org

– أطلبت غرفة بحمام؟
– نعم.
– حسنا. أخبرني عن رقمها. فغرفتي بلا حمام.
وأضافت:
– الوسخ يضايقني.

TT (adapted from Tunnicliffe 1994: 12)
'Have you checked in?', she asked.
He shook his head and said, 'Almost'.
'Did you ask for a room with a bathroom?'
'Yes.'
'Good. Give me the number; my room hasn't got one'.
And then she added: 'I get fed up with the dirt'.

As a spoken text, this dialogue displays quite subtle variations in intonation and stress; it is worth reading the TT out loud to appreciate these. Consider, in particular, the likely intonation of 'Almost', and the young woman's rather suggestive 'I get fed up with the dirt'. Subtle as these issues of intonation and stress are, however, they are fairly naturally 'read in' by competent speakers, and therefore do not normally present grave translation problems. The translator's job – and this is the third factor – is to select a written form which suggests an intonation and a stress pattern which ensure that the TT sentence has the same communicative purpose as its ST counterpart. In this text by الربيعي, for example, one might perhaps choose to translate the young woman's final statement الوسخ يضايقني, not as 'I get fed up with the dirt', but as 'You see, I get fed up with the dirt'. The addition of 'You see' explains the relationship between the statement 'I get fed up with the dirt' and the previous statements 'Give me the number; my room hasn't got one' (etc.), and ensures that the intonation pattern which is read in is likely to be appropriate.

The fourth factor is that even where the TL expression does not seem grammatically or prosodically problematic, the translator must be sure not to introduce prosodic features that are inappropriate to the message content. Perhaps the commonest cases of translation loss on the prosodic level arise when a grammatical choice in the TT implies a stress pattern and an intonation that lead the reader/listener to expect a different sort of message from the one that actually materializes. This often happens when the translator chooses an inappropriate connective.

A good example of this is the following, from the Egyptian magazine *Petroleum* (Egyptian General Petroleum Corporation 1999:١٧, 7), which is the final sentence of an article lauding the achievements of the Egyptian oil industry over the past eighteen years:

www.kaues.org

ST

ومما لا شك فيه أن حصاد وإنجازات العمل البترولي خلال الـ١٨ عاماً الماضية هو بمثابة وسام للعاملين بالبترول ومحصلة للسياسات والمجهودات التي تمت خلال تلك الفترة.

TT (adapted)

No doubt, the achievements of the petroleum sector during the past 18 years represent a triumph for the workers in this sector, and reflect the policies and efforts which have been pursued during this period.

In the Arabic ST, the phrase مما لا شك فيه signals that the final sentence of the article is intended to summarize the information previously given in the article. This is why there is no doubt about what is to follow in this sentence. In English, however, sentences beginning 'no doubt' often have an intonation pattern which rises at the end of the sentence. This typically signals that the following sentence will contain a contrast or contradiction to the information given in the sentence in question. The effect of this in the TT is to signal that the lack of doubt about the achievements (etc.) of the petroleum sector is likely to be contrasted in the subsequent sentence, this subsequent sentence perhaps beginning with a contrastive conjunctive element, such as 'however'. Thus, one might imagine the English TT carrying on along the following lines:

> No doubt, the achievements of the petroleum sector during the past 18 years represent a triumph for the workers in this sector, and reflect the policies and efforts which have been pursued during this period. However, this does not obviate the need for future rationalization within the industry.

This sense of subsequent contrast is certainly not intended in the Arabic ST.

The English TT could be improved by replacing the negative 'no doubt' with something more positive, and less open to a contrastive interpretation. Thus (with some additional changes):

> When we consider the achievements of the petroleum sector during the past 18 years, it is clear that they represent a triumph for the workers in this sector, and reflect the policies and efforts which have been pursued during this period.

7.2.1 Rudiments of English and Arabic versification

A special set of features on the prosodic level are those found in verse, which present specific translation challenges. What follows is a short introduction

www.kaues.org

to the rudiments of English and Arabic versification. Our aim is to give students a foundation for discerning and interpreting the conventional patterns in English and Arabic verse, and for making an informed decision between English metres if the strategic decision is to produce a verse TT. We shall focus on the metrical side of versification – that is, the distribution of stressed and unstressed syllables. This ignores tempi and melodic pitch, which are vital prosodic textual variables and which do, of course, require as much attention in preparing to translate verse as they do for prose. We shall not consider other aspects of verse, such as types of stanza or the phonic questions of rhyme. For fuller information on these and on metrical questions, see Hollander 1981 and Stoetzer 1998 (vol. 2: 619–21).

7.2.1.1 English

English metre is syllable-and-stress metre. The line is defined in terms of feet. A foot is a conventional group of stressed and/or unstressed syllables in a particular order. A line of traditional verse consists of a fixed number of particular feet. For example:

The ***cur/***few ***tolls/*** the ***knell/*** of ***par/***ting ***day/***

This line has five feet; that is, it is a pentameter. In this particular case, the feet have one unstressed followed by one stressed syllable. This is known as an *iamb*, or iambic foot. A line consisting of five iambs is an iambic pentameter. It is the most common English line, found in the work of great playwrights and poets. The commonest other feet are:

trochee	(adj. *trochaic*):	***When*** the/ ***pie*** was/ ***o***pened/
dactyl	(adj. *dactylic*):	***Me***rrily/ ***chat***ting and/ ***clat***tering/
anapest	(adj. *anapestic*):	And made ***ci/***der in***side/*** her in***side/***

Most poems do not have a regular beat throughout. This would be intolerably dreary. Even limericks are very rarely exclusively anapestic. The opening lines of Keats's 'To Autumn' (§ 7.1.1) are examples of typical variations on the basic iambic pentameter. These lines still count as iambic pentameters, because they do have five feet, they are predominantly iambic, and the rest of the poem has these qualities.

One other sort of English metre is worth mentioning, strong-stress metre. This is different from syllable-and-stress metre, in that only the stresses count in describing the line, the number of weak syllables being variable. Much modern verse uses this metre, often in combination with syllable-and-stress metre.

www.kaues.org

7.2.1.2 Arabic

Like the English metrical line, the line in Arabic is defined in terms of feet. However, while English metre involves both syllable and stress, Arabic metre is based entirely around syllable-type. The basic distinction is between short syllables (consonant + short vowel) and long syllables (consonant + long vowel, *or* consonant + short vowel + consonant). All Arabic syllables are treated as beginning with a consonant. Accordingly, there is no ambiguity about where one syllable ends and another begins. Thus in the word دَمٌ, the first syllable is *da* and the second syllable is *mun*. Vowels at the end of the hemistich or line are always scanned long, irrespective of their quantity in prose.

Feet consist of varying numbers of syllables (most commonly three or four syllables), combinations of these feet making up a particular metre. A large number of metres are recognized in classical Arabic poetry. Compositions are normally in a single metre. However, the fact that metres permit a degree of variation in the syllable types used to constitute their feet means that there is normally a degree of rhythmic variation within an individual composition. In some metres, double short syllables within one line typically alternate with one long syllable in other line, while in others a long syllable in one line alternates with a short syllable in another.

Most classical poems are of the قصيدة form, a قصيدة having a variable number of lines (بيت, pl. أبيات), normally not more than one hundred. Lines can have up to thirty syllables divided into two hemistichs (مصْرَع or شَطْر). The first half of the line is called the صدر 'chest' (also الشَطر الاول 'the first half'), and the second the عجز 'rump' (also الشطر الثاني 'the second half'). These are separated by a gap in the text which is somewhat longer than that which standardly occurs between words. The number of syllables per line is variable in some metres and fixed in others. A single rhyme, sometimes termed a monorhyme, occurs at the end of every line. First lines (مَطْلَع, pl. مطالع) often have rhyming hemistichs.

As an illustration of the operation of traditional Arabic prosody, we shall take the first two lines from a poem by الإمام الشافعي, the founder of the شافعية School of Law (مذهب).

دَعِ الأَيَّامَ تَفْعَلُ مَا تَشَاءُ   وَطِبْ نَفْساً إِذَا حَكَمَ القَضَاءُ
وَلاَ تَجْزَعْ لِحَادِثَةِ اللَّيَالِي   فَمَا لِحَوَادِثِ الدُّنْيَا بَقَاءُ

This can be translated fairly literally as follows:

Let the days do what they will, and be of good cheer when fate judges.
Do not be concerned at the night's event; for the world's events have no permanence.

www.kaues.org

The metre is a variation of the وافر metre form, termed by Stoetzer (1998: 621) *wafir-1*. Using U to represent a short syllable, – to represent a long syllable, U͟ ͟U to represent either one long or two short syllables, / to represent a foot division, and // to represent a hemistich division, the basic pattern of this variant of وافر can be represented as follows (reading from right to left, i.e. the same direction as the Arabic script).

// – – U/ – U͟ ͟U – U/ – U͟ ͟U – U/

The second hemistich in this metre has exactly the same pattern of feet as the first hemistich and so has not been repeated here.

The first two lines of this poem can be scanned as follows below. We have split up the Arabic words into syllable units for ease of presentation and added foot and hemistich divisions in the Arabic as well as in the metrical analysis on the line below this.

/دَ عِ ال أيْ يَا /مَ تَفْ عَ لُ مَا /تَ شَا ءُ //
// – – U/ – U U – U/ – – – U/

/وَ طِبْ نَفْ سأً /إِ ذَا حَ كَ مَ ال/قَ ضَا ءُ /
/ – – U/ – U U – U/ – – – U/

/وَ لاَ تَجْ زَعْ /لِ حَا دِ ثَ ةِ ال/لَ يَا لِي//
// – – U/ – U U – U/ – – – U/

/فَ مَا لِ حَ وَا /دِ ثِ ال دُّنْ يَا /بَ قَا ءُ /
/ – – U/ – – – U/ – U U – U/

Since the second half of the twentieth century, many Arab poets have used free verse, abandoning the fixed patterns of the classical verse forms. The basic unit of free verse is the single foot (تَفْعِيلَة), this being either a type of foot used in older poetry, or a close derivative.

7.2.2 Translating Arabic verse

The translator of a verse text always has to ask what the function of the ST verse is. Is it decorative? Does it have thematic and/or expressive effect? What is the effect of its regularity or irregularity? And, of course, similar

www.kaues.org

questions have to be asked on the phonic/graphic level.

In terms of the choice of an overall TT form for verse translation, issues of appropriateness and practicability are extremely important. In terms of appropriateness, we will consider the issues of rhyme and stanza form, since these are fairly clear-cut. The monorhyme of the traditional Arabic قصيدة, for example, is quite alien to the traditional rhyming patterns of English. Translators of an Arabic قصيدة who decide to use rhyme in their translation are therefore faced with a choice. Either they use an Arabic-type monorhyme, and thereby produce a rather exotic-sounding translation. Or they use a rhyming pattern which is more typical of English, but involves significant translation loss on the phonic level.

The same is true of the division of the poem into stanzas. As we have seen, the Arabic قصيدة is written as a single block, without any stanza divisions (although there are also traditional Arabic verse forms such as the مُوَشَّح which make use of stanzas). Some English poems are written in continuous blocks of many lines, but this is by no means a predominant form. Again, the translator is faced with a choice; either to retain the overall single-block form of the ST, or to substitute a perhaps more natural-looking TT stanza form.

Appropriateness often has to be balanced against practicality. A translator might, for example, consider that the ideal translation of a particular Arabic قصيدة would be into an English TT utilizing rhyming iambic pentameters in four-line stanzas. But these constraints are bound to result in significant translation loss. For example, it may not be possible under such circumstances to relay in the TT features on the phonic level of the ST (e.g. alliteration, assonance) which may be just as important as features of metre and rhyme. It may also prove necessary to make dramatic changes to denotative meaning in order to make the TT fit the desired verse form. Under such circumstances, it may be preferable to translate the قصيدة into free verse, or into a form of prose which maintains at least some prosodic and phonic features typical of poetry. It may also be possible to compensate for some of the loss of metrical and rhyming features by careful use of vocabulary which belongs to an obviously poetic register, or which has particularly appropriate connotations in the context in which it is used.

www.kaues.org

PRACTICAL 7

Practical 7.1 The phonic/graphic and prosodic levels

Assignment

(i) Consider the two TT versions of the first three lines of the poem: TT 1, and TT 2. What different strategic decisions do TT 1 and TT 2 embody? What are the advantages and disadvantages of each approach? Think particularly about metrical features and the stanza form of TT 2.

(ii) Produce a translation of the entire poem which is a completion of TT 1 and is modelled on the translation patterns established in TT 1. If you feel particularly strongly that there are elements in TT 1 which you can improve on, you should do so. However, do not attempt to change any features which are the result of identifiable strategic decisions.

(iii) Produce a translation of the entire poem which is a completion of TT 2 and is modelled on the translation patterns established in TT 2. If you feel particularly strongly that there are elements in TT 2 which you can improve on, you should do so. However, do not attempt to change any features which are the result of identifiable strategic decisions.

(iv) Write notes explaining where and why you used four-line stanzas in the completion of TT 2, and where and why you used two-line stanzas.

(v) You have been approached by the International Poetry Society to contribute a translation of this poem in an anthology of Islamic verse, to be published in the English-speaking world. This anthology is aimed at a readership which is likely to include the following: (i) people with an existing interest in English-language poetry, (ii) people with an existing interest in religious literature; (iii) English-speaking Muslims. Which of your two TT versions of this ST would you propose that the publisher uses for the anthology, and why?

Contextual information

This ST is a piece of Islamic religious poetry by محمد بن إدريس الشافعي (767–820 A.D.), the founder of the Sunni شافعية School of Law (مذهب). The metre of this poem has already been discussed in § 7.2.1.2. The ST is popular at least partly because of the accessibility of its language, and posters of it can be found on the walls of shops and restaurants in Yemen (and possibly other Arab countries). It can be regarded as reflecting a 'stoical' attitude to life which is typical of mainstream Sunni Islam.

www.kaues.org

ST

دَعِ الأيَّامَ تَفْعَلُ مَا تَشَاءُ　　وَطِبْ نَفْساً إذَا حَكَمَ القَضَاءُ
وَلاَ تَجْزَعْ لِحَادِثَةِ اللَّيَالِي　　فَمَا لِحَوَادِثِ الدُّنْيَا بَقَاءُ
وَكُنْ رَجُلاً عَلَى الأَهْوَالِ جَلْداً　　وَشِيمَتُكَ السَّمَاحَةُ وَالوَفَاءُ
وَإنْ كَثُرَتْ عُيُوبُكَ فِي البَرَايَا　　وَسَرَّكَ أن يَكُونَ لَهَا غِطَاءُ
تَسَتَّرْ بالسَخَاءِ فَكُلُّ عَيْبٍ　　يُغَطِّيهِ كَمَا قِيلَ السَخَاءُ
وَلاَ تُرِ لِلأعَادِي قَطُّ ذُلاًّ　　فَإنَّ شَمَاتَةَ الأعْدَا بَلاَءُ
وَلاَ تَرْجُ السَمَاحَةَ مِنْ بَخِيلٍ　　فَمَا فِي النَارِ لِلظَّمْآنِ مَاءُ
وَرِزْقُكَ لَيْسَ يُنْقِصُهُ التَّأنِّي　　وَلَيْسَ يَزِيدُ فِي الرِّزْقِ العَنَاءُ
وَلاَ حُزْنٌ يَدُومُ وَلاَ سُرُورٌ　　وَلاَ بُؤسٌ عَلَيْكَ وَلاَ رَخَاءُ
إذَا مَا كُنْتَ ذَا قَلْبٍ قَنُوعٍ　　فَأَنْتَ وَمَالِكُ الدُّنْيَا سَوَاءُ
وَمَنْ نَزَلَتْ بِسَاحَتِهِ المَنَايَا　　فَلاَ أَرْضٌ تَقِيهِ وَلاَ سَمَاءُ
وَأَرْضُ اللهِ وَاسِعَةٌ وَلَكِنْ　　إذَا نَزَلَ القَضَا ضَاقَ الفَضَاءُ
دَعِ الأيَّامَ تَغْدُرُ كُلَّ حِينٍ　　فَمَا يُغْنِي عَنِ المَوْتِ الدَّوَاءُ

TT 1

Let the days do what they will, and be of good cheer when fate utters its decree.
Nor be troubled by the night's event; the events of this world have no permanence.
Be steadfast in the face of terrors; let your mark be generosity and trust.

TT 2

Let the days do what they will,
And with good cheer face fate's decree.
Let night's events cause no concern;
The world's events will cease to be.

Brave all dreads with firm decision –
Loyal and generous of disposition.

www.kaues.org

Practical 7.2 The phonic/graphic level

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. Consider in particular any points at which assonance or alliteration might figure in your translation. The text is to be translated as a piece of literary writing for an educated English-speaking audience with no specific knowledge of the Arab world.

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Explain the main decisions of detail you made in producing your TT.

Contextual information

The text is from عرس الزين (صالح n.d.: 33), a well-known novel by the contemporary Sudanese writer الطيب صالح. الزين himself is a kind of wise fool whose character has religious overtones. A number of passages in the book, like this one, are largely descriptive. This text is part of a two-page descriptive 'mini-chapter' (unnumbered and untitled) within the book. The 'overriding' tense of the narrative of the book is the perfect.

ST

تتابعت الاعوام ، عام يتلو عاماً ، ينتفخ صدر النيل ، كما يمتلئ صدر الرجل بالغيظ . ويسيل الماء على الضفتين ، فيغطي الأرض المزروعة حتى يصل إلى حافة الصحراء عند أسفل البيوت. تنق الضفادع بالليل، وتهب من الشمال ريح رطبة مغمسة بالندى تحمل رائحة هي مزيج من اريج زهر الطلح ورائحة الحطب المبتل ورائحة الأرض الخصبة الظمأى حين ترتوي بالماء ورائحة الأسماك الميتة التي يلقيها الموج على الرمل . وفي الليالي المقمرة حين يستدير وجه القمر، يتحول الماء إلى مرآة ضخمة مضيئة تتحرك فوق صفحتها ظلال النخل واغصان الشجر. والماء يحمل الأصوات إلى أبعاد كبيرة ، فإذا اقيم حفل عرس على بعد ميلين تسمع زغاريده ودق طبوله وعزف طنابيره ومزاميره كأنه إلى يمين دارك.

www.kaues.org

8

Grammatical issues in translation

8.1 INTRODUCTION

We have seen in Chapter 7 that the alliteration and assonance of 'Season of mists and mellow fruitfulness' trigger effects over and above the denotative meaning of this phrase. We were considering the alliteration and assonance as features on the phonic/graphic level. But, like all utterances, this one can also be considered on the other five levels of textual variables. The extra meanings, for instance, are the semantic correlates of features on the *grammatical* level, while part of the effect of Keats's phrase derives from features on the *sentential* level. We will consider the grammatical level in the present chapter and the sentential level in Chapter 9.

8.2 THE GRAMMATICAL LEVEL

On the grammatical level are considered two things: (1) **morphology** (adj. morphological): i.e. words and their formation by affixation, inflection, derivation and compounding; (2) syntax (adj. syntactic): i.e. the arrangement of words into phrases and sentences. It is the grammatical level where translation loss is generally most immediately obvious. This is very clear in examples which we have seen in previous chapters, many of which show the need for some degree of grammatical transposition. Because loss on this level is so common, we shall only give a few examples here. As ever, the question is not whether there is translation loss (there always is), but what it consists in and whether it matters.

www.kaues.org

8.2.1 Words

We are all familiar with dictionaries. They are indispensable for anyone concerned with language, because they list the practical totality of the words in a given language. This totality is known as the lexis of a language (adj. lexical). But it is vital to remember that meanings are not found exclusively in the words listed individually in the dictionary. Any text shows that the combination of words creates meanings that they do not have in isolation, and even meanings that are not wholly predictable from the senses of the words combined.

In translation, lexical loss is very common, but it is just one kind of translation loss among many. It can occur for all sorts of reasons. It very often arises from the fact that exact synonymy between ST words and TL words is relatively rare. The word لحم, for example, might be considered an exact synonym of English 'meat'. For many Arabs, however, chicken may not count as لحم, and fish almost certainly will not. This phenomenon is even clearer in some dialects than it is in Standard Arabic. In Sudan, for example, لغة is only used in speaking to refer to a language which is regularly used in writing. English and Arabic, therefore, both qualify as لغة. Languages which are not normally written, by contrast, are normally referred to as لهجة. This means that Sudanese colloquial Arabic, and a language such as Dinka (spoken by perhaps two million people in southern Sudan) are both classified as لهجة. (Another term used in Sudan specifically for unwritten languages other than Arabic is رُطانة.) Thus, لغة in Sudanese Arabic is not a synonym of 'language' in English; nor is لهجة a synonym of English 'dialect' (as might be thought if one only considered لهجة in relation to Sudanese colloquial Arabic).

Another common source of lexical translation loss is the fact that, in any text, words acquire associative overtones on top of their denotative meaning. We have seen a good example in the lines from Keats, where alliteration and assonance were extremely important for the effects of the text. Another example is a line from the Syrian poet نزار قباني, which reads أحمل الزمن المحترق في عيني (cf. Ch. 6.6). This has been translated (Rolph 1995: 10) as 'I carry this scorched era in my eyes'. Here a more literal translation of محترق, e.g. 'burnt', 'burnt up', 'flaming', 'fiery', would sound odd. 'Scorched', however, sounds much more acceptable in this context, mainly because the phrase 'scorched era' echoes the military phrase 'scorched earth'.

8.2.2 Grammatical arrangement

Lexical issues are a particular category of grammatical issue, so it is not surprising that some of them are most conveniently examined under the heading of grammatical arrangement. Under this heading, we subsume two

www.kaues.org

types of grammatical structure: (1) morphological patterns affecting individual words – affixation/inflection, compounding and derivation; (2) syntactic patterns, whereby words are linked to form more or less complex phrases and sentences. In both, what concerns the translator is the fact that the structural patterns differ from language to language. Even where apparent cross-linguistic similarities occur, they can be misleading. For example, although the accusative suffix ـاً is a recognized means of forming adverbs in Arabic, English more readily adds *-ly* to form adverbs than Arabic does ـاً.

Thus one fairly commonly finds certain adverbs in Arabic which translate simply as adverbs into English, such as كثيراً 'much', 'often' (etc.), قليلاً 'little', 'infrequently', قريباً 'soon', سريعاً 'quickly'. It is more common, however, to find complex forms of various kinds in Arabic translated as English adverbs. Amongst other things, these may be prepositional phrases في الآونة الأخيرة 'recently', على نحو ملح 'persistently', بخطى سريعة 'quickly' (of walking), بخطى وئيدة 'slowly' (of walking), بلهجة مرحة 'cheerfully' (of speaking). They may also be cognate accusatives (absolute accusatives) بكى بكاءً مراً 'he wept bitterly'; and they may also be circumstantial clauses (حال-clauses) وكانت عيناها تبتسمان فرحتين 'her eyes twinkled happily', فاستأنف السير مشدود القامة سريع الخطى 'he walked on stiffly and quickly'. Of course there are also occasions where an Arabic adverbial form is translated by something other than an English adverb; consider, for instance, the Arabic adverbial أمريكياً in the following newspaper headline (from القدس العربي, 6 September 1999) صدام وعدي وبرزان ووطبان وعزيز متهمون بجرائم حرب حسب منظمة مدعومة أمريكيا. This might be translated into English as 'Saddam, Uday, Barzan, Watban and Aziz branded war-crimes suspects by American-backed organization'. Such cases, however, are the exception rather than the rule.

Compounding, too, differs from language to language. German is famously capable of long compounds, English somewhat less so. Arabic, like French and other Romance languages, is a more analytical language, and compounds are typically formed by the use of the genitive structure; e.g. غرفة نوم 'bedroom', or by noun-adjective pairs such الشرق الاوسط 'the Middle East'. Both of these structures can yield complications when combined with other elements.

Thus in the complex genitive structure, ستائر غرفة النوم الجديدة, it is not clear (in the absence of case-ending markers in the text) whether the phrase means 'the new curtains of the bedroom' or 'the curtains of the new bedroom'. Arabic therefore frequently resorts to more complex phrases in order to avoid such ambiguities, for instance through the use of لـ; thus الستائر الجديدة لغرفة النوم 'the new curtains of the bedroom' or 'the new bedroom curtains'. These periphrastic structures in Arabic provide the Arabic>English translator with opportunities to find conciser, more tightly structured TT equivalents.

Compound phrases using the genitive in Arabic can also be problematic

www.kaues.org

when a corresponding adjective is required. Thus, علم البشر is a calqued term for 'anthropology', alongside the cultural borrowing أنثروبولوجيا. However, one cannot use بشري to mean 'anthropological' in Arabic, in the same way as one can use أحيائي to mean 'biological' (from علم الأحياء 'biology'). This is because بشري already has an existing meaning of 'human' (as an adjective). Accordingly, in order to say 'anthropological' in Arabic, one either has to use the compound genitive noun علم البشر as itself part of some periphrastic phrase, or one has to use the adjective from the cultural borrowing أنثروبولوجيا, i.e. أنثروبولوجي. In the second case there are few difficulties for the translator into English; in the first there may be an opportunity for the translator to find conciser, more tightly structured equivalents.

Grammatical differences are especially clear in differences in verb systems. The system of tenses of Arabic is quite different from English; يشتري, for example, can standardly mean both 'buys' and 'is buying'. In some contexts, it might mean 'will buy' (although one would more commonly expect سيشتري in this sense); and in other contexts, يشتري might be most naturally translated as 'bought', or 'was buying' (e.g. in certain subordinate clauses, or in a story where a general past tense setting has already been established for a particular part of the text). English has a system of verb tenses in the proper sense; that is to say, particular tenses relate fairly consistently to natural time. Arabic, on the other hand, operates with a system that combines tense and aspect. Thus, the perfect can indicate completion of the action as well as occurrence in the past (as in اشترى 'he bought'), while the imperfect may indicate non-completion of the action regardless of whether it occurs in the past or present (for example, in contexts where يشتري translates as 'is/was buying'). The actual time significance of the imperfect in particular is very often context-dependent. This is most clearly seen in subordinate clauses. In cases where the main clause has a perfect verb, dependent subordinate clauses will typically have imperfect verbs, the fact that the overall time reference is the past being signalled solely by the use of the perfect in the main clause (cf. Dickins and Watson 1999: 130–1).

The use of the imperfect to express past time goes beyond subordinate clauses. It is possible to find the imperfect used in almost any situation in which the general time reference has already been established. Thus, in fictional writing in particular, an author may establish a general past reference by an initial use of a perfect verb, and then shift to the imperfect throughout the rest of the episode in question, only returning to the perfect in order to mark the start of a new episode in the story. This usage has something in common with the so-called 'vivid present' in English, which is sometimes used in story-telling contexts ('A man comes into a pub. He goes up to the bar, and he says to the landlord [...]'). However, while the English vivid present is typically confined to informal or dramatic contexts, this use of the Arabic imperfect to relay narrative events in the past is common in formal writing.

www.kaues.org

The flexibility of Arabic tense usage may sometimes raise difficulties particularly in translating from Arabic to English. A good example is provided by the start of the text from عرس الزين beginning تتابعت الاعوام (Ch. 7, Practical 7.2).

As the discussion so far has suggested, translators give priority to the *mot juste* and to constructing idiomatic TL sentences, even where this entails translation loss in terms of grammatical structure or economy. Exceptions may be made where, for whatever reason, exoticism is required in the TT. More often, the ST may have salient textual properties manifestly resulting from the manipulation of grammatical structure. The marked manipulation of grammatical structure is a common feature in literary texts. The translator of such texts must always decide how distinctive the grammatical structures are, what their function is, and what the aim of the ST is. Only then can a decision be taken about how distinctive the TT's grammar should be. A common Arabic feature which poses this problem is morphological repetition.

8.2.3 Morphological repetition

The three forms of morphological repetition which are of most importance for translation, and which therefore concern us here are pattern repetition, root repetition and **suffix repetition**.

8.2.3.1 Pattern repetition

Pattern repetition involves repetition of the same pattern (فَعَل, فاعل, مَفْعُول, فعْل, مَفْعَلة, etc.) in two or more words in close proximity, while root repetition involves repetition of the same root in two or more words in close proximity. Both pattern repetition and root repetition can be used to provide textual cohesion. However, more often they fulfil stylistic and other purposes.

Pattern repetition is an extremely common feature of Arabic, and quite frequently occurs without having any particular stylistic significance; thus البيت القديم الكبير would be a reasonable translation of 'the big old house' in many contexts, the repetition of the فَعيل pattern in قديم and كبير not necessarily having any particular significance.

More important from a stylistic point of view is where pattern repetition is combined with some kind of semantic relationship. Here the general effect of pattern repetition is normally to give some additional emphasis. We can usefully distinguish three relevant types of semantic relationship: (i) semantically related words; (ii) synonyms or near-synonyms; (iii) antonyms.

Semantically related words are words whose meanings fall within the same general semantic field, but which are clearly distinct in meaning. An

www.kaues.org

example is أفكار and أحلام 'thoughts and dreams', and دهشة and صدمة 'amazement' and 'shock'. These do not generally pose translation problems and can often be translated fairly literally; thus معظم أفكاره وأحلامه 'most of his thoughts and dreams' (Brown 1996: 23); أصيب صابر بالدهشة والصدمة 'Saber had been amazed and shocked' (Brown 1996: 45).

The translation of synonyms and near-synonyms with pattern repetition typically involves the same techniques as are used with repetition of synonyms generally (Ch. 5.2), i.e. merging, grammatical transposition, semantic distancing, and maintenance.

An example of merging is أربع فتيات جميلات أنيقات 'four pretty young women'. Another example is وكان لا بد له من التأدب والتعلم translated as '[...] so he had no alternative left to him but education' (Brown 1996: 19).

An example of grammatical transposition is:

> هذا وقد حققت جماعة الإخوان المسلمين هذا النمو الصاروخي دون أي عناء في {التنظير} و{التحليل} أو في الدعاية والعمل الجماهيري أو في التجنيد التنظيمي حيث كانت العضوية تبدأ بمجرد أن يتعاطف الفرد معها [...]

This has been translated (Calderbank 1990: 20) as:

> This phenomenal success was achieved without any {systematic analysis} of issues, without extensive propaganda, or working with the masses and without any organized recruitment: to be reckoned a member it was simply enough for an individual to sympathize with the Society's aim [...]

Here the noun-doublet التنظير والتحليل has been transposed grammatically into the English adjective-noun phrase 'systematic analysis'.

Semantic distancing is illustrated by a translation of خوفاً عليها من الفزع والهلع 'for fear of alarming and upsetting her' (Brown 1996: 38). Wehr gives فزع as meaning 'fear, fright, terror, alarm, dismay, anxiety, consternation, panic', and هلع as meaning 'impatience, restlessness, uneasiness; burning anxiety; alarm, dismay'. The translator has chosen here to distance the meaning of هلع slightly further from فزع than is indicated by the dictionary definitions, by interpreting هلع to mean 'upset'. She thus loses something in terms of denotative meaning. However, the resulting phrase 'alarming and upsetting' is idiomatic and stylistically acceptable.

An example of maintenance is the translation of a chapter title from a book about the role of the military in political life in the Arab world. The chapter is entitled دور العسكر التغييري: تقويم وتحليل. This has been translated as 'The transformational rôle of the military: evaluation and analysis' (Humphrys 1999: 1). Here the meanings of the fairly standard English

www.kaues.org

translations of تــقـــويـم 'evaluation' and تحليل 'analysis' are felt to be sufficiently distinct from one another for it to be acceptable to maintain the ST structure in the TT.

Pattern repetition with antonyms is also fairly common. Consider the following:

ولما كان التاريخ الحقيقي هو تاريخ الجماهير ولما كانت علاقة السلطة المصرية بالجماهير هي في الأغلب الأعم علاقة شك متبادل فإن التقييم الموضوعي لجماعة الإخوان المسلمين يفرض علينا التقاط البدايات التاريخية لمواقفها وبالتالي لموقعها بين قضايا الجماهير من جهة وتوجهات السلطة من الجهة المقابلة ثم تتبع هذه الجماعة عبر كافة المنحنيات التي تعرجت داخلها {هبوطًا} و{صعودًا} لاستجلاء الغموض الذي يحيط بحلقاتها المتتالية بدءًا بالحلقة الأولى التي [...]

This has been translated (Calderbank 1990: 9) as:

> Given that true history is the history of the masses, and that the relationship between the Egyptian ruling class and the masses has, in the vast majority of cases, been one of mutual suspicion, then an objective evaluation of the Society of the Muslim Brothers obliges us to trace the historical beginnings of the group's policies and consequently its position vis-a-vis popular issues on the one hand and the particular objectives of the ruling classes on the other. Such an evaluation would also oblige us to follow {the changing fortunes} of the Society in order to elucidate the mystery which surrounds the successive episodes in its history, beginning with episode one, which [...]

Here the translator has chosen an adjective-noun phrase 'changing fortunes' to relay the Arabic antonyms هبوطاً وصعوداً (or, more accurately to relay the entire phrase المنحنيات التي تعرجت داخلها {هبوطًا} و{صعودًا}). The obvious alternative to this would have been the phrase 'ups and downs'; this, however, sounds rather too informal for the context.

Pattern repetition may also occur with a combination of synonyms and antonyms. An example is the following:

[...] وعليه فقد كان الإمام حسن البنا يجعل مجمل حركة الإخوان المسلمين في جيبه حيث استمد من الفاشية الطاعة الدكتاتورية وحصرها في نفسه فالإخوان يبايعونه على «الالتزام التام بالإخلاص والثقة والسمع والطاعة في {العسر} و{اليسر} و{المنشط} و{المكره}» دون أدنى التزام مقابل منه تجاههم

This could be translated (cf. Calderbank 1990: 9) as:

www.kaues.org

> Thus, Hassan El Banna came to assume total control over the Muslim Brotherhood, adopting from Fascism the principle of absolute obedience to the leader, and thereby concentrating all power in himself. The oath which members of the Brotherhood swore to El Banna, pledged 'total commitment, loyalty, trust and unswerving obedience, {in comfort and adversity, suffering and joy}'. This pledge was not, however, matched by any corresponding commitment on El Banna's part.

Here the parallelism of the Arabic has been retained in the English, as one might expect with formulaic religious language (cf. also Ch. 10.3.2).

8.2.3.2 Root repetition

Root repetition involves repetition of the same morphological root in close proximity within a text (thus درسنا هذا الدرس 'we studied this lesson' involves repetition of the root د ر س). Root repetition may be divided into three kinds: (i) system-intrinsic, (ii) absolute accusative, and (iii) 'other' (cf. Dickins and Watson 1999: 514–18).

System-intrinsic root repetition simply reflects the fact that words in Arabic are typically made up of roots along with patterns, etc. and that general semantic considerations will sometimes cause a writer or speaker to use two words having the same root in close proximity. An example of this is كتب كتاباً 'he wrote a book'. English generally avoids this kind of repetition. In practice, it is not normally difficult to find forms in translating into English which avoid it; in fact, even where English has similar forms, such as 'he drank a drink', there are often more common alternatives such as 'he had a drink'.

Root repetition with the absolute accusative is used to form adverbials. This typically poses no serious translation problems in English. Thus, the phrase لقد تطورت ظاهرة التطرف الديني تطورا سريعا happily translates as 'The phenomenon of religious extremism has developed rapidly'. Sometimes, however, a more complex structure such as a prepositional phrase may be required. Here is an example:

> ... ولكن هذه المدارس السلفية الاربع كانت عاجزة عن {رفض} التغييرات التي شهدها المجتمع {رفضا واعيا مبرمجا} مرتبطا ببدائل محددة كما كانت عاجزة عن مواجهة هذه التغييرات والتصدي لها في نفس الوقت الذي كانت فيه عاجزة عن تبرير هذه التغييرات أو الدفاع عنها [...]

This could be translated as follows (adapted from Calderbank 1990: 8):

> These four Salafiya schools were, however, incapable of {refuting} the

www.kaues.org

> changes taking place in society {in any rational or systematic way}, or of offering well-defined alternatives. They were unable to confront and resist these changes, or to justify and defend them.

Finally, it may sometimes be necessary to make more radical changes. Consider the following:

> وكانت الموقعة الثالثة بين المرشد والإخوان أثناء حرب فلسطين عام ١٩٤٨ عندما تكتلت مجموعة كبيرة من الإخوان المؤسسين بقيادة الأخ أحمد رفعت ضد الممارسات السياسية لحسن البنا متهمين إياه بمجاملة السلطات وبضعف تأييده للشعب الفلسطيني وانحصاره في العمل الدعائي فقط ومطالبين باتخاذ مواقف محددة في مواجهة السلطات وبـ{مساندة} الشعب الفلسطيني {مساندة} جهادية حقيقية [...]

This has been translated (Calderbank 1990: 27) as:

> The third confrontation between the Guide and the Brothers occurred during the Palestine War of 1948. A large number of Brothers, many of them founder members, banded together under the leadership of Ahmed Rifaat against the political dealings of Hassan El Banna, accusing him of courting the favour of the Palace and of weakness in his support for the Palestinian people, restricting himself essentially to propagandizing. They demanded the adoption of well-defined policies both to challenge the government and to {provide real military assistance} to the Palestinians.

Here the Arabic مساندة (first occurrence) has been transposed grammatically into 'provide ... assistance', while the phrase مساندة جهادية حقيقية is relayed by the adjectives 'real, military', used attributively with 'assistance'.

The use of the absolute accusative in Arabic potentially gives a sense of emphasis (although there is no clear dividing line between the use of the absolute accusative simply to form an adverbial and its use to form an emphatic adverbial). Consider the following:

> إن البورجوازية التي {نمت} {نموا} متسارعا في مصر في بداية القرن الحالي انقسمت الى اتجاهات فكرية متناقضة الاول هو الاتجاه الليبرالي الذي رفع لواءه محمد حسين هيكل وأحمد لطفي السيد، والثاني [...]

This has been translated (Calderbank 1990: 10) as:

> The bourgeoisie, which {grew} {so rapidly} in Egypt at the beginning of this century, soon split into two conflicting intellectual trends, the first being the liberal trend led by Mohamed Hussein Haikal and Ahmad Lutfi

www.kaues.org

El Sayyid and the second [...]

Here the English translation has included an emphatic particle 'so', which seems to reflect the emphasis which is a function of the root repetition (note also, however, the use of متسارعاً in the Arabic, implying ever-increasing speed, as contrasted with the more basic سريعاً, merely meaning 'quickly').

Elsewhere, other translation techniques may be used to give some degree of emphasis in the TT. Thus, in the translation of the phrase ليودّع أمه الوداع الأخير 'in order to bid his mother a final farewell' (Brown 1996: 55), the emphasis of the original root repetition has been relayed by the use of alliteration and assonance in the English 'final farewell' (cp. the less successful 'final adieu/goodbye').

Uses of root repetition which fall under the category of 'other' in general have a more obviously emphatic function. They occur in an unlimited range of grammatical structures. The following are a few examples: (i) subject+verb, as in ثار ثائرُه 'to fly into a rage'; (ii) verb+object, as طلب طلباً 'to make a request'; (iii) verb+prepositional phrase, as in صبغ بصبغة (أخرى) 'to transform'; (iv) conjoined nouns, as in عزة واعتزاز 'honour and self-esteem'; (v) noun+adjective, as in الظل الظليل literally 'shady shade'; (vi) genitives, as in أطماع الطامعين 'the ambitions of the covetous'; and (vii) conjoined adjectives, as in الضعفاء والمستضعفون 'the weak and oppressed'.

It is also possible to find root repetition in larger stretches of text. Sometimes, this has a rhetorical function, rather like that of rhetorical anaphora with respect to lexical items; we shall consider this in Chapter 10. More often, root repetition over larger stretches of text functions not just as a stylistic feature, but as a text-building device, i.e. it contributes to the cohesion of the text. As such, it could be discussed in Chapter 10. For ease of exposition, however, we shall deal with it here, just as we shall deal with lexical item repetition and **phrase repetition** as text-building devices later in this chapter.

The following provides a simple example of root repetition as a text-building device (the entities being spoken to here are أشجار حمراء 'red trees'):

> وكلما يحاورها بصوته المذبوح تأخذ بالنشيج. كان الحوار حوار جرحى امضهم الجرح وأعياهم التعب.

This has been translated (Brown 1996: 21) as:

> and whenever he spoke to them in an anguished voice, they started to sob. The conversation was that of the wounded who were tormented by their wounds and worn out by exhaustion.

Here the Arabic has يحاور in the first sentence (only partially quoted), and حوار in the second sentence. The English TT translates these as 'spoke to' and 'conversation' respectively. The tendency for Arabic to repeat but English

www.kaues.org

to vary parallels that which occurs with lexical item repetition and phrase repetition, as we shall see later. This text-building use of root repetition is also similar to the text-building use of lexical repetition in that the meanings involved are very similar: in this case يحاور and حوار express the same core meaning, يحاور in a verbal form, and حوار in a nominal form.

Quite a few cases of root repetition in Arabic involve stock phrases. In such instances the English translation is likely to involve either an English stock phrase, or if no such stock phrase is available, another phrase which sounds natural in the context. Examples where stock phrases are translated as stock phrases are واضح كل الوضوح 'clearly visible', and بادئ ذي بدء 'from the outset'. Where the Arabic root-repetition phrase involves a subject+verb, this is very likely to be an idiom, and is also likely to have a strong poetic/emphatic function. An example, involving ثارت+ثائرة, is the following:

ولا تثور له ثائرة.

This has been translated (Brown 1996: 50) as:

nor had it flared up in rage.

Here the English TT uses quite a common stock phrase, but one which also involves a fairly strong 'fire' metaphor to relay the emphasis of the Arabic ST.

The emphasis, which as already noted is a typical feature of 'other' forms of root repetition in Arabic, can also be conveyed in other ways. An example, involving the idiom صبغ ... بصبغة, is provided by the following:

يعمل المجتمع بدوره على صبغ هذا التنظيم بصبغته الخاصة [...]

This has been translated (Humphrys 1999: 5) as:

the more this society in turn makes its mark upon this establishment.

Here the English idiom 'make its mark' achieves a sense of emphasis through the use of alliteration and assonance.

Even where the Arabic root repetition does not involve a stock phrase, the emphatic nature of such repetition will often make an English emphatic usage appropriate. The following is an example of root repetition plus parallelism, where the translator has maintained the parallelism in English for the sake of emotional emphasis, and has also made use of assonance (root repetition elements have been picked out in curly brackets):

وذلك ليس بغرض البحث الأكاديمي وحسب أو تصفية الحسابات أو
التكفير عن الذنوب أمام حائط مبكى فقط ولكن استشرافًا للمستقبل

www.kaues.org

السياسي للوطن حيث تتقلص هذه الأغراض كثيراً أمام المهام التي يفرضها المجتمع على الباحثين الذين {يعانون} {معاناته} و{يطمحون} {طموحاته}.

This has been translated (Calderbank 1990: 36) as:

> not simply for the purposes of academic research or to settle old accounts, or even to atone for our sins before a wailing wall, but to look ahead to Egypt's political future: all other considerations fade into insignificance when compared with the task society sets those writers who {suffer} {its afflictions} and {share} {its aspirations}.

In this example, the assonance in the TT provides the same sort of emotive emphasis as is provided by the complex root repetition and parallelism in the ST.

Metaphor is also a fairly frequent translation technique where the Arabic does not involve a stock phrase, just as it is when it does. Consider the following (in which the root repetition elements have been picked out in curly brackets):

... فرفض البنا الاستجابة لهذا التكتل و{اشتبك} في عدة {اشتباكات} كلامية مع رفعت كانت تنتهي دومًا بالمزيد من المؤيدين لأحمد رفعت وإزاء سيطرة رفعت الكاملة على المركز العام للإخوان [...]

This has been translated (Calderbank 1990: 27) as:

> El Banna refused to listen to the group and {crossed words} several times with Rifaat. These exchanges always ended up with more support for Rifaat and eventually, faced with Rifaat's complete control of the General Headquarters [...]

Here the translator has attempted to reproduce the striking nature of the Arabic, by using a novel English metaphorical phrase 'cross words', which echoes the existing English phrase 'cross swords'.

Of course, there will be occasions where the root repetition in Arabic serves an obviously emphatic function, but where it seems better not to try to relay this in English. An example is the following:

وبغض النظر عن أصله الاجتماعي، يكتسب الضابط في الجيش {عزة واعتزازا} بالنفس حتى الادعاء.

This has been translated (Humphrys 1999: 2–3) as:

> Regardless of his social class, the army officer acquires a sense of {honour

www.kaues.org

and self-esteem} that border on arrogance.

8.2.3.3 Suffix repetition

Somewhat less important than pattern and root repetition, but still significant, is **suffix repetition**, that is repetition of the same suffix at the end of words in close proximity. The following extract, from an article in the Egyptian magazine روز اليوسف (Hetherington 1996: 10) which deals with political extremism in the Middle East, provides a simple example of suffix repetition.

أرض النبوءات والرسالات والخرافات والمخابرات.

This might be translated as:

> the land of prophecies and divine messages, superstitions – and secret services.

As this example shows, suffix repetition, like pattern repetition and root repetition, emerges from the grammatical structure of Arabic, in this case from the use of the suffix ـات as one of the means of forming the plural. Nonetheless, it still represents a deliberate choice on the part of the writer. Here, the writer has chosen to string together four plurals ending in ـات . Typically suffix repetition would seem to be an emphatic device used in more or less 'poetic' contexts. Very often it is better ignored in translating. Sometimes other means of emphasis may be adopted in the translation. In the above extract the four elements displaying suffix repetition in the ST have been split into groups in the TT, the first positive ('prophecies and divine messages') and the second negative ('superstitions – and secret services'). The two elements in the second group ('superstitions' and 'secret services') have then been further separated by a dash (allowing 'secret services' to function as what one might term the punch-phrase).

The above extract also displays another means of relaying suffix repetition in the TT; the use of alliteration and assonance. In this case, there is alliteration and assonance particularly of [s] in the TT. (For further discussion of suffix repetition, see Dickins and Watson 1999: 520–1.)

8.2.4 Lexical repetition

Another common form of repetition in Arabic is the repetition of the same word or even of a whole phrase in a particular sense (cf. Dickins and Watson 1999: 510–14). Repetition of a single word is termed word repetition or lexical item repetition, while repetition of a whole phrase is termed phrase

www.kaues.org

repetition.

8.2.4.1 Lexical item repetition

Here, for analysis and discussion in class, is an example of lexical item repetition in Arabic, typically translated with lexical variation in English. (In analysing lexical item repetition, Arabic plurals are to be regarded as the same lexical items as their corresponding singulars):

فالخطاب العام لسياسة الإعلام في تلك الدول يؤكد دوما أن المشكلة السكانية عائق من أهم عوائق التنمية، زاعما أن التنمية الاقتصادية لن تتحقق ما لم تحل هذه المشكلة.

This is translated (El-Serafi 1994: 15) as:

> General media propaganda in these countries constantly emphasizes that the population problem is one of the most important impediments to development, claiming that economic progress will not be realized until the difficulty is resolved.

This example of lexical item repetition occurs within a single sentence. However, it is also possible to have cases of lexical item repetition in Arabic extending over larger stretches of text, often where one lexical item in particular relates closely to the general topic of that particular section of text. In this case, lexical item repetition functions not just as a stylistic feature, but as a text-building device contributing to the cohesion of the text (as may root repetition under similar circumstances). As such, it could be discussed in Chapter 10. However, for ease of exposition we shall deal with it here. Here, for analysis and discussion in class, is an example followed by a draft English TT. This extract consists of one complete paragraph followed by the first few words of a second paragraph. This is significant, because the Arabic paragraph here, like typical English paragraphs, deals with a fairly self-contained sub-topic within the larger text. In this extract the word اتجاه/اتجاهات runs almost like a theme through the Arabic text. Note, as well, other forms of lexical item repetition, involving (إلى) أدى, نمو and ظهور. The text is taken from المهدوي (1986; discussed in Calderbank 1990: 14–15).

وعلى الصعيد الفكري فقد دخلت مصر عام ١٩٢٤ وهي تحمل شبكة جديدة من الاتجاهات الفكرية المتداخلة والمتناقضة فقد أدت الثورة الشيوعية الروسية عام ١٩١٧ إلى نمو الاتجاهات الاشتراكية كما أدت الثورة الوطنية المصرية عام ١٩١٩ إلى نمو الاتجاهات الانعزالية الفرعونية المصرية وأدى قيام كمال أتاتورك بإلغاء الخلافة الاسلامية

www.kaues.org

وتأسيس الدولة العلمانية في تركيا عام ١٩٢٢ إلى نمو الاتجاهات العلمانية يضاف إلى ذلك أن الجامعة المصرية التي تم إنشاؤها عام ١٩٠٩ لتقوم بتعليم «جميع سكان مصر على اختلاف جنسياتهم وأديانهم وأجناسهم» والتي قادت التطور الثقافي والعلمي في البلاد أدت إلى ظهور ونمو الاتجاهات العقلانية على حساب الاتجاهات الغيبية في تحليل مشاكل الحياة والمجتمع ، وعلى النقيض من ذلك فقد أدى استيعاب رأس المال الأجنبي المدعوم بسلطات الاحتلال لبعض الفئات الاجتماعية إلى ظهور اتجاهات فكرية تدعو إلى إلحاق مصر فكرياً بالحضارة الغربية أو الحضارة البحر أوسطية تلك التي كان المواطن العادي لا يرى فيها سوى تحلل القيم والأخلاقيات كما شجع الاحتلال البريطاني لمصر البعثات التبشيرية على اختراق المجتمع المصري ومحاولة تحويل مسلميه إلى المسيحية بالمحبة حيناً وبالتحايل وباستغلال فقر الغالبية العظمى من المصريين أحياناً وقادت هذه البعثات التبشيرية اتجاهاً فكرياً يدعو إلى المسيحية ، ورغم انحصار هذا الاتجاه فإنه شكل بالنسبة للأصوليين المسلمين ناقوساً لخطر شديد.

وبشكل عام فإن هذه الاتجاهات الجديدة [...]

This might be translated into English as follows:

Intellectually, too, Egypt at the start of 1924 was subject to a series of interrelated but opposing currents. The Russian revolution of 1917 had promoted socialist thinking, while the Egyptian revolution of 1919 had encouraged ideas of pharaonic isolationism. Kemal Atatürk's abolition of the Caliphate and establishment of a secular state in Turkey in 1922 had similarly encouraged the growth of secularism. In addition the Egyptian University, which had been founded in 1909 with the purpose of educating 'all the Egyptian people, regardless of nationality, creed or ethnic group', and played a leading role in the cultural and scientific development of the country, led to the appearance and growth of rationalist as opposed to religious interpretations of human and social problems. On the other hand, calls for the incorporation of Egypt into western or Mediterranean culture, which followed the absorption of foreign capital by various social groups (a phenomenon supported by the occupation authorities), were viewed by the average Egyptian as tantamount to the abandonment of all moral values. Similar results ensued from the encouragement given by the occupation authorities to Christian missionary groups in their efforts to break into Egyptian society and to convert Muslim Egyptians to Christianity, whether through sincere concern, or through deception and the exploitation of the poverty of the great majority of the population. These missionaries were at the forefront of a pro-Christian intellectual current; and though they were few in number, in the eyes of fundamentalist Muslims, they constituted a source of untold danger.

In short, these various currents began to [...]

www.kaues.org

Stylistic lexical-item repetition and 'text-building' lexical-item repetition of the types discussed in this section shade into one another. There is, however, also another function of lexical item repetition which is important in both English and Arabic. This is known as rhetorical anaphora. We shall deal with this in Chapter 10.

8.2.4.2 Phrase repetition

The above text illustrates not only repetition of individual lexical items, but also of whole phrases. This can be termed phrase repetition. Thus we find أدت/أدى ... إلى نمو four times (with other intervening elements).

The following text, which is taken from an article in the Egyptian magazine روز اليوسف (no. 3521, 4 December 1995) about political extremism in the Middle East, provides a good example of phrase repetition. In this extract, the phrase وبعد أيام is repeated four times. Just like اتجاه/اتجاهات in the previous text, وبعد أيام can here be regarded as a text-building device which contributes to the overall cohesion of the text. We have placed وبعد أيام in curly brackets in each case to highlight it.

.. في مالطا قُتل فتحي الشقاقي قائد ثاني اكبر حركة اصولية، فلسطينية، معارضة، بعد «حماس» برصاص الموساد .. {وبعد أيام} قتل إسحق رابين رئيس وزراء إسرائيل بثلاث رصاصات اطلقها متطرف يهودي في عمر احفاده هو إيجال عامير .. {وبعد أيام} انفجرت شحنة ناسفة لا تقل عن ١٠٠ كيلوجرام في مقر الحرس السعودي في الرياض، وكان الضحايا امريكيين وهنودا .. {وبعد أيام} اغتيل في جنيف الملحق التجاري المصري في سويسرا .. {وبعد ايام} فجرت منظمة الجهاد مبنى السفارة المصرية في إسلام أباد عاصمة باكستان في عملية انتحارية.

This has been translated (Hetherington 1996: 23) as follows (we have added curly brackets to highlight correspondences between occurrences of وبعد ايام in the ST and its translation equivalents here):

> Fathi al-Shaqaqi, the leader of the second largest Palestinian fundamentalist organization after Hamas, was killed in Malta by Mossad bullets. {A couple of days later} the Israeli Prime Minister Yitzhak Rabin was killed by three bullets fired by Yigal Amir, a Jewish extremist his grandchildren's age. {Mere days after this}, a charge of dynamite of at least 100 kilograms exploded in the Saudi National Guard barracks in Riyadh claiming both American and Indian victims. {Days later} the Egyptian trade attaché to Switzerland was assassinated in Geneva, and {this was followed by} a

www.kaues.org

suicide bomb planted by the Jihad organization in the Egyptian embassy building in the Pakistani capital, Islamabad.

As with lexical item repetition, it will be seen that English tends to go for variation in phrases, while Arabic frequently prefers repetition.

PRACTICAL 8

Practical 8.1 Lexical item repetition and other forms of repetition

Assignment

(i) Paying particular attention to lexical item repetition and other forms of repetition in the ST, discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. The ST is an academic book. The TT is also intended to be published as a book. You should take it that the TT audience will also be people with an academic interest in the subject (and therefore some specialist knowledge).

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Explain the decisions of detail you made in producing your translation.

Contextual information

This extract is taken from the back cover blurb to نحن والآخر by ناصر الدين الأسد (1997). The book deals with relations between the Arab and Islamic worlds, and the West.

ST

حوار الثقافات ، أو حوار الحضارات ، أو حوار الأديان ، أو الحوار الإسلامي المسيحي ، أو حوار الشمال والجنوب ، أو حوار الإسلام والغرب ، أو الحوار العربي الأوربي ، كلها عناوين لموضوع واحد ، أو لموضوعات متقاربة متداخلة ، لا تكاد تتمايز إلا بشيء من التعميم أو التخصيص . وهي موضوعات كثر تناولها في عدد من الكتب والمقالات والمحاضرات والندوات والمؤتمرات . وقد سبق لكاتب هذه الدراسة أن تناولها ، أو تناول جوانب منها ، في مناسبات واجتماعات مختلفة ، وعرض حينئذ جوهر الأفكار الواردة هنا في صور متعددة . ومع ذلك فالموضوع جدير بإعادة القول فيه ، والصبر عليه ، ومداورته ، لتوسيع نطاق المتفهمين له والمقتنعين به من الجانبين ، عسى أن ينتقل الأمر من مرحلة الفهم والاقتناع إلى مرحلة التعاون على العمل المشترك بين جميع المؤمنين بالسلام والعدل واقتلاع بذور الأحقاد بين الشعوب .

www.kaues.org

9

Sentential issues in translation

9.1 THE SENTENTIAL LEVEL

We can use the lines from 'To Autumn' to show how different grammatical arrangements create different assumptions in the listener or reader as regards the communicative purpose of an utterance. Keats's own lines –

> Season of mists and mellow fruitfulness,
> Close bosom-friend of the maturing sun; [...] –

are partly an address to Autumn and partly an exclamation about it: the very structure of the utterance leads the listener/reader to expect an expression of wonderment and enthusiasm (as does the title, of course). A different grammatical arrangement, however, would most likely announce a different communicative purpose. For instance:

> Autumn is a season of mists and mellow fruitfulness.
> It is a close bosom-friend of the maturing sun.

This structure, despite the title, announces a more purely informative text – even though, in the event, phonic and lexical features do give the utterances something more than simply informative value. We can say that, in each version, the grammatical arrangement marks the utterances as having a particular communicative purpose, whatever overtones may turn out to be involved. When, as here, one looks at the *communicative purpose* of a given grammatical arrangement in its own right, one is looking at the utterance on the sentential level. On this level are considered sentences.

We define a sentence as a complete, self-contained and ready-made vehicle for communication: nothing needs to be added before it can be uttered and understood in concrete situations. The starter's one-word command 'Go!' is

www.kaues.org

a sentence. So is 'No way!' as an expression of refusal or disbelief, or 'Good' in response to confirmation that a room has a bath.

We should note here that, although this chapter deals with sentential issues in translation, it is often impossible both in translation and in linguistic analysis to consider one sentence in isolation from other surrounding sentences. Discussion at various points in the chapter will therefore sometimes go beyond the level of the single sentence, with the intention, however, of explicating features at the level of the individual sentence.

9.2 TEXTUAL VARIABLES ON THE SENTENTIAL LEVEL

From the point of view of Arabic/English translation, there are three major non-syntactic features of the sentence, which we shall consider in turn in subsequent sections of this chapter. These are: (i) prosodic features, such as intonation or stress; (ii) theme and rheme; that is, the presentation of information as more or less predictable typically through the choice of a particular sequential order of elements within the sentence; (iii) foregrounding and backgrounding; that is, the presentation of information as more or less important for the overall development of the text.

9.2.1 Prosodic features

In spoken texts, a number of different sentences, marked for different purposes, can be created purely through intonation and stress – even though they comprise the same words, in exactly the same order. Compare the following in English:

The salt.	[with falling intonation: *statement*]
The salt?	[with rising intonation: *question*]
The salt!	[with fall-rise intonation: *demand*]
The salt!	[with high, level intonation: *command*]

The same two words could be spoken in other ways to express encouragement (to pass the salt, etc.), warning (that the salt-pot is about to fall, etc.), and so on.

As these examples suggest, the sentential level of spoken language is extremely rich, with fine shades of intonation distinguishing sentences with subtly different nuances. Stress can similarly be used in English to express different shades of meaning. English is able to stress words fairly freely in speech; e.g. the neutral 'I know that man', vs '*I* know that man', vs 'I *know* that man', vs 'I know *that* man', vs 'I know that *man*'. Although stress is used in Arabic in this way, neither Standard Arabic nor the dialects exhibit the same freedom to shift stress within the sentence as English. To achieve

www.kaues.org

similar effects, two other devices are available. Firstly, Arabic can shift word order fairly freely, e.g. ذلك الرجل أعرف (or, more likely, ذلك الرجل أعرفه). Secondly, it can make use of additional elements. So, 'I know *him*' could be rendered as أعرفه هو with the additional independent pronoun هو at the end of the sentence.

A lot of the features of the spoken sentential level simply disappear in written texts, because the sentential level in written language is relatively impoverished. Written English, of course, has punctuation marks. Most obviously, sentences are marked by a capital letter at the start of the first word, and a full stop, question mark, or exclamation mark at the end of the final word. These latter features identify the sentence in broad terms as a statement, a question or an order, etc. However, they do not allow for finer distinctions within these possibilities. Thus, it is not possible, for example, to distinguish in writing between 'The salt!' as a demand with fall-rise intonation, and 'The salt!' as a command with high, level intonation; nor between large numbers of other similar possibilities which are offered by the spoken language.

Of the remaining punctuation uses in English, some carry specific meaning, and are obligatory where this meaning is intended. There is, for instance, a difference between 'My cousin who lives in Bristol visited us last week', and 'My cousin, who lives in Bristol, visited us last week'. In the first of these sentences, the relative clause 'who lives in Bristol' identifies which out of a number of possible cousins is intended. This is known as a defining (or restrictive) relative clause. In the second sentence, by contrast, the relative clause 'who lives in Bristol' merely provides further information about a cousin who is already assumed to be identified. This is known as a describing (or non-restrictive) relative clause.

Other punctuation uses in English are subject to greater variation, the comma being a case in point. Thus, in some contexts, there will be very little difference in meaning between 'Last week my cousin visited us', and 'Last week, my cousin visited us'. In other contexts, however, the two sentences will not only sound different but have a quite different communicative impact.

Punctuation in Arabic is even less systematic than punctuation in English. Traditionally, Arabic had no punctuation whatsoever; and one still occasionally comes across modern books without punctuation. Conversely, modern editions of Classical Arabic texts, which originally had no punctuation, often have punctuation added. Even where punctuation exists, the conventions for Arabic are far less standardized than those of English. There is obviously no equivalent of Latin-script capital letters in Arabic. Modern Arabic texts do typically make use of full stops. However, the orthographic sentence in Arabic, defined as a stretch of text ending in a full stop (and preceded by another full stop, if the sentence is not text-initial), is frequently much longer than the orthographic sentence in English. In English, the orthographic sentence typically corresponds directly to the spoken sentence. That is to say, if one were to read a written English sentence out loud, one would typically get a complete spoken sentence

www.kaues.org

with a complete intonation pattern. By contrast, in Arabic a single orthographic sentence fairly frequently does not correspond very happily to a single spoken sentence; read out loud, the single orthographic sentence would be likely to be split up into two or even more spoken sentences (i.e. with two or more complete intonation patterns, each of these patterns marking off a separate sentence).

Even where a single orthographic Arabic sentence can reasonably be regarded as corresponding to a single spoken Arabic sentence, Arabic sentences are often much longer than typical English ones, forcing the Arabic>English translator to find appropriate ways of adding additional sentence breaks in the TT. The frequent differences in length between Arabic and English sentences are one reason why discussion in this chapter must sometimes go beyond the level of the individual sentence.

Other punctuation markers in Arabic, such as the comma, are used even less systematically than the full stop. It is also worth noting the acceptability, even in formal Arabic, of multiple question marks or exclamation marks, or even a combination of question mark(s) and exclamation mark(s), where the writer wants to convey strong emphasis. Such usages in English are confined to informal writing.

Apart from the use of punctuation, the only ways of conveying intonation and stress in English writing are through typography. The most popular typographical device is italics, but capitals or bold typeface are also sometimes used. None of these devices is widely used in Arabic, and capitals do not exist. Sometimes, where punctuation and typography cannot give the desired nuance, the writer or translator has to fall back on adding explicit information about how the sentences are spoken, as in 'she exclaimed in surprise', 'she said angrily', and so on.

9.2.2 Theme and rheme

The following is a brief account of the notions of theme and rheme with respect to English and Arabic, and is based on the ideas of a number of different authors and approaches. For a fuller description of the major approaches to this topic, see Baker (1992: 119–79). In relation to Arabic, cf. also Dickins and Watson (1999: 337–51, 377–87).

The basic idea behind theme and rheme is that sentences can be divided up into some elements which provide at least relatively predictable information and others which provide at least relatively unpredictable information. The elements which provide at least relatively predictable information are known as the theme, while those elements which provide at least relatively unpredictable information are known as the rheme. Consider the following from a text on Ayatollah Khomeini (from Dickins and Watson 1999: 461):

www.kaues.org

> Ayatollah Khomeini was the son of a cleric. He was born in 1903 in the small town of Khomein in Isfahan province.

In the second sentence here the information given by 'He' is highly predictable, because 'Ayatollah Khomeini' (to whom 'He' also refers) has been mentioned in the previous sentence. 'He' accordingly identifies someone already known about in the text, and is the theme of this sentence. 'Was born in the small town of Khomein in Isfahan province', by contrast, is unpredictable; the information here is all new, and this element is accordingly the rheme.

The first sentence in this extract is somewhat more interesting. Let us imagine the situation in which 'Ayatollah Khomeini was the son of a cleric' was the first sentence of this text. In this case, we can see that neither the element 'Ayatollah Khomeini' nor the element 'was the son of a cleric' is known before the sentence, and therefore neither is absolutely predictable. In this case, however, we may say that the author chooses to treat 'Ayatollah Khomeini' as relatively predictable and therefore thematizes it (i.e. makes it theme). There are two reasons for doing this. Firstly, it is fairly likely through their previous knowledge of the world that the readers of this text will know the name Ayatollah Khomeini but not know that he was the son of a cleric. Secondly, since the whole text is about Ayatollah Khomeini, we may say that the choice of 'Ayatollah Khomeini' as theme is justified by the subsequent development of the text; i.e. looked at globally 'Ayatollah Khomeini' or words such as 'He', when they refer to Ayatollah Khomeini, are going to be predictable elements throughout.

Both the sentences 'Ayatollah Khomeini was the son of a cleric' and 'He was born in 1903 in the small town of Khomein in Isfahan province' illustrate a general tendency, which is true of Arabic as well as English, for theme to precede rheme. This can be regarded as a 'natural' order in that it mirrors the order of things in the real world; when we are trying to work out something new, we start with what is known and proceed from there to what is not known.

9.2.2.1 Sentence stress

In spoken English and Arabic, theme and rheme can be related to notions of stress. If you read the sentence 'Ayatollah Khomeini was the son of a cleric' out loud, you will hear that the sentence-stress falls on 'cleric'. The general tendency in both Arabic and English is for stress to fall on a word in the rheme.

This correlation between rheme and sentence stress can also be seen on the relatively rare occasions in English where rheme comes first in the sentence. Consider the following:

www.kaues.org

> What happened to you?
> (a) I got stung by a bee.
> (b) A bee stung me.

Response (a) follows the standard theme-first theme-rheme order, and the sentence-stress falls on 'bee'. Response (b), however, has the reverse 'rheme-theme' order; here again, however, sentence-stress falls on 'bee'.

Where rheme precedes theme in English, as in 'A bee stung me', the sentence tends to carry a certain emotional charge. It would be perfectly possible – in fact probably normal – to utter the sentence 'I got stung by a bee' in a matter-of-fact way. An utterance along the lines 'A bee stung me', however, is much more associated with annoyance, or some other strong emotion.

9.2.2.2 Emphatic preposing

It is important to distinguish between initial rhemes, which involve sentence-stress, and preposed emphatic elements. Consider the following sentence:

> In the early sixties Ayatollah Khomeini led the movement against the Shah of Iran's 'White Revolution'.

This sentence is in fact the start of the next paragraph of the Ayatollah Khomeini text which we quoted from earlier. Here the main sentence-stress falls on 'Revolution', i.e. the end of the rheme. There is, however, a secondary stress (signalled by a rising pitch) which falls on 'sixties'; such secondary stress can be termed phrasal stress (or clausal stress in the case of a clause).

In this sentence, 'In the early sixties' is clearly not the main theme. It can be termed a preposed emphatic theme. 'Preposed' with respect to English means 'placed before the subject'; in English any element which is placed before the subject in a declarative sentence can be described as preposed. 'Emphatic' means that there is some sense of 'picking out' the element for a special purpose; here the purpose is for linkage and contrast with a number of similarly preposed time-phrases in subsequent sentences. Later sentences in the same paragraph, for example, begin 'Following an agreement between Iran and Iraq' and 'On 2 February 1979'.

Arabic, like English, makes use of preposed emphatic themes. In Arabic, however, anything which comes before the verb in a sentence which contains a verb may be a preposed emphatic theme. Thus in sentences which have the word order *Subject-Verb-(etc.)*, the subject may be emphatic (cf. Dickins and Watson 1999: 337–51). It would also appear that in sentences which do not contain a main verb, the subject is optionally emphatic. We shall consider further issues relating to sentences having the word order *Subject-Verb-(etc.)* in the following section.

www.kaues.org

9.2.2.3 Basic theme-rheme translation issues

In terms of Arabic>English translation the distinction between thematic and rhematic information is most problematic where it proves difficult or impossible to reproduce roughly the same word order in English as in the original Arabic. If the word order of the original Arabic can be roughly maintained in the English, this will often reproduce the original theme-rheme structure, because English and Arabic both have a tendency to start with the most thematic element and end with the most rhematic element. This general principle is illustrated by the following:

وبنى هذا الجسر مهندسون مصريون
This bridge was built by Egyptian engineers

Here, the Arabic and English structures seem rather different; the Arabic is active and the English passive. However, the same basic order of ideas is maintained in both – ‘bridge’ first and ‘engineers’ next. The only difference here is that Arabic has the verb بنى right at the beginning, whereas English ‘was built’ comes after the subject. In the case of English, however, it is in virtually all cases obligatory to have the verb after the subject in declarative sentences (in Arabic the verb may come first, or the subject). Word order in this respect is not therefore alterable for theme-rheme considerations.

9.2.3 Foregrounding and backgrounding

The term ‘subordinate’ in ‘subordinate clause’ or ‘subordinate element’ may be said to indicate a number of things. From a grammatical point of view a subordinate clause is subordinate in that it falls outside the main part of the sentence, and can only occur together with this main part. From an informational point of view, a subordinate clause may be said to be informationally subordinate. This can be shown from the passage about Ayatollah Khomeini, which we briefly discussed in § 9.2.2.2 (cf. Dickins and Watson 1999: 462).

> In the early sixties Ayatollah Khomeini led the movement against the Shah of Iran’s ‘White Revolution’. As a result, he was exiled in 1963, first to Turkey and then to the Islamic holy city of Najaf in Iraq. Following an agreement between Iraq and Iran he was expelled from Najaf and was forced to take up residence near Paris in the late seventies. On 2 February 1979, after a short stay in France, he returned to Tehran until after the Islamic revolution on 11 February 1979.

Notice how all the time phrases are subordinate, while the material carrying the main line of the story is in the main clauses. This is typical in English. Now compare the text with this alternative version, in which the time phrases

www.kaues.org

are made into the subject of the main clause:

> The early sixties was a period of leadership for Ayatollah Khomeini against the Shah of Iran's 'White Revolution'. As a result, 1963 saw him exiled first to Turkey and then to the Islamic holy city of Najaf in Iraq. The period following an agreement between Iraq and Iran involved his expulsion from Najaf, and the late seventies forced him to take up residence near Paris. The 2nd of February 1979, which was preceded by a short stay in France, witnessed Khomeini's return to Tehran; 11 February 1979, the date of the Islamic revolution, marked the end of this period.

This version of the text is distinctly odd. One reason for this is that it consistently upgrades the time element from the subordinate, ancillary status which it had in the actual text, to a main status discoursally. While the ideas in the text tell us that it must be about Ayatollah Khomeini's life, the organization of these ideas suggests that the listed dates ought to be the topic of the text.

Subordinate elements are sometimes said to convey background information, i.e. the kind of information which is not central to the overall topic of the text or section of text in question. Main clauses, by contrast, are said to convey **foreground information**, i.e. information which is central to the overall topic. This situation is well illustrated by the Khomeini text.

The foregrounding-backgrounding distinction which is characteristic of subordination can be contrasted with the situation which obtains in cases of clausal coordination. Consider the following:

1. Disputes break out and people tend to blame one another.
2. When disputes break out, people tend to blame one another.

Without any context, example 1 seems odd because the information that 'disputes break out' is trivial. It is then coupled by the use of 'and' with the much more significant (i.e. worthy of foregrounding) information that people tend to blame one another. The implication of using 'and' to link these two pieces of information, however, is that they are of roughly equal significance to the overall topic of the text. There is a contradiction – or at least a tension – between the difference in the significance of the two pieces of information conveyed by the two clauses, and the implication in the use of 'and' that these two pieces of information are of at least roughly equal significance.

This tension is resolved in example 2. 'When disputes break out' is here presented as relatively insignificant subordinate information, which simply provides background to the main point being made.

In saying that the two clauses connected by a coordinating conjunction such as 'and' are of roughly equal significance to the overall topic of the text or text-section, we are not suggesting that one could reverse the order of the two clauses and retain the same meaning. Thus, there is a clear difference in

www.kaues.org

meaning between 'Disputes break out and people tend to blame one other', and 'People tend to blame one other and disputes break out'. In the first case, the obvious interpretation of the sentence is that the disputes come first and lead to the blaming; in the second the blaming comes first and leads to disputes.

Note also that 'Disputes break out and people tend to blame one another' is not *intrinsically* odd in English. All that is required to render it a perfectly reasonable utterance is a context in which 'Disputes break out' is made non-trivial by being linked to a specific time or place, as for example in: 'If the weather's bad or the order-book's not full, disputes break out and people tend to blame each other'.

9.2.4 Interaction of theme-rheme and main-subordinate elements

In the previous sections we have looked independently at theme and rheme elements, and main and subordinate elements. Elements from these two pairs can come together in four possible ways:

Main-theme	i.e. a theme which is a main clause, or part of a main clause
Subordinate-theme	i.e. a theme which is a subordinate element, or part of a subordinate element
Main-rheme	i.e. a rheme which is a main clause, or part of a main clause
Subordinate-rheme	i.e. a rheme which is a subordinate element or part of a subordinate element

We would expect these elements to express the following kinds of information:

Main-theme	predictable, foreground information
Subordinate-theme	predictable, background information
Main-rheme	unpredictable, foreground information
Subordinate-rheme	unpredictable, background information

We have already looked at some examples of main-theme and subordinate-theme in the text on Ayatollah Khomeini. In this text, the element which is most clearly both main and theme and hence predictable and foregrounded is 'Ayatollah Khomeini' in the first sentence, and 'he' in every other sentence.

In the same text, the subordinate-themes are typically initial temporal phrases: thus 'In the early sixties', 'Following an agreement', 'On 2 February 1979, after a short stay in France'. As noted (§ 9.2.2.2), such initial non-subject themes are also emphatic.

Main-rhemes in both English and Arabic seem to fulfil the expectation that they express information which is both unpredictable and significant to

www.kaues.org

the overall topic of the text or section of text.

The most interesting category in both English and Arabic is subordinate-rhemes. The expectation is that these should convey information which is both backgrounded and relatively unpredictable. In many cases, this expectation is fulfilled in both English and Arabic. A good example from English is the following (Leith 1983: 13; cited in Sekine 1996: 78):

> In short, the Roman empire witnessed a process known to sociolinguistics as *language shift*. The evidence for this is that Latin formed the base of French, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, and Romanian {as they are spoken today}.

Here, 'as they are spoken today' is relatively unpredictable; or at least what predictability it has is entirely dependent on the previous mention of the languages concerned. At the same time, it is also background information; it is included only to make plain that what are being referred to are the contemporary versions of French, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese and Romanian, not earlier versions of the same languages. However, this would probably be the interpretation reached by the reader even without the inclusion of 'as they are spoken today'. This phrase, therefore, is of little importance informationally, and it is noteworthy that the text in fact goes on subsequently to talk further about Latin, rather than pursuing issues related to the modern Romance languages.

Sometimes, however, subordinate clauses in rheme position (i.e. towards the end of the phrase or sentence) convey foreground rather than background information. This tendency seems more pronounced in Arabic than in English. Consider the following from النار والماء by زكريا تامر:

> فتعالت ضحكات البنات {بينما انفجر غضب فواز}، فكف عن السير واستدار ووقف منفرج القدمين وواجه الفتيات الأربع بعينين حانقتين متحديتين.

A fairly literal translation of this would be:

> The girls' laughter rose, {while Fawaz's rage exploded}. He stopped walking, turned around, stood feet apart, and stared at the four girls in anger and challenge.

This translation seems slightly odd for a number of reasons. The aspect of this oddity which concerns us here, however, is the phrase 'while Fawaz's anger exploded'. The fact that this is a subordinate clause coming after 'The girls' laughter rose', suggests that it should convey unpredictable but background information – and this is indeed what it does seem to convey. In the context, however, it would make better sense if the information conveyed

www.kaues.org

were not only unpredictable, but also foregrounded. The reason for this is that Fawaz's explosion is an important feature of the text's development; as we can see from the following quoted lines, the text goes on immediately to describe Fawaz's behaviour as a result of his explosion of anger.

An actual translation of this section (St John 1999: 32) reads:

> When he heard the girls' laughter, {Fawaz exploded with rage}. He stopped, spun round, and stood, glaring furiously at the four young women.

Ignoring other differences between this TT and the more literal TT proposed earlier (since these are not relevant to the current discussion), we can see that the translator has reversed the subordination structure of the phrase فتعالت ضحكات البنات بينما انفجر غضب فواز. The main Arabic clause فتعالت ضحكات البنات has been converted into an English subordinate clause (with some other changes) 'When he heard the girls' laughter', while the subordinate clause انفجر غضب فواز has been converted into an English main clause (also with some other changes) 'Fawaz exploded with rage'. One effect of this is to foreground the information conveyed by 'Fawaz exploded with rage', and thus produce a more natural-sounding rendering than that of the more literal translation.

Reversal of the subordination structure is a fairly common strategy for dealing with cases in which rhematic subordinate clauses in Arabic convey foreground information. A second regular strategy is to translate the Arabic rhematic subordinate clause as a separate sentence in English. This strategy is illustrated by the following from Calderbank (1990: 23):

> ولما كان الاقوياء بطبيعتهم لا يقبلون الطاعة العمياء للمرشد العام الإمام الشيخ حسن البنا بل ويقومون بمراجعته فيما يراه من أمور فإنه قد ألصق بهم صفة الخبث بل وعمد إلى إقصائهم عن الجماعة {بحيث} لم يبق حوله سوى الإخوان الذين من فرط ضعفهم لا يقدرون على الاختلاف مع الإمام {الأمر الذي} جعله يصفهم بالامانه!!

This could be translated as follows:

> Since the strong by their very nature did not accept blind obedience to the Supreme Guide the venerable Hasan El Banna, and indeed, actively attempted to question some of his judgements, he termed them 'malicious', and went so far as to expel them from the Brotherhood. {As a result} the only remaining members of El Banna's inner circle were those whose extreme weakness meant that they were unable to oppose him. {These people} he called 'the trustworthy'.

Here the two subordinate clauses introduced by بحيث and الأمر الذي in Arabic are relayed by separate sentences in English.

www.kaues.org

9.2.5 Translation of Arabic coordinated clauses

Often the translation into English of Arabic sentences involving the coordinating conjunctions و and ف – and less commonly ثم – present no problem; و, for example, is sometimes translatable as 'and'. Where it begins a sentence in Arabic, it will typically have no correspondent in English; and where و occurs as a coordinating conjunction in a long Arabic sentence, it may be appropriate in English to make two sentences, otherwise omitting any equivalent of و.

Sometimes, however, Arabic coordinating conjunctions present more of a translation problem. Consider the following, which is taken from the start of the novel عرس الزين by the Sudanese writer الطيب صالح (صالح n.d.: 11):

> يولد الأطفال فيستقبلون الحياة بالصريخ، هذا هو المعروف ولكن يروى ان الزين، والعهدة على امه والنساء اللائي حضرن ولادتها، اول ما مس الارض ، انفجر ضاحكاً.

This might be translated as:

> When children are born, they greet life with a scream; this is well known. However, according to his mother and the women who attended his birth, as soon as Zein came into the world he burst out laughing.

Here, Arabic uses the coordinating conjunction ف to link the two phrases يولد الأطفال and يستقبلون الحياة بالصريخ. Given that coordinating conjunctions typically present the information given by the relevant clauses as equally foregrounded, one might have expected the translation to read something like: 'Children are born, and they greet life with a scream'. This, however, sounds somewhat odd in English, just as a sentence 'Disputes break out, and people tend to blame one another' can sound odd. The reason in both cases is that the structure accords too major a status to the information given in the first clause, i.e. it makes the first clause too foregrounded. Thus, in the case of this example, the notion that children are born is obvious. (Indeed, one would probably only want to use this formulation in the TT if the author were deliberately inviting the reader to re-examine the notion that children are born, and accord to it fresh significance. This is not the case here.) A more natural effect is achieved in the English by subordinating the phrase 'children are born', by introducing it with the subordinating conjunction 'When'.

www.kaues.org

PRACTICAL 9

Practical 9.1 Theme and rheme, and mainness and subordination

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate the text as part of an 'From the Arab Press' section of the English version of the Egyptian daily newspaper الأهرام. The intended readership is mainly expatriate English-speakers in Egypt, plus some other readers worldwide who are likely to have quite a good knowledge of Middle Eastern culture and affairs.

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Explain the decisions of detail you made in producing your translation which are of relevance to theme-rheme issues and mainness-subordination issues.

(iv) Explain other decisions of detail which you made in producing your translation.

Contextual information

This passage is taken from an article in the weekly Egyptian news magazine روز اليوسف (no. 3521, 4 December 1995). The article by عادل حمودة is entitled لعبة الضفادع والعقارب في عواصم الشرق الاوسط. The general theme of the article is the negative political effects of religious fundamentalism in the Middle East (text taken from Hetherington 1996: 34–5).

ST

لقد دفعت السعودية في حرب الخليج ٥٥ مليارا من الدولارات، وبدلا من أنها كانت تسهر الليالي لمعرفة كيف تستثمر ١٨٠ مليار دولار – ودائعها في الغرب – اصبح سهر الليالي من أجل تسديد الديون المتراكمة وفوائدها التي وصلت الى ٧٠ مليار دولار.

وفي السعودية والخليج يقول الناس: قبل حرب الخليج كنا نحلم بزوجة يابانية ومرتب أمريكي، ومنزل ريفي انجليزي، وطباخ صيني .. ولكن بعد هذه الحرب لم يعد امامنا سوى زوجة امريكية ومرتب صيني، ومنزل ياباني وطباخ انجليزي!

وعلى المستوى السياسي، نجحت المعارضة السعودية في استمالة بعض القيادات الدينية إلى جانبهم وضغطوا على الاسرة الحاكمة، وقدموا في يوليو ١٩٩٢ ما عرف بمذكرة «النصيحة» التي وقعها أكثر من ١٠٠ شخصية دينية، طالبوا الملك فهد فيها بإصلاحات «عميقة في النظام السياسي» .. وبمزيد من أسلمة مرافق الدولة ومؤسساتها (!!) وبالتخلص من التبعية السياسية للأمريكان، خصوم الله (!!) وبطرد

www.kaues.org

قواتهم من البلاد .. وهي القوات التي رحلت عن أوروبا - بعد سقوط الاتحاد السوفيتي - وجاءت الى الخليج، ربما لتبقى نفس المدة التي بقيت فيها في أوروبا .. حوالى ٤٠ سنة.

Practical 9.2 Theme and rheme, mainness and subordination, coordination

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt.

(ii) Translate the text into English, paying particular attention to theme and rheme, mainness and subordination, and coordination in the ST. The translation of this TT is to form part of a translation of a number of short stories by الطيب صالح which you are doing for publication in a specialist 'African writers' series.

(iii) Explain the decisions of detail you made in producing your translation.

Contextual information

This extract is taken a short story by the Sudanese writer الطيب صالح entitled نخلة على الجدول (Montgomery 1994: 12–13/68–9). This section concerns a farmer, Sheikh Mahjoub, and his family. Sheikh Mahjoub is going through difficult times. His son Hassan left for Egypt from Sudan five years before this scene and has not been heard of since, and now Sheikh Mahjoub's farm seems to be failing. The word أبرَق (f. بَرْقاء) means 'piebald'. This is the form used in Sudanese Arabic; the more normal Standard Arabic form is أبْلَق. Note that the reader is already aware at this stage that Sheikh Mahjoub's entire flock has died. This text, however, involves the first mention of the death of the piebald ewe.

ST

وكأن القدر أراد أن ينسيهم كل شيء يربطهم بحسن، فرمى آخر ما في جعبته من سهام قاسية مسمومة ظل يسددها منذ عامين، تباعاً وبدون توقف. وأصاب السهم الأخير النعجة «البرقاء» التي رباها حسن، وجمع لها الحشيش وأشركها طعامه وأنامها في فراشه. ماتت وما عادت تثغو في بكرة الصباح حين كان حسن يقفز نشيطاً خفيفاً من فراشه فيطعمها ويسقيها ويأخذها معه الى الساقية، ترعى وتمرح وتتلف الزرع ريثما يفرغ هو من عمله. ماتت، وكذلك اجتاح المحل والقحط كل القطيع الذي رباه شيخ محجوب.

www.kaues.org

10

Discourse and intertextual issues in translation

10.1 INTRODUCTION

In the last chapter, we briefly discussed a grammatical rearrangement of the two lines from 'To Autumn':

> Autumn is a season of mists and mellow fruitfulness.
> It is a close bosom-friend of the maturing sun.

We saw that, on the sentential level, this arrangement marks the text as informative, rather than an expression of excitement. Now, part of this sentential effect derives from the pronoun 'It', which explicitly links the second sentence to the first as conveying additional information about Autumn. Such linking of one sentence to another is the most significant feature found on the discourse level.

10.2 THE DISCOURSE LEVEL

The textual variables considered on the discourse level are those that distinguish a cohesive and coherent textual flow from a random sequence of unrelated utterances. Strictly speaking, this level is concerned with intersentential relations (relations between sentences) and with relations between larger units, such as paragraphs, stanzas, chapters, and so on. For our purposes, however, it is sometimes useful also to consider relations between *parts of* sentences on the discourse level (and particularly clauses), as if the parts were sentences in their own right. This is particularly important with respect to Arabic; as we have already seen (Ch. 9.2.1), Arabic sentences are often extremely long, and the lack of consistent punctuation in much modern Arabic

www.kaues.org

writing (as well as its total lack in classical writing) also often make it impossible to determine unambiguously where one sentence ends in Arabic and another begins. (For a very useful discussion of these and other issues relating to cohesion and translation, *see* Baker 1992: 180–260.)

We shall consider some examples involving relations between parts of sentences rather than whole sentences below. However, our main focus will be on intersentential issues, because these are what most clearly illustrate translation issues on the discourse level.

There is necessarily some overlap between the subject matter of Chapter 9 and the subject matter of this chapter. In practical terms, this does not matter. The crucial issue from the point of view of translation analysis is not that one assigns a particular feature to one of the two levels, but rather that the overall theoretical framework allows for the feature in question to be dealt with somewhere.

10.2.1 Cohesion and coherence

It is useful to distinguish between two aspects of discourse: cohesion and coherence. Following Halliday and Hasan (1976), we define cohesion as the transparent linking of sentences (and larger sections of text) by explicit discourse connectives like 'then', 'so', 'however', and so on. These act as signposts pointing out the thread of discourse running through the text. Additionally, features such as root repetition and lexical item repetition may have a cohesive function (as discussed in Ch. 8.2.3.2, 8.2.4.1), as may theme-rheme elements and main-subordinate elements (Chapter 9).

Coherence is a more difficult matter than cohesion, because, by definition, it is not explicitly marked in a text: it is a tacit, but discernible, thematic or emotional development running through the text. Consequently, all cohesive texts are coherent, but not all coherent texts are cohesive. We can illustrate the difference with a simple example.

> I was getting hungry. I went downstairs. I knew the kitchen was on the ground floor. I was pretty sure the kitchen must be on the ground floor. I didn't expect to find the kitchen so easily. I made myself a sandwich.

> I was getting hungry. *So* I went downstairs. *Well* ... I knew the kitchen was on the ground floor. *I mean*, I was pretty sure *it* must be *there*. *Still*, I didn't expect to find *it* so easily. *Anyway*, I made myself a sandwich.

The first text is devoid of intersentential connectives. It is, however, coherent, thanks to the underlying chronological narrative structure. In the second text, a train of thought is restored by inserting connectives (printed in italics). These act as cohesion markers, setting up a transparent intersentential structure. Some of the cohesion markers link the sentences by explaining or commenting

www.kaues.org

on the speaker's actions: 'So', 'I mean', 'Still', 'Anyway'. Others are instances of **grammatical anaphora** – that is, the replacement of previously used words and phrases by expressions referring back to them; here, the anaphoric elements are 'it' (replacing 'the kitchen') and 'there' (replacing 'on the ground floor').

As this example suggests, the sentential and discourse levels are by definition closely related. Many of the intersentential connectives also function on the sentential level; rather like sentence tags, they give each utterance a particular tone and tell the listener how to take it – 'So', 'Well', 'I mean', 'Still', 'Anyway'. Compare, for example, the two versions of the second sentence: 'I went downstairs' vs 'So I went downstairs'. These will almost certainly be spoken differently, because on the sentential level they have different functions: the first announces a new fact out of the blue, while in the second, 'So' marks the sentence as expressing a response to a situation. 'So' therefore has both a sentential and an intersentential function here.

Furthermore, many connectives can be used to join short sentences together to make longer ones. Conjunctions such as 'so', 'and' or 'but' are simple examples. This is another way in which intersentential and sentential functions are often close in practice, even though they are distinguishable in analysis. For instance, 'I was getting hungry, so I went downstairs' will probably have a different communicative impact from 'I was getting hungry. So I went downstairs'.

Similarly, rhetorical anaphora – that is, the repetition of a word or words in successive or closely associated clauses or phrases for a rhetorical purpose – can have a discourse function even where it occurs within a single sentence. In the case of English, such lexical repetition normally has a rhetorical purpose. However, as we saw in Chapter 8, repetition of words, phrases and even roots in Arabic may have two other functions: (i) it may allow the writer to talk about closely related ideas, serving in this case much the same purpose as lexical variation does in English; (ii) it may serve a cohesive 'text-building' function, in much the same way as connectives do. However, just like English, Arabic also uses lexical repetition for rhetorical purposes, the most obvious such purpose being to achieve a sense of emotional force.

Just as repetition is denser in Arabic than in English in non-rhetorical contexts, so we should expect it also to be denser in contexts where it is used for purposes of rhetorical anaphora. In this light, consider the following from a speech by جمال عبد الناصر entitled كفاحنا للقومية العربية (Dickson 1999: 10–11).

إن القومية العربية ليست جمال عبد الناصر، وليست شكري القوتلي .. وليست زعيما من الزعماء، ولكنها أقوى من هذا كله، إنها أنتم أيها الشعب العربي .. أنتم أيها الإخوة .. أنتم أفراد لم التق بكم قبل اليوم لكني أرى في كل عين من عيونكم .. أرى القومية العربية تنطلق وأرى

www.kaues.org

الإيمان بالقومية العربية عميقاً، أرى هذا وأرى ان كل فرد منكم يؤمن بكل هذا إيمانا عميقا ..

In the following analysis of this text we have placed items involving lexical repetition in curly brackets with superscript numbers to identify the different elements and their different occasions of use. (Thus $^{1.}$ refers to إنّ; $^{1.1}$ means that this is the first occurrence of إنّ in this text, $^{1.2}$ means that this is the second occurrence of إنّ in the text.)

> {إن$^{1.1}$}{القومية$^{2.1}$} {العربية$^{3.1}$} {ليست$^{4.1}$} جمال عبد الناصر، و{ليست$^{4.2}$} شكري القوتلي .. و{ليست$^{4.3}$} {زعيما$^{5.1}$} من {الزعماء$^{5.2}$}، ولكنها أقوى من هذا {كله$^{6.1}$}، {إنها$^{1.2}$} انتم {ايها$^{7.1}$} الشعب {العربي$^{3.2}$} .. انتم{ايها$^{7.2}$} الاخوة .. انتم {أفراد$^{8.1}$} لم التق بكم قبل اليوم ولكني {أرى$^{9.1}$} في {كل$^{6.2}$} {عين$^{10.1}$} من {عيونكم$^{10.2}$} .. {أرى$^{9.2}$} {القومية$^{2.2}$} {العربية$^{3.3}$} تنطلق و{أرى$^{9.3}$} {الإيمان$^{11.1}$} بـ{ـالقومية$^{2.3}$} {العربية$^{3.4}$} {عميقا$^{12.1}$}، {أرى$^{9.4}$} هذا و{أرى$^{9.5}$} ان {كل$^{6.3}$} {فرد$^{8.2}$} منكم يؤمن بـ{كل$^{6.4}$} هذا {ايمانا$^{11.2}$} {عميقاً$^{12.2}$} ..

The following is an attempt at an idiomatic translation:

> Arab nationalism is not Gamal Abd al-Nasser, it is not Shukri al-Quwatli, it is not any particular leader. It is stronger than all of this. It is you my friends, the Arab people. Before today, I had not even met you. However, in all your eyes I see the spirit of nationalism rising up, I see a deep belief in it. I see this; I see that every one of you is profoundly convinced.

The patterns of lexical item repetition in the Arabic ST and English TT compare as follows:

ST	*TT*
1. إنّ: 2 occurrences	no correspondence: 0 occurrences
2. قومية: 3 occurrences	‘nationalism’: 2 occurrences
3. عربي: 4 occurrences	‘Arab’: 2 occurrences
4. ليست: 3 occurrences	‘is not’: 3 occurrences
5. زعيم/زعماء: 2 occurrences	[‘leader’: 1 occurrence]
6. كل: 4 occurrences	‘all’: 2 occurrences
	[cf. also TT: ‘every one’: 1 occurrence]
7. أيها: 2 occurrences	no correspondence: 0 occurrences
8. فرد/أفراد: 2 occurrences	no correspondence: 0 occurrences
	[But cf. TT: ‘every one’]
9. أرى: 5 occurrences	‘see’: 4 occurrences

www.kaues.org

10. عين/عيون: 2 occurrences	['eyes': 1 occurrence]
11. إيمان: 2 occurrences	['belief': 1 occurrence; cf. root repetition with يؤمن] ['convinced': 1 occurrence]
12. عميق: 2 occurrences	['deep': 1 occurrence; 'profoundly': 1 occurrence]

The above table shows there to be 33 instances of lexical repetition in the ST, and 13 in the TT. In the table, we have included the English TT phrase 'is not' as a lexical item, since it corresponds to the Arabic lexical item ليست. It is worth spending time in class comparing repetition of two other sorts of features: phrase repetition and repetition of pronouns/possessive adjectives.

While lexical repetition is the most commonly used form of rhetorical anaphora in Arabic, as in the above text, it is also possible to find root repetition used for rhetorical purposes. An example is the following, attributed to ابن خلدون, who is sometimes regarded as the founder of sociology:

المغلوب مولع بالإقتداء بالغالب

This has been translated (Stabler 1999: 17) as:

the vanquished are always obsessed with imitating the vanquisher

Here the translation reproduces something of the repetition of the ST, with its use of 'vanquished' and 'vanquisher'. This use of root repetition for rhetorical purposes is similar to rhetorical anaphora involving lexical items. It relies on the fact that not only is the root repeated, but the lexical items involved (in this case مغلوب and غالب) have closely related meanings (here they are antonyms).

Another area in which Arabic and English differ is in their use of discourse connectives. In many genres at least, Arabic sentences are typically longer than English sentences, and sentences and clauses in Arabic are typically connected either by one of the three basic connectives و, ف, and ثم, or by the use of one of the simple secondary connectives such as حيث, إذ, etc.

Particularly in Classical Arabic, و and ف are extremely common, as illustrated by the following extract from the المقدمة by ابن خلدون (example adapted from Holes 1995: 220).

{و}السبب في ذلك أنه قد عُرِف {و}ثبت أن الواحد من البشر غير مستقل بتحصيل حاجاته في معاشه، {و}أنهم متعاونون جميعا في عمرانهم على ذلك، {و}الحاجة التي تحصل بتعاون طائفة منهم تشتد

www.kaues.org

ضرورة الأكثر من عددهم أضعافا، {فـ}ـالقوت من الحنطة مثلا لا يستقل الواحد بتحصيل حصته منه، {و}اذا انتدب لتحصيله الستة أو العشرة من حداد ونجار للآلات وقائم على البقر وإثارة الارض وحصاد السنبل وسائر مؤن الفلح، {و}توزعوا على تلك الاعمال أو اجتمعوا {و}حصل بعملهم ذلك مقدار من القوت، {فـ}ـإنه حينئذ قوت لاضعافهم مرات، {فـ}ـلاعمال بعد الاجتماع زائدة على حاجات العاملين وضروراتهم.

A published English translation of this by Franz Rosenthal (Ibn Khaldûn [1958] 1967: Vol. II, 271–2) reads as follows; we have placed relevant English connectives in curly brackets together with their ST equivalents:

> {Øو} The reason for this is that, as is well known {andو} well established, the individual human being cannot by himself obtain all the necessities of life. {Øو} All human beings must co-operate to that end in their civilization. {Butو} what is obtained through the co-operation of a group of human beings satisfies the need of a number many times greater (than themselves). {For instance فـ}, no one, by himself, can obtain the share of the wheat he needs for food. {But و} when six or ten persons, including a smith and a carpenter to make the tools, and others who are in charge of the oxen, the plowing of the soil, the harvesting of the ripe grain, and all the other agricultural activities, {Øو} undertake to obtain their food {and} work toward that purpose either separately or collectively {and و} thus obtain through their labour a certain amount of food, {Ø فـ} (that amount) will be food for a number of people many times their own. {Ø فـ}The combined labour produces more than the needs and necessities of the workers.

Here the ST makes use of connective و seven times, and connective فـ three times. The English omits any connective five times (omission being marked by Ø in the TT); these omissions correspond three times to ST و and twice to ST فـ. و is translated twice by 'and', and twice by 'but'. فـ is translated once by 'For example'.

A striking feature of this passage is the concessive use of و, which is translated twice by 'but' in the published English translation. Even in modern Arabic و, fairly frequently, and فـ, rather less often, are best translated by a concessive. The following are two examples, with the relevant connectives placed in curly brackets in the Arabic original and English translation:

وفي نهاية الحوار غادرها {و}ظل يلوح اليها الى ان غاب عن المنطقة.

This has been translated (Brown 1996: 55) as:

> After he had finished he left her, {although} he kept on waving until the grave was out of sight.

www.kaues.org

A second example is:

كان من المفترض أن تحدث الولادة في الربيع، {فـ}حدثت في الصيف ..

This might be translated (cf. Rolph 1995: 12) as:

> The birth was supposed to take place in the spring, {but} it took place in the summer.

In some types of modern Arabic writing, the system of connectives is rather different from the Classical Arabic norm. Consider the following, from a modern Arabic text on housing economics (from Holes 1995: 221). We have placed connectives in curly brackets:

{وعلاوة على ذلك فإن} صعوبات التخزين للمواد البنائية المصنعة تعتبر من الخصائص التي تنفرد فيها عن غيرها من المفردات الصناعية الأخرى. {ونظرا لـ}ما تتميز به منتجات هذه المواد من كبر الحجم {فإن} تكاليف التخزين لا بد من أن تكون باهظة، {كما أن} المستودعات سوف تضيق ذرعا بها {على الرغم من} توفر المساحات الواسعة لها. {وبناءً عليه فإن} السياسات الانتاجية السليمة هي التي تقوم بتصريف المنتجات أولاً باول {لكي} تتجنب مشاكل تجميد رؤوس الأموال المستثمرة فيها، {وأن} تغاير من سياساتها وفقاً للإنتاج الطلبي الذي تتم معرفته مسبقاً.

This might be translated as follows; we have placed the English connectives in curly brackets together with their ST equivalents:

> {In addition وعلاوة على ذلك فإن}, the storing of ready-made building materials presents unique difficulties as compared with other manufactured units. {In view of ونظرا لـ} the large amounts of space taken up, {Ø فإن} storage costs are huge, {and كما أن} warehouses cannot cope, {despite على الرغم من} their relatively large size. {Accordingly وبناءً عليه فإن}, production policies need to be based on the selling of products as soon they are produced {in order to لكي} avoid the problem of tying up invested capital, {and وأن} to allow for production policy to be changed according to assessments of future consumer demand.

This text is typical of academic-oriented empirical writing in modern Arabic. The connectives used in modern Arabic academic-oriented writing are much more similar to those used in modern English argumentative writing than are the connectives used in comparable Classical Arabic writing. However,

www.kaues.org

there are types of writing in modern Arabic in which the uses of connectives are typically rather different from those of English. A good example is written fictional narrative.

In English, unplanned narratives (story-telling) often make heavy use of 'and', as in the following example of a story spontaneously composed by a small child on the basis of previous telling by an adult (from Hasan 1983: 189):

> There was once a little girl and a little boy and a dog. And the sailor was their daddy. And the little doggy was white. And they liked the little doggy. And they stroked it, and they fed it. And he ran away. And then the daddy had to go on a ship. And the children missed 'em. And they began to cry.

This kind of textual structure is quite easy to produce. All clauses are presented as fairly important (foregrounded), and therefore available for the future development of the text.

Unlike unplanned narratives, planned narratives in English, and particularly the narratives of written fiction, tend to make much greater use of subordination. In Arabic, by contrast, coordination is a typical feature of written fictional narratives as well as unplanned material (cf. also Ch. 9.2.5). In translating written fictional narrative material, therefore, it is often stylistically appropriate to convert coordinate structures in Arabic into subordinate structures in English. Consider the following from حقل البنفسج by زكريا تامر:

> وتفاقمت أحزانه، وبدأت تسحقه ببطء وتشف، فنصحه صديق له بالذهاب الى ساحر [...]

This is translated (St John 1999: 6) as:

> As he became more and more depressed, slowly and thirstily she began to crush him until one of his friends urged him to go to a sorcerer [...]

Here the Arabic has a series of coordinated clauses (beginning with وتفاقمت, وبدأت, and فنصحه). The English reorganizes these around a single main clause (beginning 'slowly and thirstily'), with an initial subordinate clause (beginning 'As he became') and a final subordinate clause (beginning 'until one of his friends'). In this case, the change of subordination structure is partly in order to give the appropriate meaning in the English TT, but also to produce a style which is generally acceptable in English.

Regardless of generic considerations, in many cases, Arabic connectives simply 'disappear' in the English TT, or correspond to features of punctuation; حيث and إذ, for example, quite commonly signal the specific substantiation of a previous general claim, and can be omitted in English or replaced by a semi-colon, or colon or dash. An example with حيث (from Dickins and

www.kaues.org

Watson 1999: 312) is the following:

كانت محافظات الصعيد الثلاث [...] قد تحولت الى نيران مشتعلة، حيث تم احراق كنيسة وجامع [..]

This might be translated as:

> [...] the three provinces of Upper Egypt [...] had been transformed into a raging inferno: a church and a mosque had been burnt down.

For further discussion of إذْ and حيث, see Dickins and Watson (1999: 309–15).

Other discourse markers which are often encountered in Arabic are إنْ, and قد (with the perfect). These have specific functions in Arabic, some of which we encounter in this course (cf. also Dickins and Watson 1999: 419–28, 448–60). They do not, however, normally have translation implications; that is to say, the very real subtleties of meaning which these discourse particles introduce into the Arabic ST do not need to be – and, normally at least, cannot be – reproduced in the English TT. A translator from Arabic to English, therefore, only occasionally needs to worry about إنْ and قد.

A slightly more complicated case is presented by أمّا ... فـ.. (e.g. أما هذا الرجل فمشهور في مصر) (cf. Dickins and Watson 1999: 482–9). أما ... فـ.. is sometimes glossed in Arabic/English dictionaries as meaning 'as for' (e.g. 'As for this man, he is famous in Egypt'). In fact, it relatively rarely translates idiomatically as 'as for'. Sometimes, like إنْ and قد, it is best omitted from the English translation. Elsewhere, it will have quite different idiomatic translations such as 'however', 'on the other hand', etc., as the three following examples show (relevant elements in the TT are placed in curly brackets).

The first is example is taken from the novel مدينة البغي by عيسى بشارة:

كانت اغصان الزيتون والنخيل قد يبست، اما الشجيرة البرية فكانت ما تزال تقاوم الموت.

This has been translated (Brown 1996: 55) as:

> The olive and palm branches were brittle; the wild bush, {however}, was still defying death.

The second example is taken from a magazine article on religious extremism and violence in the Middle East. The previous paragraph has dealt with religious-oriented violence in Israel. The article has also previously discussed an explosion in Saudi Arabia, to which the text now returns. This extract is from the beginning of a new paragraph:

www.kaues.org

أما حادث الانفجار في السعودية فيكشف عن ناحية أخرى [...]

This has been translated (Hetherington 1996: 26) as follows:

> {On the other hand}, an examination of the explosion in Saudi Arabia reveals a different aspect of the problem.

The third example is from an account of the British general election of 1997. Again this is from a new paragraph, in which the problems of the Labour Party in the 1980s are being contrasted with the success of the Conservatives under Margaret Thatcher:

أما حزب العمال فقد عانى من الانقسامات الداخلية

This has been translated (Conduit 1998: 21) as:

> The Labour Party, {meanwhile}, was riven by internal splits.

Languages also differ in their use of punctuation as a cohesion marker. It should be remembered that Arabic traditionally made no use of punctuation, and that even now punctuation is often used in Arabic in ways which seem rather arbitrary. Even the use of basic punctuation markers such as full stops can be highly idiosyncratic, particularly in literary writing.

10.2.1.1 Sentence splitting

Since sentences in Arabic tend to be longer than sentences in English, it is not infrequently necessary to split up one Arabic sentence into a number of English ones. The following is a good example:

> فهذا أمر يحدث في أكثر من مكان، وقد رأينا صراعات من هذا النوع في هذه الدولة أو تلك، بل رأينا الحماقات التي يخلقها الشعور الديني المتعصب أو العرقي العنصري، ولكننا لم نشهد على الاطلاق هذا القدر من الشر والعنف الذي رأيناه في البوسنة والهرسك، ونشهده اليوم أضعافا مضاعفة في كوسوفو التي يسكنها تسعون في المائة من المسلمين ومن حقهم الطبيعي ان يطلبوا شيئا من الاستقلال الذاتي، وقد كان يهمهم هذا الاستقلال من قبل، ثم وافقوا على نوع متواضع من الحكم الذاتي في محادثات رامبوييه.

This could be translated (cf. Ives 1999: 12) as follows:

www.kaues.org

> Unfortunately such concerns are not unique to Kosovo though. We have seen struggles such as this in various countries, and have witnessed similar scenes of madness caused by religious fanaticism or extreme nationalism, but never on the scale which we saw in Bosnia. And yet, now we see it again, with redoubled force in Kosovo, whose population comprises some 90% Muslims, and whose natural right it is to demand some form of self-government. The Bosnians previously raised the issue of independence in the past, but eventually accepted a modest form of self-government at the Rambouillet talks.

Here a single Arabic sentence is relayed by four English sentences.

10.2.1.2 Textual restructuring

Rather more tricky than sentence splitting is textual restructuring: that is, the reorganizing of chunks of textual material in the TT in order to make them read more cogently. Sentence splitting may be regarded as oriented towards cohesion, in that it concerns the ways in which texts, in different languages, adopt different ways of linking material together. Textual restructuring, by contrast, is more oriented towards coherence; it concerns the ways in which languages typically organize their ideas differently from one another. Consider the following:

> لقد اعتبرت السعودية الافكار القومية، والديمقراطية، والاشتراكية، والليبرالية افكارا مستوردة .. رجسا من اعمال الشيطان .. فحاربتها ودعمت خصومها ووصفتها بالكفر [...]

This could be translated (cf. Hetherington 1996: 31) as:

> The Saudi state regarded nationalism, democracy, socialism and liberalism as imported ideas and thus evil works of Satan. It characterized them as godless ideologies, and fought against them by funding their opponents.

A more literal translation, e.g. 'It fought against them, supported their opponents, and characterized them as godless ideologies' seems odd in English, principally because it begins with the practical actions taken by the Saudis ('fought against them', 'supported their opponents') and then goes on to give the reason for these actions ('characterized them as godless ideologies'). It thus runs directly counter to the normal tendency in English, which is to start by describing principles (in this case 'characterized them as godless ideologies') and then go on to describe the practical consequences of these principles ('fought against them by funding their opponents'). This is the order of the restructured TT. The restructured TT also reorganizes حاربتها ودعمت خصومها (literally: 'fought against them and supported their opponents') into

www.kaues.org

the composite phrase 'fought against them by supporting their opponents', which provides what seems from the English point of view necessary substantiation of the claim that Saudi Arabia fought against nationalism, etc. It is important to stress that the fact that the TT reorganizes this material does not mean that the Arabic ST is illogical; from the Arabic point of view, it might be argued that the ST clause فحاربتها ودعمت خصومها ووصفتها بالكفر has cogency because it represents a build-up of increasingly strong responses: i.e. Saudi Arabia not only fought these ideologies on its own behalf, it also went beyond this to actively support their opponents. Finally, and most strongly from an Islamic point of view, it characterized them as godless.

This kind of textual structuring is distinct from the kind of restructuring we saw at various points in Chapter 9, in that it is not a function of theme-rheme or main-subordinate considerations. Of course, in some cases the kind of considerations we have looked at in this section may interact with other theme-rheme or main-subordinate considerations to produce changes in textual organization.

10.2.1.3 Paragraphing

Like punctuation, paragraphing can pose problems in Arabic/English translation. In English, there are some generic considerations involved in paragraphing; news reports tend to have very short paragraphs, sometimes only a single sentence; academic writing often makes use of extremely long paragraphs. However, in general, we may say that paragraphs typically cover a particular scene or episode within the overall set of scenes or episodes covered by the larger global text. In some cases, paragraphs begin with a so-called 'topic-sentence', that is a sentence which states what the general topic of the paragraph is. Thus, a publisher's blurb on the back cover of a book entitled *The Sounds of the World's Languages* begins 'This book gives a description of all the known ways in which the sounds of the world's languages differ'.

In Arabic, similar conventions for paragraphing to those of English are followed by many writers. However, not infrequently, one comes across paragraphing in Arabic which clearly does not follow English-type conventions. Under such circumstances, the translator will normally expect to reparagraph the TT according to the conventions of English.

10.3 THE INTERTEXTUAL LEVEL

We have just suggested that in order to determine the function of a textual variable on the discourse level, the translator must know whether it simply

www.kaues.org

reflects SL conventions or whether it departs from them. But of course, this is true of textual variables on any level. No text, and no part of any text, exists in total isolation from others. Even the most innovative of texts and turns of phrase form part of a whole body of speaking and writing by which their originality or unoriginality is measured. We shall give the term intertextual level to the level of textual variables on which texts are viewed as bearing significant external relations to other texts in a given culture or cultures.

10.3.1 Genre membership

There are two main sorts of intertextual relation that particularly concern translators. The most common is that of genre membership. We shall look at the question of genre as such in Chapter 13. For the moment, it is enough to point out that a play, for example, will or will not be typical of a certain sort of play in the SL culture; an instruction manual will or will not be typical of a certain sort of instruction manual, and so on. Before translating an ST, then, the translator must judge how typical it is of its genre. If it is utterly typical of an established ST genre, it may be necessary to produce a similarly typical TT. This will be relatively straightforward in the case of, say, computer manuals. It can prove tricky where there is no TL genre corresponding to that of the ST.

A good example of a genre which is traditional in Arabic but which has no real correspondent in the English-speaking world is the مقامة. This form of writing was written in سجع, a term which is sometimes translated into English as 'rhymed prose', and which involved not only the standard monorhyme of Arabic poetry, but also semantic parallelism and morphological repetition (cf. Hourani 1991: 52–3; Irwin 1999: 178–93).

The following text is from the start of المقامة الدمشقية by القاسم بن علي الحريري. Al-Hariri (1054–1122) was one of the best-known writers of مقامات. The TT is from Nicholson 1987: 119.

المقامة الدمشقية

حَكَى الحَارِثُ بنُ هَمّامٍ قَالَ : شَخَصْتُ مِنَ العِرَاقِ إلى الغُوطَةِ . وَأنَا ذُو جُرْدٍ مَرْبُوطَةٍ . وَجِدَةٍ مَغْبُوطَةٍ . يُلْهِينِي خُلُوُّ الذَرْعِ . وَيَزْدَهِينِي حُفُولُ الضَرْعِ . فَلَمَّا بَلَغْتُهَا بَعْدَ شِقِّ النَفْسِ . وَإنْضَاءِ العَنْسِ . ألْفَيْتُهَا كَمَا تَصِفُهَا الألْسُنُ . وَفِيهَا مَا تَشْتَهِي الأنْفُسُ وَتَلَذُّ الأعْيُنُ . فَشَكَرْتُ يَدَ النَوَى . وَجَرَيْتُ طَلَقًا مَعَ الهَوَى . وَطَفِقْتُ أفُضُّ فيها خُتُومَ الشَهَوَاتِ . وَأجْتَنِي قُطُوفَ اللَّذَّاتِ . إلى أنْ شَرَعَ سَفَرٌ في الإعْرَاقِ . وَقَد اسْتَفَقْتُ

www.kaues.org

مِنَ الإغْـرَاقِ . فَـعَـادَنِي عِـيـدٌ مِنْ تَذْكَـارِ الوَطَنِ . وَالحَنِينِ إلى العَطَنِ .
فَقَوَّضْتُ خِيَامَ الغَيْبَةِ . وَأَسْرَجْتُ جَوَادَ الأَوْبَةِ .

The Makáma of Damascus

Al-Hárith son of Hammám related:

I went from ‘Irák to Damascus with its green water-courses, in the day when I had troops of fine-bred horses and was the owner of coveted wealth and resources, free to divert myself, as I chose, and flown with the pride of him whose fullness overflows. When I reached the city after toil and teen on a camel travel-lean, I found it to be all that tongues recite and to contain soul’s desire and eye’s delight. So I thanked my journey and entered Pleasure’s tourney and began there to break the seals of appetites that cloy and cull the clusters of joy, until a caravan for ‘Irák was making ready – and by then my wild humour had become steady, so that I remembered my home and was not consoled, but pined for my fold – wherefore I struck the tents of absence and yearning and saddled the steed of returning.

The translator has chosen here to produce a TT which mirrors both the rhyme, the rhythm and even the graphic presentation of the ST, reflecting the central importance of these features for the ST genre. As Irwin points out, ‘There is nothing very like the *maqamat* genre in Western literature. The individual *maqamas* should not be read as short stories, as they are insufficiently and inconsistently plotted. Language and the display of language skills take precedence over story-telling in each of the episodes’ (Irwin 1999: 179). Given this there is little choice for the translator but to convey at least some of the verbal art of the ST in his or her TT.

Readers will probably agree that Nicholson’s translation of المقامة الدمشقية is something of a technical feat. Given the clear lack of correspondence of the TT to any established English genre, however, the TT is also clearly exotic. How highly readers rate this TT will depend at least in part on the extent to which they find it acceptable to reproduce an ST genre in a TT, where the TL has no such established genre.

The مقامة genre itself has effectively disappeared in modern Arabic, as has سجع in its pure form (cf. Beeston 1970: 113). It is, however, possible to find سجع-like material in modern literature, and even in some non-literary texts (cf. Dickins and Watson 1999: 548–9). As with classical texts involving سجع, the strategic decision as to whether to avoid rhyme or to produce a rhyming TT and accept the consequent exoticism will depend on what the purpose of the TT is.

www.kaues.org

10.3.2 Quotation and allusion

The second category of intertextual relations is that of quotation or allusion. A text may directly quote from another text. In such cases, the translator has to decide whether to borrow the standard TL translation of the quoted text. If it is very familiar in the TL culture, there will have to be special reasons for departing from it. This is so, for example, in the case of من بعدنا الطوفان (cf. Practical 6.3), which is quotation from Mme de Pompadour (mistress of the French king Louis XV), 'Après nous le déluge' ('After us the flood/deluge'), which is itself an allusion to the Biblical (and Quranic) Flood/Deluge. Similarly, another short story by يوسف إدريس entitled شيء يجنن contains the phrase مثل فرنسي يقول فتش عن المرأة. Given that this saying is well known in English in its French form, one would probably translate this along the lines: '"Cherchez la femme", as the French saying puts it' – with an additional shift from indefinite (مثل فرنسي) in the ST to definite ('the French saying') in recognition of the fact that the proverb is well known in English (but not, apparently, in Arabic).

Sometimes an ST quotation or allusion that is full of resonances for the SL reader would be completely lost on the TL reader. For example, the introduction to طارق المهدوي's book الاخوان المسلمون على مذبح المناورة, having excoriated the Egyptian Muslim Brotherhood for its fruitless political manoeuvering over the past few decades, ends with the Quranic-type phrase ولعلهم لا يدركون 'And perhaps they know not'. This would be immediately picked up by an Arab reader (even an Egyptian Copt, or other non-Muslim), but would be lost on the average British or American reader.

In such cases, the translator may either leave the quotation or allusion out altogether, or simply translate it literally, or, if it has an important function in the ST, use some form of compensation. It all depends on what exactly the function is. In the case of the phrase ولعلهم لا يدركون, the translation 'And perhaps they know not', with its archaic 'Biblical' negative ('know not') might be adequate to suggest to the English-speaking reader that this is a religious allusion, even if it is not necessarily clear to him or her what the allusion is to.

Particularly where ST intertextual features are more a matter of allusion than simple quotation, translation problems can become acute. An allusion is normally something deliberate, but we often see allusions where none was intended. An accidental allusion might be more accurately called an echo. When readers or listeners respond to intertextual features of this sort, they are real factors in the meaning and have an impact on the text. We know, for example, that Keats was not alluding to Donovan's 'They call me mellow yellow' in 'To Autumn'. What we do not know is whether Keats was alluding to Thomson's 'roving mists', or to Wordsworth's 'mellow Autumn charged with bounteous fruit'. But, for readers who do hear these possible echoes and allusions, they are part of the richness of Keats's lines.

www.kaues.org

Finally, it is as true on the intertextual level as on all other levels that the translator must be careful to avoid accidentally introducing inappropriate features. For an example of how easily this can happen, consider again the phrase في العسر واليسر والمنشط والمكره, which formed part of the oath sworn to حسن البنا, the founder and leader of the Muslim Brotherhood, by members of the Brotherhood (cf. Ch. 8.2.3.1). Given the pattern repetition in the ST, it is tempting to mark the formulaic, ritualized tone by repeating the preposition 'in': 'in comfort and in adversity, in suffering and in joy'. Unfortunately, this might sound like an allusion to the marriage service in the Book of Common Prayer ('for better for worse, for richer for poorer, in sickness and in health') – a quite inappropriate intertext for a text on the Muslim Brotherhood! Luckily, this can be avoided by simply not repeating the 'in': 'in comfort and adversity, suffering and joy.'

PRACTICAL 10

Practical 10.1 The discourse level: cohesive-device revision

Assignment
Consider the following Arabic text, and the English translation given after it. The English translation is in general fairly idiomatic. The connectives, however, are direct translations of the Arabic connectives. Your task is to produce a fully idiomatic English translation by replacing the connectives in the version of the English translation given here with more idiomatic ones, or in some cases with none at all. In certain cases you will also need to make other changes to the English text, which follow on from changes made to the connectives. Connectives in the Arabic original and the English translation to be edited have been placed in curly brackets {...} in order to make them easier to identify.

Contextual information
This passage is taken from الإخوان المسلمون علي مذبح المناورة 'The Muslim Brothers on the Altar of Manoeuvre' (المهدوي 1986: 15). This is a fairly short book about the history of the Muslim Brotherhood in Egypt, written by طارق اسماعيل المهدوي. The author is a communist, and as might be expected, the book is very critical of the Muslim Brotherhood. As might also be expected, it is written in a highly polemical style; it not only employs some of the particular phraseology of Marxism and communism (الجماهير 'the masses', etc.), but also makes extensive use of traditional Arabic persuasive rhetorical devices. The general argumentative nature of the text (i.e. the fact that it argues a particular case) is reflected in the widespread use in the text of connectives expressing logical relations (لذلك, إذن, رغم, حيث, etc.), as well as the more basic connectives, such as و and فـ. The TT is adapted from

www.kaues.org

Calderbank (1990).

ST

{ولكن} هذه الثمار السياسية كانت مخيبة للتوقعات الجماهيرية الشديدة التفاؤل التي صاحبت ثورة ١٩١٩ {فرغم} إعلان الاستقلال عام ١٩٢٢ {فإن} القوات المسلحة البريطانية استمرت ترابط على أرض الوطن {ولا سيما} في منطقة القنال {كما أن} المعتمد البريطاني استمر هو الحاكم الفعلي للبلاد {ورغم} إعلان الدستور الديمقراطي بما صاحبه من انتخابات برلمانية حرة {فإن} القوتين السياسيتين المتنازعتين على السلطة لم تلتزما بالديمقراطية إلا بالقدر الذي يضمن المزيد من النفوذ على حساب الآخرين!! {فـ}حزب الوفد الوطني ما أن يصل إلى الحكم حتى يبطش بمعارضيه من الحزب الشيوعي المصري والحزب الوطني {حتى أن} سعد زغلول أصدر في مارس ١٩٢٤ قراراً بحل الحزب الشيوعي المصري وحرمانه من الوجود واعتقال كل قياداته وكوادره {و}على رأسهم محمود حسني العرابي زعيم الحزب وتحريم الانتماء إليه أو محاولة إحيائه من جديد {وفي الجهة المقابلة} {فإنه} ما أن يبدأ حزب الوفد في تثبيت أقدامه في الحكم حتى يطيح به تحالف القصر مع سلطات الاحتلال البريطاني من خلال انقلاب دستوري يحمل إلى الحكم أحزاب الأقلية التابعة لهذا التحالف {حتى أن} هذا التحالف أطاح بسعد زغلول بعد أقل من عشرة أشهر من الحكم {لـ}يضع بدلاً منه حكومة تتكون من حزبي الأحرار والاتحاد برئاسة أحمد زيور في نوفمبر ١٩٢٤ {وعليه فقد} استمر سيف الدكتاتورية مسلطاً على رقاب الجميع {مما} أصاب الجماهير المصرية بالإحباط الشديد تجاه النظام السياسي الجديد.

TT

{And but} these political gains failed to satisfy the high popular hopes which had greeted the revolution of 1919. {For despite} the declaration of Egyptian independence in 1922, {for that} British troops remained on Egyptian territory, {and especially} in the Canal Zone, {just as that} the British High Commissioner remained the de facto ruler of the country. {And despite} the proclamation of a democratic constitution and the subsequent holding of free elections, {for that} the two major factions in the struggle for power were only really committed to democracy to the degree that this guaranteed them even greater influence over other groups. {For}, as soon as the Wafd came to power, it launched an all-out attack on its rivals in the Communist and National Parties, {until that} Sa'ad Zaghloul decreed in 1924 the dissolution and delegalization of the Egyptian Communist Party, the arrest of its leadership and rank-and-file members ({and} notably the Party leader Mahmoud Husni El Arabi), and the

www.kaues.org

outlawing of membership of the Party, as well as any attempt to reconstitute it. {On the opposite side} {for that} the Wafd, no sooner had it settled into office, than it was brought down by the alliance between the Palace and the colonial power, through a constitutional coup which brought into office the minority parties which were members of the coalition. {Until that} this alliance brought down Sa'ad Zaghloul after less than ten months in office, {in order to} establish in its stead a government consisting of the Liberal and Union Parties under the premiership of Ahmad Zayur in November 1924. {And thus} the shadow of dictatorship continued hanging over the entire population, {which} afflicted the Egyptian masses with a profound sense of disillusionment with the new political system.

Practical 10.2 The discourse level

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate this article for a pilot English-language version of العربي magazine, aimed mainly at expatriate English speakers working in the Middle East.

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Explain any other decisions of detail which you made in producing your TT.

Contextual information

This Arabic article, entitled صلابة حجر .. ورقة بشر – أكراد العراق .. الى اين, comes from a 2000 edition (no. 494) of the Kuwaiti magazine العربي, which is aimed at the general educated reader and covers cultural and scientific topics. The article concerns a visit to Iraqi Kurdistan made by two Kuwaiti journalists, during which they witnessed the destruction caused by war and Iraqi government repression in the region. This extract starts in the city of Arbil (text taken from Merchant 2000: 51–6).

ST

من شارع الستين الذي يسمّى بهذا الاسم نسبة الى عرضه، انطلقنا الى قلعة أربيل. من بعيد يقبع من مدخلها تمثال ضخم لابن المستوفي المؤرخ والوزير في عهد الملك مظفر الدين كوكبري والذي ألّف العديد من الكتب اهمها «تاريخ أربيل» الذي أصدره في أربعة مجلدات.

أفضى بنا الطريق الصاعد الى القلعة نحو الباب الرئيسي، الذي يرتفع بدوره عبر سلالم أسمنتية، ليصل إلى أحياء أخرى في ساحة القلعة بها العديد من المنازل الأثرية المسكونة، وشوارع يقف فيها

www.kaues.org

البائعون الجائلون بعرباتهم الخشبية، ندخل مباشرة الى القلعة التي تخبرنا لوحة ضخمة مكتوبة باللغة العربية أن سبع حضارات مرت هنا، ففي المكان الذي وقفنا فيه والذي تحاول مديرية الآثار في كردستان بإمكانات متواضعة للغاية الحفاظ على عبق القيمة التاريخية والحضارية فيه، انطبعت آثار الغزاة والفاتحين، ترك بعضهم بصماته القوية، وفضل آخرون ايداع الدمار في ذاكرة التاريخ.

في طريق العودة المتجه من السليمانية إلى أربيل، ثم منها إلى دهوك وزاخو، فمعبر فيش خابور الحدودي كان ثمة سؤال يطرح نفسه بشدة بعد أن قضينا كل تلك الأيام في منطقة كان مجرد ذكر اسمها يصيبنا بالرعب، والآن ها نحن نعود منها وقد اكتشفنا بأنفسنا حجم المبالغات التي أحاطت قضية الأكراد وأصابتها بتشويه لا مبرر له. كان السؤال هو «ما الذي سنكسبه نحن العرب عندما نخسر هؤلاء البشر احفاد الرجال العظام الذين ساهموا بشكل إيجابي في حضارتنا؟»

www.kaues.org

11
Metaphor

11.1 INTRODUCTION

In Chapters 5 and 6 we looked at denotative and connotative meaning. In this chapter, we conclude our consideration of the semantic level of language by examining the translation of metaphor. Metaphor is typically used to describe something (whether concrete or abstract) more concisely, with greater emotional force, and more often more exactly, than is possible in literal language. Compare even a cliché like 'Bush slams Buchanan' with the more literal 'Bush harshly criticizes Buchanan'. Of course, an original metaphor is likely to be more expressive than an unoriginal one. But it is also likely to be more imprecise, more open to interpretation – indeed, the expressive force of a metaphor often depends on this very imprecision. For instance, Shakespeare's '[Love] is the star to every wand'ring bark' expresses concisely and intensely the unmovableness and reliability of love in a shifting, uncertain and dangerous world. But why '*the* star' and not '*a* star'? Why a ship ('bark') and not, say, a walker or a desert caravan? The image of navigating the seas by the pole star is full of resonances which makes Shakespeare's metaphor less precise, but much more expressive, than 'Bush slams Buchanan'.

Metaphor is only one of a number of what are traditionally known as figures of speech. Other figures of speech include synecdoche, metonymy, irony, and simile. All are of interest in translation. However, metaphor is by far the most important, both because it is the most widespread, and because it poses the most challenging translation problems. According to Newmark, 'Whilst the central problem of translation is the overall choice of a translation method for a text, the most important particular problem is the translation of metaphor' (Newmark 1988: 104). Metaphor can give rise to difficulties in translation between any two languages, but where the languages concerned are as relatively different culturally and linguistically as English and Arabic, the difficulties are sometimes quite pronounced. For an introduction to the other figures of speech, see Abrams (1985).

www.kaues.org

11.2 GENERAL DEFINITION OF METAPHOR

Metaphor can be defined as a figure of speech in which a word or phrase is used in a non-basic sense, this non-basic sense suggesting a likeness or analogy with another more basic sense of the same word or phrase. Consider the first two senses of 'rat' given in the Collins English Dictionary: (i) 'any of numerous long-tailed murine rodents, esp. of the genus *Rattus*, that are similar to but larger than mice and are now distributed all over the world', and (ii) 'a person who deserts his friends or associates, esp. in times of trouble'. Here each sense of 'rat' may be said to call to mind the other (although the first would in most contexts only weakly call to mind the second). That is to say, any use of 'rat' in a particular text has the potential to invoke a reflected meaning. However, 'rat' in the sense of 'a person who deserts his friends or associates' is a metaphor with respect to 'any of numerous long-tailed murine rodents'. By contrast, 'rat' in the sense of 'any of numerous long-tailed murine rodents' is not a metaphor with respect to 'a person who deserts his friends or associates'. This is because we perceive the sense of 'rat' 'any of numerous long-tailed murine rodents' as being more basic than the sense 'a person who deserts his friends or associates'. This is in line with a general perception of physical objects as more basic than non-physical attributes.

11.2.1 Lexicalized metaphor and non-lexicalized metaphor

From the point of view of translation, a useful basic distinction to make is that between **lexicalized metaphors** and **non-lexicalized metaphors**. What we mean by lexicalized metaphors are uses of language which are recognizably metaphorical, but whose meaning in a particular language is relatively clearly fixed. 'Rat' in the sense 'a person who deserts his friends or associates' is an example. The fact that the meaning of 'rat' in this sense is relatively clearly fixed allows this meaning to be subjected to attempted dictionary definition. Accordingly, for practical purposes, we may say that lexicalized metaphors are metaphors whose meanings are given in dictionaries.

The other basic category of metaphor is what we are calling non-lexicalized metaphor. In the case of non-lexicalized metaphor the metaphorical meaning is not clearly fixed, but will vary from context to context, and has to be worked out by the reader on particular occasions. An example of a non-lexicalized metaphor is '[a] tree' in 'A man is a tree'. If this were uttered in a context in which the focus was on the distinction between the relatively small amount which is apparent or conscious about human personality and the relatively large amount which is hidden or unconscious, the reader might conclude that 'A man is a tree' is roughly equivalent to saying that 'A man is like a tree in that only a certain proportion is apparent (in the case of the tree:

www.kaues.org

the trunk, branches and leaves), while much remains hidden (in the case of the tree: the extensive root system)'. If, however, 'A man is a tree' were uttered in the context of a description of the course of peoples' lives, the reader might conclude that what is meant is something more like 'A man is like a tree in that he grows up, develops, "bears fruit" like a tree, and then loses many of his attractive attributes (cf. the leaves), etc.'.

The example 'A man is a tree' raises the question of how non-lexicalized metaphor is to be analysed in particular contexts. One approach which is useful for translation distinguishes between the following notions: topic, vehicle, and grounds (e.g. Goatly 1997). The topic is the entity referred to; the vehicle is the notion to which this entity is being compared; and the grounds are the respect in which this comparison is being made. Consider the example 'Tom is a tree', in which '[a] tree' is the metaphorical element, and in a context in which we can take the intended meaning to be something like 'Tom is the type of person whose major psychological features remain hidden'. In this example, the topic is Tom; or more precisely it is the 'entity' to which the word 'Tom' here refers. The vehicle is '[a] tree' in its literal sense. The grounds are the respect in which Tom is like a tree – in this case in the fact that major features of him are not apparent. From the point of view of this analysis, we might paraphrase 'Tom is a tree' as 'Tom (*topic*) is like a tree (*vehicle*) in that major psychological aspects of him are not apparent (*grounds*)'.

Although it is a bit artificial to apply the notions of topic, vehicle and grounds to lexicalized metaphor, we will keep things simple by using the terms, where appropriate, in discussing both lexicalized and non-lexicalized metaphor.

The distinction between lexicalized and non-lexicalized metaphors is not always clear-cut. English speakers are likely to agree that the metaphorical sense of 'rat' that we have given is a lexicalized metaphor. They are also likely to agree that 'platypus' in English has no such fixed secondary sense, and that therefore if it is used metaphorically, it is, in terms of the definition which we have given, a non-lexicalized metaphor. They are likely to be less sure, however, about secondary senses of 'tiger', 'elephant', or 'ostrich' (cf. Leech 1981: 214–15). From the point of view of translation, the importance of the distinction between lexicalized and non-lexicalized metaphors is not that it should be absolutely true, but that it provides a reasonable way in the great majority of cases of distinguishing two major classes of metaphor, which, as we shall see, typically require rather different treatment in translation.

Note that both sorts of metaphor can consist of more than one word. Such metaphors are known as phrasal metaphors. Thus '[Tom is] a tree whose leaves protect us all' is a non-lexicalized phrasal metaphor, and the idiom '[Tom] knows his onions' is a lexicalized phrasal metaphor. In principle, all lexicalized phrasal metaphors are idioms.

Simile can be treated in much the same way as metaphor. Thus, in 'Tom is like a shady tree', the simile element is 'like a shady tree', the topic is

www.kaues.org

'Tom', the vehicle is '[a] shady tree', and the grounds are that major aspects of him are not apparent.

11.2.1.1 Categories of lexicalized metaphor

It is useful to distinguish three types of lexicalized metaphors. (1) a *dead* metaphor is one which one does not normally even realize is a metaphor, as in a 'talented' man or the 'arm' of a chair. (2) A *stock* metaphor is one that is widely used as an idiom, as in 'keep the pot boiling', 'throw a new light on' (cf. Newmark 1988: 108). (3) A *recent* metaphor is a 'metaphorical neologism', as in 'with it' (in the sense of 'fashionable'), 'head-hunting' (in the sense of 'recruitment') (cf. Newmark 1988: 111–12).

11.2.1.2 Categories of non-lexicalized metaphor

It is worth distinguishing two basic types of non-lexicalized metaphor. These are conventionalized metaphors and original metaphors.

Conventionalized metaphors are metaphors which are not lexicalized (and will not therefore be given in dictionaries), but do draw on either cultural or linguistic conventions. English, for example, makes use of a large number of lexicalized metaphors based on the general notion of argument as war (cf. Goatly 1997: 75): e.g. 'battle of wits', 'attack' or 'lash out' at an opponent, 'defend a position', 'counter-attack', 'bombard' with questions, 'win' an argument. If, in this kind of context, an English ST contains a phrase like 'he redeployed his troops', the reader will have little difficulty in interpreting it along the lines 'he refocused his argument', or 'he began to concentrate on another aspect of the debate'. Although 'redeploy [...] troops' is not a lexicalized metaphor in English, it is easy to interpret at least partly because of the generalized convention in English that arguments are described in terms of war, and the existence of a large number of lexicalized metaphors along these lines.

There is also another more linguistically-oriented form of conventionalized metaphor. This is what Newmark terms *adapted* metaphor. An adapted metaphor is one in which a stock metaphor is slightly changed; an example is 'the ball is a little in their court' (Newmark 1988: 111). Here is an example we have already come across (Ch. 8.2.3.2):

... فرفض البنا الاستجابة لهذا التكتل و{اشتبك} في عدة {اشتباكات} كلامية مع رفعت كانت تنتهي دومًا بالمزيد من المؤيدين لأحمد رفعت وإزاء سيطرة رفعت الكاملة على المركز العام للإخوان [...]

www.kaues.org

Proposed translation (Calderbank 1990: 27):

> El Banna refused to listen to the group and {crossed words} several times with Rifaat. These exchanges always ended up with more support for Rifaat and eventually, faced with Rifaat's complete control of the General Headquarters [...]

The phrase 'cross words', here, is an adapted metaphor which echoes the existing English phrase 'cross swords', meaning to clash with, particularly in debate or discussion.

Original metaphors are ones like 'Tom is a tree', quoted above. Because they are not simply relatable to existing linguistic or cultural conventions, original metaphors are difficult to interpret. More specifically, it is necessary to establish the grounds from the context, and in many cases these will be ambiguous.

11.3 BASIC TRANSLATION TECHNIQUES FOR METAPHOR

The following procedures can be regarded as the most typical for translating the various categories of metaphors which we have discussed above.

11.3.1 Dead metaphors

Since the metaphorical element in these is very weak, it can normally be ignored in the translation and some appropriate TL form sought. Sometimes the obvious form will involve the same or virtually the same vehicle in the TT as in the ST. Thus ارتفاع is the standard Arabic word for 'rise' in the sense of a rise in prices. Sometimes, the TT vehicle will appear in a slightly different form; so على يد vs 'at the hands of'. Sometimes, the TT will use a different metaphor from the ST; thus عقرب الساعة vs 'hand' (of clock). Sometimes the ST metaphor will be best translated by a non-metaphorical TT term; thus لزم الفراش 'he took to his bed', قام من المرض 'he recovered from the illness'.

Where an ST dead metaphor is being translated by a TT metaphor, the translator should bear in mind whether the TT metaphor is as dead as the ST: in some contexts it would be inappropriate to use a metaphor with more metaphorical force than the ST one; in others, this may be acceptable or even desirable.

www.kaues.org

11.3.2 Stock metaphors

The following techniques are suggested for translating stock metaphors (cf. Newmark 1988: 108–11).

The stock SL metaphor can be retained as a stock metaphor having the same or nearly the same vehicle in the TL. This can be done provided the vehicle has comparable frequency and currency in the appropriate register in the TL as in the SL, as in the following (the metaphorical element in the ST and its equivalent in the TT in all the following examples are placed in curly brackets): لم يسبق لصابر أن {استولت عليه} مثل هذه الافكار [...] 'Never before had such thoughts {possessed} Saber.' (Brown 1996: 34); وجدرانها {شاهدة على} جوعه وعطشه وبكائه ونشيجه 'its four walls had {witnessed} his hunger and thirst, his weeping and sobbing' (Brown 1996: 38).

The stock SL metaphor can be replaced with a stock TL metaphor having a different vehicle. This is appropriate where the vehicle in the SL and TL have roughly equal frequency within the register in question. Examples of this are: وتمكن من معرفة مكان منزلها، ثم أخذ فيما بعد {يحوم} حوله باستمرار [...] 'He managed to find out where she lived and began to {hang around} outside her house constantly [...]' (St John 1999: 5); أن الصرب لم {يبرؤوا} من سموم التاريخ القديم [...] 'that the Serbs have not been {cleansed} of the poisons of ancient history [...]' (Ives 1999: 14).

The SL metaphor can be converted to a TL simile. This technique works where, if translated literally into the SL, the TL metaphor appears too abrupt. An example is: الطرف الآخر من النهر بدا منكسرا {يكسوه} حزن ووجل [...] 'the other side of the river appeared fractured {as if clothed in} fear and sadness' (Merchant 2000: 20), where كسا in the sense of covering is a stock metaphor in Arabic, but not one in English.

The metaphor can be reduced to grounds. This involves losing the metaphor altogether, and the emotional effect associated with it. It may, however, be appropriate where other strategies are not acceptable for the TL. Examples are {الإخوة} أيها '{Friends}' (from the start of a speech) (Dickson 1999: 7); تململ صابر في سريره دون أن {يستبد بـ}ـه النعاس 'Saber fidgeted in his bed without {feeling} sleepy' (Brown 1996: 38); عاش محمد أعواماً {مديدة} في مدينة صغيرة [...] 'Mohammed had lived for {many} years in a small town' (St John 1999: 4).

Sometimes it may be appropriate to introduce other features in the TT in order to compensate for the loss of emotional effect caused by the removal of the metaphor. An example is: وليس من قبيل الصدفة ان نلاحظ أن العازفين والمغنين من الطلاب {يبلغون ذروة} الاحساس بالتعبير 'It is no coincidence that we see the student musicians and singers {demonstrate the utmost} sensitivity [...]' (Evans 1994: 16). Here the translator has made use of a superlative form 'utmost', as well as the rather formal and elegant 'demonstrate', to achieve the same sort of emotional force as is relayed by the metaphor يبلغون ذروة in the ST (cp. the relative weakness of an

www.kaues.org

alternative English formulation such as 'display extreme sensitivity').

11.3.3 Recent metaphors

Where these are neologisms describing new objects or processes, equivalent TL technical terms can be sought out. This is less likely to be a problem translating into English than into Arabic, since the terms for such new objects and processes typically originate in English – and even original Arabic texts often make use of the English term (typically in Latin script) followed by a tentative translation. 'Buzz terms' present a slightly different problem. The formality of Standard Arabic means that such terms do not appear in and disappear from Arabic with the same speed as they do in English. One is therefore likely to reduce recent metaphors in translating into Arabic to stock metaphors, or perhaps to grounds. In translating into English, recent metaphors could be used where general requirements of register make them appropriate.

11.3.4 Non-lexicalized (conventionalized and original) metaphors

The following techniques are suggested for translating conventionalized metaphors which fall under general cultural or linguistic patterns of metaphor organization in the SL.

The non-lexicalized SL metaphor can be retained as a non-lexicalized metaphor having the same or nearly the same vehicle in the TL. This is a fairly common technique with non-lexicalized metaphor. Examples are فمنذ أن كانت تضاء بأنوار القناديل الخافتة قبل {غزو} الكهرباء [...] 'ever since it had been lit by the light of subdued lamps – before the {invasion} of electricity' (Brown 1996: 38); ولا القمر {يستدير بطنه} في سمائنا بصورة طبيعية 'And the {belly} of the moon does not {grow round} in our sky naturally' (Rolph 1995: 13).

Sometimes it is necessary to make other changes, which do not essentially alter the metaphor, but which render the context in which it occurs more acceptable in English. For example: فيتشرد عبر المدينة و{قد تحول الى قط هزيل يموء مواءً حاداً}. 'He would roam across town, {an emaciated cat, mewing plaintively}.' (St John 1999: 5–6). Here the translator has omitted the وقد تحول الى 'changed/having changed into' element in the English translation; this would have rendered the English somewhat clumsy. The core of the metaphor, however, remains the same.

The non-lexicalized SL metaphor can be replaced with a non-lexicalized TL metaphor having a different vehicle. Sometimes the TT vehicle does not work if transferred directly into the ST, but a non-lexicalized metaphor in the TT having a different vehicle does. An example is: وما زال بعض الادب المعاصر يتذكر فترات الاثارة الدينية والثارات المبيتة التي لم {تبرد

www.kaues.org

نارها حتى الآن}. 'Some contemporary literature still refers to the period of religious tension and ensuing vengeance, {the flames of which have not yet died out}' (Ives 1999: 13). Here the general metaphorical vehicle of fire is retained in the TT, reflecting the fact that it is conventional to use fire metaphors to describe anger and violence in both English and Arabic. However, the specific vehicle has been shifted from نار ('fire') and تبرد ('grew cold') in the ST to 'flames' and 'died out' in the TT.

Elsewhere more subtle changes may be required. For example: وغادر محمد المسجد بينما كانت دماء شرايينه {أصواتاً تتوسل بلهفة، وتهتف ضارعة: يا الله}. 'Mohammed left the mosque, and as he did so, the blood in his veins became {a mass of imploring voices, calling out woefully: "Oh God"}' (St John 1999: 8). Here the translator has somewhat strengthened the Arabic metaphor [...] أصواتاً 'voices', by using the phrase 'a mass of [...] voices'; he has also added the verb 'became'. Both of these changes have the effect of ensuring that the metaphor remains evident and comprehensible in the English translation, as it would not were a more direct translation adopted, such as 'Mohammed left the mosque, the blood in his veins imploring voices, calling out woefully: "Oh God".'

Sometimes it is appropriate to replace the non-lexicalized ST metaphor with a stock TT metaphor. This is typically the case where the non-lexicalized ST metaphor is highly conventionalized, and therefore does not have a particularly strong emotional impact. An example is والرواية المشهورة «جسر على نهر درينا» التي كتبها صربي فنان هو ايفو اندرتش، واظنه حصل بها على جائزة نوبل في سنة ١٩٦١، تكشف كوامن الكراهية في هذه {البؤرة الملتهبة} 'The famous novel, *The Bridge on the Drina* written by the Serbian author Ivo Andric [...] reveals the deep-seated hatreds in this {flashpoint}' (Ives 1999: 13). Here the Arabic metaphor البؤرة الملتهبة 'the flaming pit/abyss' is non-lexicalized but highly conventional in that fire metaphors are commonly used to describe violence, and pit metaphors are commonly used to describe extremely problematic situations. Accordingly the stock phrase 'flashpoint' seems sufficient for the context. A similar example of a highly conventionalized, but non-lexicalized, metaphor translated as a stock metaphor is the following: [...] في هذه المنطقة {البركانية} القلقة 'in this {explosive} and unhappy region [...]' (Ives 1999: 14). Here, if the Arabic البركانية 'volcanic' had been translated directly as 'volcanic' the reader might (initially at least) have thought it was simply a description of the geology of the area.

Occasionally it will happen that a non-lexicalized metaphor in the ST corresponds more or less directly to a stock metaphor in the TT. In this case, it is likely to be appropriate to use the stock metaphor in the TT where the ST metaphor is conventionalized. Here is an example of a conventionalized non-lexicalized metaphor which is translated by a corresponding stock metaphor in English, with the addition also of the topic: فتساقطت الضحايا من كافة المذاهب والملل ... من مختلف الافكار والاعمار ... من مختلف

www.kaues.org

الاتجاهات والجنسيات ... إنه {الإعصار} 'Victims from all faiths and communities, from differing ideologies, generations, factions and nationalities have been caught up in this {whirlwind of violence}' (Hetherington 1996: 13). Here the fact that إعصار is conventionalized, i.e. that violence is frequently talked about in terms of extreme weather conditions in Arabic, means that the English stock expression 'whirlwind of violence' is quite acceptable.

Where the ST metaphor is original in nature, translating by a stock metaphor in the TT will destroy the sense of originality, and therefore lessen the emotional force. In this case, it may be more appropriate to translate it by a non-lexicalized metaphor in the TT having a different vehicle.

The SL metaphor can be converted to a simile. Converting an ST metaphor to a TT simile can be useful where it is appropriate to retain the ST vehicle (or a similar vehicle), but where the use of a metaphor in the TT would seem odd for some reason. An example is: وكان محمد يشعر {بأنه جورب عتيق مهمل} 'making him feel {like an old discarded sock}' (St John 1999: 5). 'To feel like' is a common usage in English; and the more direct metaphorical 'making him feel that he was an old discarded sock' might seem somewhat strained and even comical. Consider also the following: وتلفت فيما حوله، فبدت لعينيه البيوت الترابية المتلاصقة بقايا {هيكل عظمي لحيوان قديم منقرض} 'He looked around at the grey contiguous houses, spread out before his eyes {like the skeleton of some ancient beast}' (St John 1999: 18). Here the use of the simile allows the translator to integrate the phrase 'like the skeleton of some ancient beast' into the ST in a concise and elegant manner.

It is also possible, of course, for a simile in the ST to be translated as a metaphor in the TT. This is particularly common where the TT metaphor in question is a stock metaphor. An example is: [...] {كالمسحور} فلحقها 'and he followed her, {enchanted}' (St John 1999: 5).

The metaphor can be reduced to grounds. This is most likely to happen where the ST metaphor is highly conventionalized and translation by a metaphor (of whatever kind) in the TT would sound clichéd. An example from a speech by جمال عبد الناصر is the following: أرحب بكم باسم شعب مصر العربي الذي يشعر نحو سوريا {الشقيقة} بأنها {قطعة من قلبها} 'Friends. I offer you a warm welcome to Egypt. The Arab people of Egypt feel {a strong affinity and deep affection} towards Syria' (Dickson 1999: 7). Here the phrase قطعة من قلبها 'a piece of its heart' has been related to the grounds; i.e. it is a piece of its heart by virtue of sharing a strong/close affinity and having deep affection. It is these grounds, rather than the metaphor, which figure in the translation; the metaphorical 'a piece of its heart' (or similar) would sound rather twee in English. (Note also the stock metaphor الشقيقة, to describe another Arab country; this can be regarded as having been merged with قطعة من قلبها into the English TT version, 'a strong affinity and deep affection'.)

Here is a similar example: الايام الماضية بكل دفقها الدموي {الشديد

www.kaues.org

[...] {الحرارة} 'the past with all its {terrible} bloodshed [...]' (cf. Ives 1999: 14). Here the direct equivalent of الشديد الحرارة 'extremely hot' does not collocate happily with دفقها الدموي 'its bloodshed' (or 'the shedding of its blood', etc.), and might appear comical in the context. The translator has accordingly chosen a non-metaphorical equivalent based on the grounds in which bloodshed can be 'hot' (such grounds being constructible along the lines that bloodshed is like extreme heat in that both are painful, difficult to bear, destructive of life, etc.).

A metaphorical element can be retained in the TT, but with the addition of the grounds or the topic. As Newmark notes (1988: 110), this kind of approach is a compromise procedure which retains some of the emotive and cultural effect of the metaphor, while also providing an explanation for readers who may not understand the original metaphor without further explanation.

Here is an example of the retention of a non-lexicalized (original) metaphor with addition of the topic: ولقد انتظر طويلا ان {تبزغ فوق صحرائه} انثى [...] 'He had been waiting for a long time for a woman {to dawn over the desert of his life}' (St John 1999: 10). Here, a direct translation 'He had been waiting for a long time for a woman to dawn over his desert' might seem rather obscure to the English reader. The translator has accordingly added the phrase 'of his life' which specifies a topic for the word صحرائه '[his] desert' (i.e. it specifies what 'desert' refers to).

The above is of course not an exhaustive list of all the methods which may be appropriate or acceptable for dealing with metaphor in Arabic>English translation, although it does cover a large proportion of cases. Particular circumstances, however, may give rise to the need for approaches quite different to the ones we have listed here.

11.4 EXTENDED AND MIXED METAPHORS

One of the interesting stylistic features of metaphor is the tendency for a particular metaphorical image to be maintained over a fairly long stretch of text. By 'image' here, we mean a particular semantic field to which a series of vehicles belongs. Consider the following (Brown 1996: 36):

> تراءت له مشاهد البؤس والخوف على شريط من الذكريات، فـ{اشتعل} فيه الحنين الى الهجرة، ولكن في اعماق قلبه {جمرة} تأبى {الانطفاء}، فهي كلما {ذوت} سرعان ما تعود الى {الاتّقاد} من جديد.

This can be translated fairly literally as follows:

> Scenes of wretchedness and fear presented themselves to him on a band of memories and the longing to emigrate {caught fire} in him. But in the depths of his heart an {ember} refused to {go out}; every time it {faded}

www.kaues.org

it quickly {ignited} again.

In this case the image of 'fire' is maintained, both in the ST and in the TT. Metaphors which maintain the same general image in this way can be termed congruent metaphors. Not all metaphors in a text are necessarily congruent. Metaphors which are not congruent with one another are often referred to as mixed metaphors. An example of a mixed metaphor is the following regarding the Maastricht Treaty promoting closer integration of the European Union: '[...] the Foreign Secretary, Douglas Hurd, said that what he called "trench warfare" against the treaty "had evaporated"' (BBC Radio 4 News, 18 May 1993). Another example of mixed metaphor is 'All the evidence must be sifted with acid tests'. Here there is an incongruity between the image conjured up by 'sifted' and that conjured up by 'acid tests'. Compare in this regard the perfectly acceptable 'All the evidence must be subjected to acid tests'.

Where the metaphors in question are dead or stock metaphors, mixed metaphor is normally not particularly noticeable. So, 'the forces which make up the political spectrum' seems reasonably acceptable, despite the fact that the basic sense of 'spectrum' has to do with colour rather than (physical) force.

Accordingly, the use of mixed metaphors is not normally a significant problem in the translation of dead or stock metaphors, as is shown by the following extract from عرس الزين by the Sudanese author الطيب صالح (صالح n.d.: 11) and a possible English translation. Metaphors and associated phenomena in both the ST and the TT have been noted by curly brackets and a following superscript number:

ST

يولد الأطفال فـ{يستقبلون[1]} الحياة بالصريخ، هذا هو المعروف ولكن يروى ان الزين، والعهدة على امه والنساء اللائي حضرن ولادتها، اول ما {مس الارض[2]} ، {انفجر[3]} ضاحكاً . وظل هكذا طول حياته . كبر وليس في فمه غير سنّين، واحدة في فكه الاعلى والاخرى في فكه الاسفل. وامه تقول ان فمه كان مليئاً بأسنان بيضاء {كاللؤلؤ[4]}. ولما كان في السادسة ذهبت به يوماً لزيارة قريبات لها، فمرا عند مغيب الشمس على خرابة يشاع انها {مسكونة[5]}. وفجأة {تسمر[6]} الزين مكانه وأخذ يرتجف كمن به حمى، ثم صرخ. وبعدها {لزم[7]} الفراش اياماً. ولما {قام[8]} من مرضه كانت اسنانه جميعاً قد سقطت، الا واحدة في فكه الاعلى ، واخرى في فكه الاسفل.

TT

When children are born, they {greet[1]} life with a scream; this is well known. However, according to his mother and the women who attended

www.kaues.org

his birth, as soon as Zein {came into the world[2]} he {burst out[3]} laughing. And this was how he remained his whole life. He grew up with only two teeth in his mouth, one in the upper jaw and one in the lower. His mother says that his mouth was once full of {pearly[4]} white teeth. Then one day, when he was six years old, she took him to visit some of her relatives. As the sun was setting, they passed by some ruins which were rumoured to be {haunted[5]}. Suddenly Zein became {fixed[6]} to the spot, and began to tremble as if he had a fever. Then he screamed. After that he {took to[7]} his bed for several days. When he {recovered[8]}, all his teeth had fallen out except one in his upper jaw and one in the lower.

There is no evident congruity in the metaphors used in this extract. However, the fact that none of the metaphors in the TT carry great metaphorical force means that there is also no sense of unacceptable mixed metaphor. The English TT, which makes use of a mixture of stock metaphors, dead metaphors and non-metaphors, similarly carries no sense of unacceptable mixing of metaphor.

This situation contrasts with cases, typically involving a high density of non-lexicalized metaphors, in which mixed metaphor (non-congruence) can present a considerable problem in translation. Consider the following (Brown 1996: 50):

[...] تمنى صابر لو أنه يستطيع ان {يفجر} هذا الصوت و{يفجر} معه {بركان} الحرية الذي {لا يصحو له جفن} و{لا تثور له ثائرة}.

TT:
Saber wished that he could make this voice {burst forth} and that in turn the {volcano} of freedom would {erupt}, ____________________ nor had it {flared up in rage}.

Here the ST metaphors are mostly non-lexicalized and closely congruent. The translator has relayed this congruence in the TT (although considerations of idiomaticness in the English have meant that she translated يفجر first in the context of 'voice' as 'burst forth', and subsequently in the context of 'volcano' as 'erupt'). A problem, however, is presented by the phrase لا يصحو له جفن, which we have omitted from the TT as presented here (the resulting gap being represented by a line). A possible translation of لا يصحو له جفن might be 'at which no one bats an eyelid', or perhaps more appropriately in this general context, 'at which no one had ever batted an eyelid'. However, the use of this particular idiomatic stock metaphor seems odd in this context, partly at least because the image (or vehicle) of batting an eyelid seems incongruent with the general image of volcanoes and fire. In order to avoid this incongruity, it might be appropriate in this case to opt for a relatively bland (though still metaphorical) translation of لا يصحو له جفن such as 'which had never attracted anyone's attention' or 'which had never

www.kaues.org

attracted a glance'. Together with further adjustments to sentence structure this might yield a translation along the lines:

> Saber wished that he could make this voice {burst forth} and that in turn the {volcano} of freedom would {erupt}, which had never once {flared up in rage} nor even {attracted} people's attention.

11.5 METAPHOR DOWNTONING

Not infrequently Arabic ST metaphors appear too strong or too dense for equivalent forms of English writing and there is some need to tone down the metaphors of the Arabic ST in the English TT.

Consider the following (St John 1999: 4), some aspects of which have been previously discussed in this chapter:

عاش محمد أعواماً {مديدة} في مدينة صغيرة {تقبع} {بذل} عند {أقدام} جبل شاهق {ترتطم} السحب بصخوره الصفراء.

> Mohammed had lived for {many} years in a small town. It {squatted} {insignificantly} at the {foot} of a towering mountain whose pale rocks {touched} the sky.

Here, of the five metaphors in the Arabic ST, three – مديدة, بذل, and ترتطم – have been toned down in the English, where they appear as the non-metaphorical 'many' (rather than 'extended', etc.), the stock-metaphorical 'insignificantly' (rather than 'shamefully', etc.), and the stock-metaphorical 'touched' (rather than 'crashed against'). The operative factor in this downtoning seems to be that this extract is taken from a relatively non-emotive section of the short story in question (in fact it is the opening sentence). In such a context, more direct renderings of the ST metaphors into English would seem unacceptably emotive.

Another example of metaphor downtoning is provided by the following extract from a newspaper article by the Egyptian journalist مصطفى أمين from الشرق الاوسط 21 September 1982 (reproduced in transcription in Al-Jubouri 1984):

في استطاعة أي حزب أن ينجح إذا دافع عن قضية الحرية وحقوق الإنسان، إذا احتضن كل مظلوم، إذا قاوم الفساد، إذا ضرب الأمثلة في القدوة الصالحة، إذا حوّل الكلمات إلى افعال والوعود إلى حقائق. كل حزب يقف إلى جانب الشعب يقف الشعب إلى جانبه يحيط به عندما تُوجَّه إلى ظهره الخناجر وإلى صدره المدافع والسيوف.

www.kaues.org

Here is an attempted idiomatic translation of this text.

> For any political party to succeed, it must be prepared to stand up for freedom of expression and human rights, to protect the weak, to oppose corruption, to set itself the highest standards, and to act according to these standards. Any party which supports and defends the people will find that it is supported and defended by the people.

As we saw earlier (Ch. 5.2.1), the English translation here involves considerable reduction of the parallelism of the Arabic ST. The TT also, however, involves extreme reduction of the metaphorical elements of the ST. Thus احتضن is translated as the non-metaphorical 'protect'. More striking is the extended and complex metaphor كل حزب يقف إلى جانب الشعب يقف الشعب إلى جانبه يحيط به عندما توجّه إلى ظهره الخناجر وإلى صدره المدافع والسيوف: literally 'every party which stands beside the people, the people stand beside it, surrounding it when daggers are aimed at its back, and guns and swords at it chest'. This is translated as the non-metaphorical 'Any party which supports and defends the people will find that it is supported and defended by the people'. The only arguably metaphorical element in the English TT is 'stand up [for]', which is probably to be regarded as a dead metaphor, corresponding to the Arabic قاوم (which is even more of a dead metaphor, if it is to be regarded as metaphorical at all).

The metaphorical downtoning in the TT here, like the reduction in the degree of parallelism, reflects a general tendency for English to use less strongly emotive language than Arabic, particularly in texts which argue a strongly held belief.

PRACTICAL 11

Practical 11.1 Metaphor downtoning

Assignment

Consider the following extract from a signed article entitled السياسة الأمريكية تجاه فلسطين by أسعد عبد الرحمن, a Jordanian academic, from the Jordanian newspaper الرأي. The article was written after the end of the second Gulf War between Iraq and the American-led coalition following the Iraqi invasion of Kuwait in 1990. Metaphorical elements in the text have been placed within curly brackets with accompanying numbers in order to make their correspondents in the following English translation easier to trace.

The Arabic ST is followed by a fairly literal TT and then by a more idiomatic English TT. In both cases correspondences to the Arabic metaphors are placed in curly brackets, the superscript numbering indicating which TT element(s) correspond to the original ST metaphors.

In what ways does the idiomatic TT tone down, fail to tone down, or

www.kaues.org

otherwise modify metaphorical elements in the ST? Are there any additional metaphorical elements introduced into the idiomatic TT which are not present in the ST?

ST

ومنذ اللحظة التي نطق فيها {المايسترو[1]} الامريكي بذلك، تكاثرت الاقوال المماثلة والمشابهة من قبل كل {العازفين[2]} على {النغمة النشاز[3]}، سواء كانوا اولئك الذين {ينتظمون ضمن التخت الموسيقي[4]} نفسه، او اولئك الذين {ينتظمون ضمن الكورس المواكب[5]}!!! ثم {تسارعت[6]} {الالحان النشاز[7]}، بل والاعمال {النشاز[8]}، الملاحقة! فلم يمض وقت طويل حتى بدأ العالم المشدوه يسمع تحرصات جديدة من الولايات المتحدة – يا رعاها الله!!! – قوامها المساواة، على صعيد هجومها التعسفي، بين منظمة التحرير الفلسطينية ورئيسها بحيث فقدت المنظمة في {بنك[9]} السياسة الامريكية الكثير من {رصيدها[10]}!!!

Fairly literal TT

Since the American {maestro[1]} first uttered that, similar and corresponding statements have proliferated on the part of the all the {players[2]} on the {discordant tune[3]}, whether they were those who {formed part of the orchestra[4]} itself, or those who {were part of the accompanying chorus[5]}!!! Then the {discordant melodies[7]} {became quicker[6]}, and indeed the subsequent/connected {discordant/recalcitrant[8]} actions. It was not long before the astonished world began to hear new fabrications from the United States – God preserve it! – whose basis, on the level of its arbitrary attack, was the equivalence between the PLO and its leader, such that the Organization had lost much of its {credit[9]} in the American political {bank[10]}.

Idiomatic TT

Since the Americans first {orchestrated[1]} this campaign, similarly {discordant notes have been struck[3]} by all the minor {players[2]}, whether they were actually {members of the alliance[4]} or merely {stood by applauding[5]} US actions. These {discordant voices[7]} have recently {reached a crescendo[6]} and have given rise to increasingly {violent actions[8]}. Now, a bewildered world has begun to hear new allegations from the glorious United States, whose abusive tones are directed not only against Arafat, but against the PLO in general, and which suggest that the PLO has {lost whatever credit[9,10]} it had with the Americans.

www.kaues.org

Practical 11.2 Metaphor

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate the text as part of a translation of the whole novel which you are undertaking. This is to be published as one in a series of translations of modern Arabic novels. The intended readership comprises educated English-speakers with a good general knowledge of English literature, but no specialist knowledge of the Middle East.

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Explain the decisions of detail you made *in respect of metaphor* in producing your translation.

Contextual information

This extract is taken from the novel مدينة البغي by the Palestinian writer عيسى بشارة. The central character of the novel is a young journalist called صابر who lives in the مدينة البغي of the title, which can be taken to be Jerusalem (or a fictional equivalent). صابر feels oppressed by the army which is blockading the city, and which on one level can be understood as a reference to the occupying Israeli army. He also feels oppressed, however, by the fact that where there should be harmony, respect and peace between people in the city, there is hatred and distrust. In this extract (from Brown 1996: 36), صابر is contemplating his predicament.

ST

قال صابر مخاطبا نفسه: «ما أصعبَ أن يشعرَ الإنسانُ بوطأة الحصار، بل ما أصعبَ أن يكون جلاّدُه من دمه ولحمه» .. ثم شرع يستحضر الأحلامَ الكبيرةَ التي طالما شارك فقراءَ المدينة في رسمها وتلوينها، فبدت لهُ كالطيور المتساقطة برصاص الصيادين..

تراءت له مشاهدُ البؤسِ والخوف على شريط من الذكريات، فاشتعل فيه الحنينُ الى الهجرة، ولكن في أعماق قلبه جمرةٌ تأبى الانطفاء، فهي كلما ذوَت سرعان ما تعود الى الاتّقاد من جديد.

كان صابر نهباً للهواجس والأفكار، فغدت تتجاذبَه المسافات القريبة والبعيدة على نحوٍ مُلِح، وتحولتِ حجرته الضيقة الى مسرح يتّسعُ الى ما يجري في مدينةَ البغي حيثُ جعلَ منها خيالُهُ الجانح مزاراً يؤمّه بشرٌ غير عاديين، يأتون كالطيف بدونِ استئذان ويغادرون كأنهم سحابةٌ حبلى بالمطر.

www.kaues.org

12

Language variety and translation: register, sociolect and dialect

12.1 BASIC PRINCIPLES

In this chapter we look at an elusive, but important, aspect of meaning: characteristics in the way the message is formulated that reveal information about the speaker or writer. We shall call this 'speaker-related information'. For simplicity's sake, we shall apply the terms 'speaker' and 'listener' to spoken and written texts alike.

There are two broad categories of speaker-related information that can be revealed through the manner, or style, in which the message is formulated. The first comprises things that speakers intend to reveal, notably the effect they want their utterances to have on the listener. The second comprises things that they do not necessarily intend to reveal, notably the social stereotypes they appear to belong to, and their regional and class affiliations. Any or all of these things can occur together, but, in analysing style, it is useful to keep them as clearly distinct as possible, because it helps the translator to pin down what features are textually important.

12.2 REGISTER

'Register' is a term used in so many different ways that it can be positively misleading. It is possible to isolate at least four theoretically distinct types of register that might be used in the analytic description of language (Hervey 1992). For our purposes, however, these fall into two types of register which it is methodologically useful for translators to distinguish.

www.kaues.org

12.2.1 Tonal register

The first is what we shall call **tonal register**. This is the feature of linguistic expression that carries affective meaning, which we examined in Ch. 6.4. That is, it is *the tone that the speaker takes* – vulgar, familiar, polite, formal, etc. The affective meaning of a feature of tonal register is conveyed by a more or less deliberate *choice* of one out of a range of expressions capable of conveying a given literal message – compare for example الرجاء الصمت as opposed to اسكت or اخرس, or in English 'Would you mind being quiet' or 'Silence please', as opposed to 'Shut up!'. As these examples suggest, the effect of tonal registers on listeners is something for which speakers can be held responsible, in so far as they are deliberately being obscene, polite, etc.

In handling tonal register, it is clearly important for the translator accurately to assess where the ST expression comes on the SL 'politeness scale', and to render it with an expression as close as possible to a corresponding TL degree of politeness. But it is not enough just to have a repertoire of expressions capable of injecting various affective meanings into a given literal message. Equally important is the *situation* in which the expression is used: different sorts of social transaction – preaching in a mosque or in a church, defending a client in court, selling a car to a male customer, etc. – all imply different tonal registers. Thus at the start of a political speech in Arabic the phrase وبهذه المناسبة اريد ان اقول is more likely to be translated by the relatively formal cliché 'I would like to take this opportunity to say [...]' than the less formal 'On this occasion I want to say [...]' (Dickson 1999: 12).

A case in which tonal register presents a more complex translation problem is the following, from a rather 'gushing' account of a visit to Morocco by a journalist from العربي magazine (Boothby 1996: 101) فلا نقول وداعا يا عذوبة المغرب بل ... إلى اللقاء 'And so we do not say "adieu" to Morocco but "au revoir"'. Here the use of the Frenchisms in the English translation conveys the rather ornate and mannered nature of the original.

A further complication is presented by the fact that the source culture and the target culture may have different expectations regarding the appropriate tonal register(s) for a given situation. As the example أديني كيلو رز (Ch. 6.4) showed, it is as important to be aware of cultural differences as of situation.

12.2.2 Social register

A **social register** is a particular style from which the listener confidently infers what social stereotype the speaker belongs to. Of course, a stereotype by definition excludes individual idiosyncrasies of people belonging to the stereotype; but, however unfortunate this may be, we do tend to organize our interactions with other people on the basis of social stereotypes. These

www.kaues.org

stereotypes cover the whole spectrum of social experience. They range from broad value-judgemental labels, such as 'pompous', 'down-to-earth', 'boring', etc. to increasingly specific stereotypical personality-types, such as 'the henpecked husband', 'the six-pints-before-the-kick-off football fan', 'the middle-aged *Guardian*-reading academic', etc. In so far as each of these stereotypes has a characteristic style of language-use, this style is what we mean by social register. One important way in which social register differs from tonal register, therefore, is that the speaker-related information is not usually *intentionally* revealed by the speaker. Social register carries information about such things as the speaker's educational background, social persona (i.e. a social role the person is used to fulfilling), occupation and professional standing, and so on.

A social register is, in other words, a style that is conventionally seen as appropriate to both a type of person and a type of situation. This is one reason why a given genre, or text-type, requires a specific style, and often a specific jargon. (We shall look at the question of genre in more detail in Chapter 13.) Selecting the appropriate style and jargon is to a great extent a matter of fulfilling expectations with regard to social register: selecting a wrong social register risks undermining the speaker's social persona as a credible authority on the subject.

Clearly, in translating an ST that has speaking characters in it, or whose author uses social register for self-projection, a major concern is constructing an appropriate TL register. In purely informative texts, this is relatively straightforward, the main problem being to find the conventional TL style for the genre. The more journalistic or literary the ST, however, the greater the importance of characterization, and therefore of social persona. When the translator is operating between closely related cultures – such as two Western European cultures for example – it is sometimes possible to match social stereotypes reasonably closely – football fans, perhaps, or guests at an aristocratic ball, or university students. However, when the cultures are more distant from one another – for example British culture and Egyptian culture – matters become more problematic. It is, for example, difficult to say what would be the British 'equivalent' of a peasant from southern Egypt, or of a populist Islamic preacher, just as one could hardly imagine the Egyptian equivalent of a New Age 'guru'.

Social and tonal register are not always fully distinguishable, for two reasons. Firstly, it is not always clear whether a style of expression reflects social stereotyping or the speaker's intentions towards the listener. For some speakers, an utterance 'I am not prepared to put up with further prevarication' might be a reflection of their social status; certain highly educated older people in particular tend to have a social register which is consistently formal. For many other speakers, however, this style of language would be a function of tonal register; it is a form of language which they would only use when they were deliberately adopting a tone of formality and authority.

www.kaues.org

Secondly, characteristics of particular social registers often include features of tonal register. 'The boys done well' said by a football manager to a television interviewer after a winning match not only reflects a social persona of the manager as 'down-to-earth' and 'straight-speaking', but is also an instance of a tonal register in which the manager presents himself as an authoritative but kindly father figure.

In the case of Standard Arabic it is easier to identify tonal register than it is to identify social register. The intrinsic formality of Standard Arabic makes it difficult to establish clear links between the kind of language used and social stereotypes. In translating Standard Arabic into English, however, this does not mean that social register should necessarily be ignored. In order to achieve a form of English which is contextually acceptable, it may be necessary to impose a social register on the translation, even where there is no obvious social register in the ST.

In cases where it is impossible to disentangle tonal and social register without lengthy analysis, it is acceptable for translation purposes simply to use 'register' as a cover-term.

12.3 SOCIOLECT

Whereas a social register belongs to a fairly narrowly stereotyped social persona, a **sociolect** is defined in terms of sociological notions of class. A sociolect is a language variety typical of one of the broad groupings that together constitute the 'class structure' of a society. Examples of major sociolects in the UK are those labelled 'urban working class', 'white collar', etc. However, mixed sociolectal/regional designations are often more helpful in recognizing language variants than purely sociological ones – e.g. 'Leith urban working class', or 'Bermondsey urban working class'. Further complications are thrown up by the often marked differences in the speech of men and women.

Despite these reservations, sociolectal features can convey important speaker-related information. If they are salient features of the ST, the translator cannot ignore them when deciding on a strategy. The first crucial factor to consider is what their function is in the ST. So, for example, translating an eye-witness account of a crime for Interpol, one would very likely decide to subordinate sociolect to getting the facts clear. On the other hand, if sociolect is not incidental one might need to find a way of showing this in the TT.

Even in such cases, however, the translator has to weigh a number of questions in forming a strategy: What is the function of the ST sociolect(s)? What is the purpose of the TT? Would it not be safest to produce a TT in a bland 'educated middle class' sociolect? If the strategy is to incorporate some TL sociolectal features corresponding to those in the ST, the requirements are similar to those involved in choosing social register: it has to be decided

www.kaues.org

what sociolects are the most appropriate, and there must be no inconsistencies in TT sociolect (assuming there are none in the ST sociolects).

The inherent formality of Standard Arabic means that Standard Arabic cannot really be said to have different sociolects. Like English, however, colloquial Arabics do have sociolects. This means that in translating from Arabic to English one only needs to worry about sociolect in the ST if the ST is written wholly or partly in colloquial Arabic. However, as with social register, it may sometimes be necessary to impose a sociolect on the TT in order to achieve a form of English which is contextually acceptable. Where different colloquial Arabic sociolects are related to education, these will tend to be fittable into one of the three levels of عامية as described in Ch. 12.4.1.

12.4 DIALECT

The fourth type of speaker-related information that can be inferred from style concerns what part of the country speakers are from – where they grew up, or where they live, and so on. This inference is based on dialect, a language variety with features of accent, lexis, syntax and sentence formation characteristic of a given region.

Marginally at least, both standard varieties of English and Standard Arabic can be said to have dialect forms. Thus, even in formal writing in Scotland 'outwith' is the standard equivalent of English 'outside', American 'diaper' is the equivalent of British 'nappy', etc. In Standard Arabic, the word for 'training' is تكوين (calqued on French 'formation') in North Africa, but تدريب elsewhere. Similarly, in Morocco the normal Standard Arabic form for 'noon' is زوال while in most Arab countries it is ظهر. Neologisms are also frequently subject to regional variation within the Arab world, as different forms are proposed in different countries. Thus 'mobile phone' is جَوّال in Saudi Arabia, نَقّال in Kuwait, and سَيّار in the Emirates, as well as تلفون محمول (or هاتف محمول) and موبايل, this last being a cultural borrowing which is in general use.

In many European languages, some speakers have as their own dialect the so-called standard language. Technically a standard language can be defined as a language variety which 'cut[s] across regional differences, providing a unified means of communication, and thus an institutionalized norm which can be used in the mass-media, in teaching the language to foreigners, and so on' (Crystal 1991: 286). In English, most educated speakers share a standard language, albeit with some regional influence especially in the area of pronunciation.

www.kaues.org

12.4.1 Diglossia

Arabic differs from English in that the standard language – i.e. Standard Arabic – is not the native language of any speakers; that is to say, nobody is brought up speaking Standard Arabic. Rather, everyone starts out learning the dialect (عامية) of the area in which they live, and if they go on to achieve literacy, they subsequently learn Standard Arabic (فصحى) in an educational environment.

The language situation of Arabic is sometimes referred to as one of **diglossia**. Diglossia can be defined as a situation where two very different varieties of a language co-occur throughout a community of speakers, each having a distinct range of social functions. These varieties are felt to be alternatives by native speakers and usually have special names. It is customary to talk in terms of a high variety and a low variety, corresponding broadly to a difference in formality; the high variety is learnt in school, and tends to be used in religious contexts, on radio programmes, in serious literature, formal lectures, etc. Accordingly it has greater social prestige. The low variety, by contrast, is used in family conversations, and other relatively informal settings.

Within the basic diglossic distinction between Standard Arabic and colloquial Arabic, it is possible to make further distinctions. It has been proposed by the Egyptian linguist El-Said Badawi (Badawi and Hinds 1986: viii–ix) that, within Standard Arabic, one can distinguish between what he terms (i) فصحى التراث 'Standard Arabic of the classical heritage', and (ii) فصحى العصر 'contemporary Standard Arabic'. The former is specifically the linguistic vehicle of the legacy of Islamic high culture and religion, whilst the latter is used to deal with modern culture and technology. In Egypt, which is the focus of Badawi's account, فصحى التراث is little different from the classical descriptions of فصحى, as might be expected in what is now in effect a liturgical language. فصحى العصر, on the other hand, exhibits features which contrast with the usual classical conventions – particularly, Badawi suggests, a marked preference for sentences beginning with a noun rather than a verb. When spoken, فصحى العصر shows other departures (phonological, morphological and syntactic) from the norms of فصحى التراث, most of which reflect forms found in Egypt colloquial Arabic.

Badawi believes that three levels of colloquial Arabic can usefully be distinguished in Egypt: (i) عامية الامين 'colloquial Arabic of the illiterate'; (ii) عامية المتنورين 'colloquial Arabic of the "enlightened" (i.e. literate)'; and (iii) عامية المثقفين 'colloquial Arabic of the highly educated'. The mother tongue of any Egyptian child is always either عامية الامين or عامية المتنورين, depending normally on whether the child comes from a literate or illiterate background. If the child then goes to school, he or she learns and begins to function either in فصحى العصر (in secular schools) or فصحى التراث (within the religious system). Mastery of the third, acquired,

www.kaues.org

level of عامية المثقفين is restricted to a small percentage of the population. This level of colloquial Arabic is in effect the spoken counterpart of the written فصحى العصر and is used only in formal contexts between highly educated people or the would-be highly educated. Elsewhere, their language is normally عامية المتنورين, although some may also initially have been speakers of عامية الأميين.

The situation in other Arab countries is typically analogous to that in Egypt, the most important exceptions being the countries of the Maghreb – Tunisia, Algeria and Morocco – where French is widely spoken in addition to Arabic (and in some areas Berber).

It is possible that a translator will be called upon to translate material in an Arabic dialect; films, plays, and television soaps are all typically written (and performed) in dialect; informal interviews are also likely to be highly dialectal. In such cases there are three main potential problems.

First, it has to be decided how important the dialect features of the ST are to its overall effect. In the case of an informal Arabic interview, for example, one is likely to want to put the TT into informal but not obviously dialectal English. In the case of literary works, however, e.g. where some speakers' speech is represented in a specific marked dialect, the translation might also justifiably represent this in a dialect form.

Second, if dialect does have a function in the ST, an essential strategic decision is whether and why to use TL dialectal features. There are very obvious dangers in using TL dialect. It is likely to be a fairly arbitrary matter which – if any – TL dialects correspond to the ST ones. An English TL dialect is also likely to sound ridiculous on the lips of a Sudanese farmer, or a Moroccan labourer, or a Lebanese society hostess. In many cases, dropping ST dialect features is likely not to incur very damaging translation loss. If it does, but there seems no reasonable way of using dialect in the TT, the important ST effects produced by dialect will probably have to be rendered through compensation. One technique is to make occasional additions; e.g. '[...] she said in a thick Tangiers accent'.

Sometimes, if ST dialectal features are closely associated with other features of language variety, it is possible to use TL sociolect or register to compensate for the loss of connotations carried by the ST dialect(s).

A final, drastic possibility is wholesale cultural transplantation. This is the exception rather than the rule. It is generally only done with literary works, for commercial reasons. It often requires such extreme adaptation that it can barely be described as translation, however brilliant the TT may be.

The third problem is one that applies to sociolect and register as well: once a decision is taken to use TL dialect, it must be accurate, and it must be consistent. Many literary TTs in particular are sabotaged by weaknesses in the translator's grasp of language variety. Among the many skills a translator has to have is that of pastiche.

www.kaues.org

12.5 CODE-SWITCHING

Finally, it must be borne in mind that many people are adept at switching between language varieties, and even between languages. This is known as **code-switching**. Code-switching in Arabic may be between one of the three levels of عامية or two levels of فصحى (adopting Badawi's classification), or between a form of عامية and a form of فصحى. Speakers may switch codes relatively unconsciously, particularly in a formal situation (such as a radio or television interview), and start out speaking فصحى, or a form of Arabic close to فصحى, but gradually drift into a form of Arabic more obviously like عامية, because they find it impossible to maintain their flow of speech using فصحى.

Language users may also make use of code-switching more consciously for social camouflage, to match their social persona to the particular situation they are in. Or they may use it for storytelling purposes, imitating the various characters in their story. Or they may use it for satirical purposes, sprinkling the text with expressions from different registers, sociolects or dialects. In this respect, consider the following from an article in the well-known Kuwaiti cultural magazine العربي about Muslims in America (Pennington 1999: 16):

> وهكذا «فالمستقبل لنا» كما يقول الدكتور مهدي، المتكلم في مجلس الشؤون الاسلامية في امريكا، وهو المتفائل الاكبر في أمريكا، فعندما كان العرب والمسلمون يقولون له «مش ممكن!» كان يرد على المتخاذلين «بالعمل والصبر كل شيء ممكن» [...]

> As the spokesman for the Council of Islamic Affairs in America and America's greatest optimist, Dr Mahdi, puts it, 'The future belongs to us'. When Arabs and Muslims used to tell him, 'That's impossible', his reply to these weak-willed characters was 'With work and patience all things are possible'.

Here the use of the colloquial مش ممكن is particularly striking. As might be expected from a text of this kind, the entire article is otherwise written in Standard Arabic. And although the colloquial مش ممكن represents what people may actually have said, and literally states that something is impossible, it does more than this. The use of the dialectal form also connotes an attitude of unconsidered negativeness – i.e. this was the kind of throwaway response Dr Mahdi got from people, an answer not even worth expressing in 'proper' (i.e. Standard) Arabic. By contrast, Dr Mahdi's attitude بالعمل والصبر كل شيء ممكن is expressed in rather elegant Standard Arabic, pointing up his dignified, considered and confident view of the problem.

Since code-switching is a definite strategic device, translators have to be prepared to convey in the TT the effects it has in the ST. In doing this, of course, they are subject to the requirements and caveats that we have outlined

www.kaues.org

in discussing register, sociolect and dialect. Thus, in the example just looked at, the translator has not attempted to put مش ممكن into a rather obviously implausible 'equivalent' English dialect form, and has equally avoided a more colloquial English form than 'That's impossible', such as 'No way'. There is, however, a degree of compensation for the use of the relatively neutral 'That's impossible' in the translation of بالعمل والصبر كل شيء ممكن. Although 'With work and patience all things are possible' is a fairly direct translation of the Arabic, it also has a rather formal and even poetic feel to it in English (notably more so than a more workaday translation, such as 'Nothing's impossible if one works/you work hard', which might be more normal in many contexts). This maintains at least some stylistic contrast with the previous 'That's impossible' in the English TT, and produces a similar effect to that produced by the juxtaposition of colloquial and Standard direct speech in the Arabic.

Code-switching is also fairly common in political speeches. It was a particularly prominent feature of the speeches of the late Egyptian leader جمال عبد الناصر; indeed عبد الناصر is often said to have been the first political leader to have made wide use of colloquial Arabic in his speeches. Consider the following, which is taken from a speech delivered at Port Said on Victory Day, 23 December 1957 (cited in Holes 1993: 43; the following analysis is based on that of Holes). This was one year after Egypt's nationalization of the Suez Canal and the subsequent confrontation between Britain, France and Israel on the one hand, and Egypt on the other. Following Egypt's nationalization of the Suez Canal, Israel occupied Egypt up to the Canal under the terms of a secret agreement with Britain and France, and Britain and France then occupied the Canal Zone under the pretext of protecting the Canal. This 'tripartite aggression' was foiled by American insistence that Britain, France and Israel withdraw. The outcome was perceived in the Arab world as a great victory for Egypt, and عبد الناصر became a central figure in Arab politics and the non-aligned movement of Third-World states.

Colloquial elements in this text have been placed within curly brackets to make them easier to identify. The symbol ڨ is also used exceptionally here to indicate a hamza in Egyptian Colloquial Arabic which derives from a ق in Classical Arabic. Where ث is pronounced as س, this is transcribed as ث. Where ذ is pronounced as ز, this is transcribed as ڎ. Except where marked in the text, final case and mood endings are not pronounced in the original speech.

إن مصر أيها الإخوة رغمَ ما قاسيناه، إن {إحنا بنتّبع سياسة} عدم
الانحياز، سيا{سِ}ـة الحياد الايجابي {علشان} نكبّر معسكر {الَـ}سلام
لأن العالم إذا انقسم الى معسكرين وأصبحت دول {الـ}عالم منَقسمة
جز{ءِ} منها مع هـ{ڎ}ا المعسكر وجز{ء} مع المعسكر الآخَر، لا بد أن تقوم
حرب ولا بد أن تقاسي البشرية الأهوال .. {النهاردا} حينما ننادي

www.kaues.org

بالحياد {الا}يجابي وحينما ننادي بعدم الانحياز، إنما نعمل على كسرِ حدّة التوتر [...] وإنما نعمل على تـ{ثـ}بيت {الـ}سلام وعلى تدعيم {الـ}سلام .. {النهاردا} يا اخواني {نبصّ} للماضي بانتصاراته .. {نَبصّ} للماضي بمعاركه .. {نبصّ} للماضي {بتاعنا} بشهدائه .. {نبصّ} للإعلام {بتاعتنا اللي} رفعناها بالنصر {ونفتكر الاعلام بتاعتنا اللي} ضُرِّجت بالدماء ونتجّه الى المستقبل ونعملَ ونَبنيَ من أجل {الـ}سلام، نعمل ونبني من أجلِ خلق وطن متحرر قوي ..

A fairly literal translation of this (Holes 1993: 43), with English elements corresponding to major colloquial features of the ST in curly brackets, is as follows:

> Egypt, brother Egyptians, despite what we have suffered – {we are pursuing the policy} of non-alignment, the policy of positive neutrality {so that} we increase the size of the peace camp, because if the world is divided into two camps, one group in one camp and one in the other, there is bound to be war, and humanity is bound to suffer its horrors ... {Today}, when we call for positive neutrality, and when we call for non-alignment, we are simply working towards reducing the sharpness of tension [...], and working towards stabilizing and supporting peace ... {Today}, my brothers, {we look} to the past with its victories, {we look} to the past with its battles, {we look} to the past of ours with its martyrs, {we look ... to the flags of ours} which we held aloft in victory and {we remember those flags of ours which} were soaked in blood, and go forward to the future to work and build for the sake of peace, to work and build to create a strong, liberated homeland.

Some of the colloquial uses in this text – and particularly those which have not been marked up in the English TT – may be thought of as incidental, in the sense that they give the text a slight colloquial flavour without fully removing it from the realm of Standard Arabic into the realm of colloquial Arabic. Obvious examples are those deviations from Standard Arabic which involve only a slight change in pronunciation. More interesting from a stylistic point of view are cases in which unambiguously colloquial forms are used, i.e. cases where the word itself is part of colloquial Egyptian rather than part of Standard Arabic. Cases in point are احنا 'we', بنِتّبع '[we] follow' (with the colloquial prefix بـ), النهاردا 'today' (twice), نبص 'we look' (four times), بتاعتنا/بتاعنا 'of us/our' (three times), and اللي (twice). This text in some respects deals with quite general and even abstract issues (e.g. لأن العالم إذا انقسم الى معسكرين وأصبحت دول العالم منقسمة جزء منها مع هذا المعسكر وجزء مع المعسكر الآخر، لا بدّ أن تقوم حرب ولا بَد أن تقاسي البشرية الأهوال). However, where the unambiguously colloquial elements are used, they tend to be much less abstract, to deal with the here and now (e.g. النهاردا 'today'), and to introduce a sense of intimacy and

www.kaues.org

solidarity between the speaker and the audience by making use of the notion of 'us' (e.g. احنا 'we', نبص 'we look', بتاعنا 'our').

From the point of view of producing a more idiomatic translation than the one given above, this presents something of a challenge. Clearly, it would not be appropriate to render the Arabic colloquial forms into English dialectal forms. It might, however, be possible to compensate in kind and place in various ways. For example النهاردا حينما ننادي بالحياد الايجابي وحينما ننادي لعدم الانحياز might be translated along the lines, 'Today, my friends, when we advocate positive neutrality, and non-alignment' with the addition of 'my friends' in the English to compensate for the loss of 'solidarity' in the use of the word 'today'. An alternative might be 'Today, when we in Egypt advocate positive neutrality and non-alignment', or 'Today, when we Egyptians ...'. In other circumstances, other techniques might be possible; in yet others, it might be better to accept the translation loss without attempting any form of compensation.

PRACTICAL 12

Practical 12.1 Tonal register

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt.

(ii) Translate the text into English, paying particular attention to features of tonal register in the ST. The TT is to be included in a semi-academic book entitled *The Road to War in the Gulf*, and you should take it that the TT audience will also be people with an academic interest in the subject (and therefore some specialist knowledge).

(iii) Explain the decisions of detail you made in producing your translation, paying particular attention to elements of formality and politeness in the ST and the TT.

Contextual information

This text is the start of an open letter written by the late King Hussein of Jordan in 1990, to the Iraqi leader Saddam Hussein after the Iraqi invasion of Kuwait, but before the second Gulf War (between the American-led coalition and Iraq). In this letter, King Hussein is attempting to put himself forward as a possible mediator in the dispute. As subsequent parts of the letter make plain, King Hussein's general position is that although Iraq may have had legitimate grievances against Kuwait, the invasion was unacceptable, and Iraqi troops must first withdraw from Kuwait before these can be addressed.

www.kaues.org

ST

سيادة الأخ العزيز الرئيس صدام حسين حفظه الله ورعاه

تحية المودة والإخوة ، عربية هاشمية أبعث بها إليك وبعد

فقد عدت لتوّي من لقاء الرباط الذي دعاني اليه جلالة الملك الحسن الثاني ، مثلما دعا اليه فخامة الرئيس الشاذلي بن جديد ، وقد كان موضوع اللقاء البحث في أزمة الخليج التي أصبحت أزمة الأمة العربية منذ تفجرها في الثاني من آب الماضي حين احتلت القوات العراقية الكويت وبدأ مسلسل الانزلاق نحو المظلم المجهول ، وما رافقه من قلق لا ينتهي ، بل يزداد حدة مع كل يوم وساعة ونحن نرى أن ما تمكنت أمتنا من تحقيقه في نضالها منذ مطلع هذا القرن ، مهدد بالزوال أو الاندثار. ويحدث ذلك بعيد فترة انتهاء الحرب الباردة ، وفي الوقت الذي يعيش العالم فيه مرحلة انبثاق حقبة جديدة ، تتشكل فيها ملامح نظام عالمي جديد ، وتوضع للعبة الدولية فيه قواعد وقوانين تختلف عما عهدنا في الحقبة التي انحسرت ثم غربت.

Practical 12.2 Code-switching

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. Consider in particular where and why colloquial Arabic is being used in the text, and possible implications for translation. You are to translate the text for a work entitled *The Language of Ideology*, which presents speeches by a number of modern political leaders and discusses the ideologies behind them.

(ii) Identify all elements in the ST which are in colloquial Egyptian Arabic.

(iii) Translate the text into idiomatic English.

(iv) Explain the decisions of detail which you made in producing your TT.

Contextual information

This text is part of a speech by the former Egyptian leader جمال عبد الناصر delivered on 22 February 1964, Unity Day: الحرية السياسية والحرية الاجتماعية (from Holes 1993: 41–2). This speech has no particular historical significance, although it was made at a time when Nasser and Nasserism were at the height of their popularity, and socialism was a powerful political idea in the Arab world.

Note that as in the case of the speech by عبد الناصر discussed in § 12.4.2, in this passage the symbol ڨ is used exceptionally to indicate a

www.kaues.org

hamza in Egyptian Colloquial Arabic which derives from a ق in Classical Arabic. Where ث is pronounced as س, this is transcribed as ثٌ. Where ذ is pronounced as ز, this is transcribed as ذٌ. No attempt is made to mark vowel length reduction in Egyptian Arabic, e.g. *waahid+a (واحْد+ة) > wahda* (وحدة) 'one (f.)', although, where it differs from Standard Arabic, the Colloquial vowelling is marked (in this case Colloquial واحْدة, as opposed to Standard واحِدة).

ST

... الاشتراكية زي ما قال الميثاق، هي الترجمة الصحيحة لكون الثورة عملاً تقدميًا ... الاشتراكية يعني ايه؟ الاشتراكية ككلمة معناها إقامة مجتمع الكفاية والعدل .. إقامة مجتمع تكافؤ الفرص ... إقامة مجتمع الانتاج وإقامة مجتمع الخدمات ... الاشتراكية يعني ايه؟ نقول اشتراكية كِلْمة واحْدة بس ... معناها تحرير الإنسان من الاستغلال الاقتصادي ومِن الاستغلال الاجتماعي ... الديمقراطية ... الديمقراطية معناها تأكيد سيادة الشعب ووضع السلطة كلها في يد الشعب ... وتكريسها لتحقيق أهداف الشعب ... الديمقراطية هي الحرية السياسية والاشتراكية هي الحرية الاجتماعية ... الكلام دا قلناه قبل كدا ، الكلام دا جا في الميثاق ... ولا يمكن الفصل بين الديمقراطية والاشَتراكية بأي حال من الأحوال ... بدونْهم أو بدون واحْدة منهم لا يمكن للحرية أن تتحقق ... كلِّنا عندنا تجربة واضْحة ... من قبل الثورة واجهة الديمقراطية المزيَّفة لم تكن بأي حال تمثِّل إلا ديمقراطية الرجعية ... الديمقراطية إللي كانت موجودة قبل الثورة، لما كانت الرجعية تسيطر على اقتصاد البلاد وثروة البلاد، وكانت هي صاحبة النفوذ، وكانت الرجعية هي صاحبة الامتيازات، كانت ديمقراطية مزيَّفة وكانوا بيقولوا انّو فيه حرية سياسية أو فيه ديمقراطية سياسية .. ولكن الاستغلال والإقطاع ورأس المال المستغلّ قضى على كِلْمة الديمقراطية إللي قالوها ... وعلشان كدا إحنا بنقول ... لا يمكن فِي أي حال أن يقال أن هناك حرية إلاّ إذا توفَّرت الديمقراطية السياسية مع الديمقراطية الاجتماعية.

www.kaues.org

13

Textual genre as a factor in translation

13.1 INTRODUCTION

It has become clear from issues raised in earlier chapters that different STs require different strategic priorities. In deciding which textual variables to prioritize, the translator has always to ask: what is the purpose of the ST, and what is the purpose of the TT? These questions imply two others: what kind of text is the ST, and what kind of text should the TT be? The texts we have used as examples and in practicals illustrate the importance of these questions in deciding a strategy.

At issue here is a fundamental consideration in translation: all texts are defined in terms of genre. By genre we mean what Hymes calls a 'type of communicative event' (quoted in Hervey 1992: 199) – that is, a category to which, in a given culture, a given text is seen to belong, and within which the text is seen to share a type of communicative purpose and effect with other texts. In this definition, the term also covers the traditionally identified genres of literature, and genres bearing what Baker calls 'institutionalized labels' such as 'journal article, 'science textbook', 'newspaper editorial', or 'travel brochure' (Baker 1992: 114).

The term **'text-type'** is often used in a similar sense to 'genre'. The best-known classification of text-types has been that of Katharina Reiss, who distinguishes three, each characterized by a different function of language – artistic and creative self-expression, conveying information, and persuading somebody to do something (Reiss [1977] 1989: 105–15). Snell-Hornby (1988) sees this classification as too limited, and suggests a much more complex 'prototypology' – certainly too complex for our purposes. Neubert and Shreve (1992: 125–35) also try to get round the problem with a concept of 'prototype'. Yet another classification is proposed by Hatim and Mason (1990: 153–8), who distinguish between argumentative, expository, and instructional text-

www.kaues.org

types, found functioning alongside one another as what amount to multiple texts within texts. (For a refined analysis of the argumentative text-type, with useful examples of conventional differences between Arabic and English argumentation, see Hatim and Mason 1997: 127–42.)

In all these taxonomies, a decisive factor in distinguishing text-type is the author's intention. This is something they have in common with genre as we have defined it. However, in foregrounding intention, rather than event, these writers may be laying less stress than we do on the text as outcome, perhaps implying that the author's purpose and the actual effect of the text coincide, or that, in respects where they do not, this does not matter. From the translation point of view, this in turn may imply a normative assumption that there are certain archetypal invariants that can and should be transferred without loss from ST to TL. However legitimate or illegitimate these possible inferences may be, the term 'text-type' is used so variously that we shall stick to 'genre', because the element of 'event' in its definition ensures that the definable qualities of a text are seen as together constituting the outcome of an attempt to realize a particular communicative purpose.

Most texts belong to a genre or genres. Some innovative texts arguably do not, when they first appear: but even these are defined by contrast with genres to which they do not belong. Innovative texts aside, one can say that any ST shares some of its properties with other texts of the same genre, and is perceived by an SL audience as being what it is on account of some genre-defining properties. Therefore, in order to assess the nature and purpose of the ST, the translator must have some sort of overview of genre-types in the source culture, and be familiar with the characteristics of relevant genres within those types.

What is true of SL texts is true of TL texts. Since the nature and purpose of a given text imply one another, the translator has to be as familiar with target-culture genre-types as with those of the source culture. Paying due attention to the nature and purpose of the TT guarantees a degree of TL bias which helps to prevent the excessive SL bias, or literalness, that so often defeats the stated or implied purpose of the TT.

Consider the following ST which is taken from a 'personal opinion' column by مصطفى أمين from الشرق الاوسط, 21 September 1982, and the two TTs which follow it (aspects of this have already been discussed in Ch. 5.2.1 and Ch. 11.5):

ST

في استطاعة أي حزب أن ينجح إذا دافع عن قضية الحرية وحقوق الإنسان، إذا احتضن كل مظلوم، إذا قاوم الفساد، إذا ضرب الأمثلة في القدوة الصالحة، إذا حوّل الكلمات إلى افعال والوعود إلى حقائق. كل حزب يقف إلى جانب الشعب يقف الشعب إلى جانبه يحيط به عندما تُوجَّه إلى ظهره الخناجر وإلى صدره المدافع والسيوف.

www.kaues.org

TT (a)

It is possible for any political party to succeed if it defends the issue of freedom and human rights, if it embraces every unjustly treated person, if it opposes corruption, if it sets the highest standards in upright behaviour, if it changes words into deeds and promises into facts. Every party which stands by the people will find that the people stand by it, surrounding it when daggers are aimed at its back and guns and swords at its front.

TT (b)

For any political party to succeed, it must be prepared to stand up for freedom of expression and human rights, to protect the weak, to oppose corruption, to set itself the highest standards, and to act according to these standards. Any party which supports and defends the people will find that it is supported and defended by the people.

Some of the ways in which TT (a) reads strangely have to do with features of meaning that correlate with formal differences between English and Arabic. Others, however, simply reflect the fact that the formal features of English in certain kinds of writing tend to be different from the formal features of Arabic, notably in respect of parallelism and metaphor. There is nothing in the linguistic structure of English which requires that the use of parallelism and metaphor in 'personal opinion' columns in English be different from their use in Arabic. It is simply conventional that writing of this kind in English does not make as dense use of these features as is normal in Arabic. In other kinds of writing – particularly in poetry – it would be much more normal for English to make wider use of them.

In translating a 'personal opinion' text of this kind, the translator has to bear in mind that the conventions of English for this kind of writing are rather different from those for Arabic. Assuming that the intention is to produce an idiomatic TT, the translator must attempt at least to modify the TT in the direction of more typical English-language forms, as in TT (b). Of course, it may not always be possible to achieve a TT which reads entirely like an original English text. For example, an attempt to produce an entirely natural-sounding English text might result in unacceptable loss of message content.

Since translators need to consider these genre-related questions before translating a text, it is useful for them to have a framework of broad genre-types. This will help them to identify salient generic characteristics of the ST, and to check the generic characteristics of the TT they are producing. We are not going to attempt an exhaustive typology of genres; that would be too elaborate for our purposes. In determining the genre of a text, the essential factor is the author's attitude to the treatment of the subject matter of the text. (We use 'author' to denote the originator of the text, whether it is oral or written.)

www.kaues.org

13.2 TREATMENT OF SUBJECT MATTER

Subject matter in itself is not a useful criterion for describing genres, because the same subject matter can figure in very different genres. What is at issue is the author's attitude, implicit or explicit, to treatment of the subject matter. This attitude also includes the *intention* that the text should have a particular sort of effect on the reader or listener, and an *acceptance* of the probability or improbability of this intention being completely achieved. On this basis, we shall distinguish five broad categories of genre, each corresponding to a traditional Western categorization.

The first category is that of literary genres. Literary genres have subdivided and diversified very greatly over the centuries. There are innumerable sub-genres of poetry, fiction and drama, each with its own characteristic style. However, all texts in this category have two essential features. First, they concern a world created autonomously in and through the texts themselves, and not controlled by the physical world outside. However close a literary text is to history or autobiography, it still approaches its subject matter by recreating experience in terms of a subjective internal world, which is fundamentally perceived as fictive, for all its similarities to the world outside the text. Second, whatever other characteristics they have, and whatever their subject matter, literary texts contain features of *expression*, on any level of textual variables, that emphasize, modify or actually create features of *content*.

In this respect consider the use of onomatopoeia and sound symbolism in the following (discussed in Ch. 4.1): تمتمة الشيوخ وبسملتهم وزقزقة النساء ودوامات الذكر .. Here the words تمتمة, زقزقة, and even بسملة are intrinsically onomatopoeic, while دوامات is not. However, placed in a parallelistic context involving تمتمة, بسملة and زقزقة, the word دوامات acquires a quasi-onomatopoeic status; the reader is led to interpret the دوامات not just in the sense of the whirlpool-movement of the Sufis, but also in the sense of whirlpools of sound.

With their reliance on suggestion – e.g. polysemy, connotation, analogy – literary genres illustrate very clearly the potential for discrepancy between intention and outcome: however carefully the author tries to control the reactions of the reader or listener, it is less possible than with most other genre-types to predict what effects the text will have. An acceptance of this is part of the literary author's attitude to treatment of subject matter.

The second category comprises religious genres. In terms of the author's attitude, the subject matter of religious texts implies the existence of a spiritual world that is not fictive, but has its own external realities and truths. The author is understood not to be free to create the world that animates the subject matter, but to be merely instrumental in exploring it. This category has perhaps diversified less than any of the others, but, certainly in the field of Christianity, it still has a wide range of styles, from Authorized Version to 'happy-clappy'.

www.kaues.org

In an Arabic and Islamic context, there is less diversity still, because of the dominance of فصحى التراث (cf. Ch. 12.3.1) in a religious context. However, even here, there will be linguistic differences between a religious text aimed at scholars and one aimed at the general public. And in the case of a sermon (خطبة) in a mosque, with a perhaps partially illiterate congregation, the preacher often makes some use of colloquial Arabic.

The third category comprises philosophical genres. These have as their subject matter a 'world' of ideas. Pure mathematics is the best example of the kind of subject matter that defines philosophical genres. Even in the field of metaphysics, however original the text, the author is understood not to be free to develop theoretical structures at will, but to be constrained by some standard of rationality. Philosophical genres have not proliferated as much as literary ones, but they are strikingly diverse nonetheless.

The fourth category is that of empirical genres. Genres in this category purport to deal with the real world as it is experienced by observers. An empirical text is more or less informative, and it is understood to take an objective view of observable phenomena. Scientific, technological and many scholarly texts fall into this category. It thus goes on diversifying into new genres and sub-genres as new scientific and academic disciplines are created.

Finally, there is the category of persuasive genres. The essence of these genres is that they aim at getting listeners or readers to behave in prescribed or suggested ways. This aim can be pursued through various means: we are classifying in a single category the entire gamut of texts from instruction manuals, through laws, rules and regulations, to propaganda leaflets, newspaper opinion columns and editorials, and advertisements. The indefinite number of genres and sub-genres in this category have a common purpose, that of getting an audience to take a certain course of action, and perhaps explaining how to take it.

13.3 ORAL AND WRITTEN TEXTS

Another factor in determining genre is the question of whether the text is oral or written. Each of the five genre-categories includes both oral and written texts. In practice, however, it is almost impossible not to distinguish an oral text as belonging to a discrete oral genre, and a written text as belonging to a discrete written genre, even where the texts share the same subject matter: the difference in medium generally entails a difference in attitude to treatment of the subject matter. A spoken خطبة about social problems in Egypt, a talk on the history of Arab nationalism, a tutorial explanation on quarks – each is a different genre from any kind of written reflection on the topic. A complicating factor is that many oral genres also involve written texts: songs, plays, sermons, lectures, a salesman's patter – all may be performed on the basis of a written text that is either read out, or spoken from memory, or used as the basis for

www.kaues.org

improvization. To get an idea of the significance of these factors for translation, it is helpful first to look at some of the specific characteristics of oral texts as distinct from written ones.

An oral text is in essence a fleeting and unrepeatable event. This has important implications. First, vocal utterance is usually accompanied by visual cues, such as gestures or facial expressions, that are secondary to it but do form part of the overall text and can play a role in creating its meaning. Second, on every level of textual variable, effective oral texts avoid information overload, elaborate cross-referencing, excessive speed, and so on, because these can make the text hard to follow. Naturally, in all these respects, what is true for oral STs is true for oral TTs as well.

A third implication of orality is the appearance of spontaneity that often characterizes oral texts. This goes not only for impromptu conversation or narrative, but also for prepared texts, such as memorized lines in a play. An oral text is always very different in nature and impact from even the most closely corresponding written version.

An awareness of these properties of oral texts is a necessary starting-point for translating an oral ST into an oral TT. Spoken communication has characteristics that are very much language-specific. Oral translation is not simply a matter of verbal transposition: the genre-related techniques of the target culture must be respected as well, including gestures, facial expressions, and so on. Translating a joke, for instance, will generally involve different genres from conference interpreting. Both, however, make it clear that an oral text in any genre is not only an utterance, but also a dramatic performance.

Except in most forms of interpreting (which is a specialized skill, and is not part of this course), translators actually do a great deal of their work in a written medium, even if it involves an oral text or texts. Inevitably, metamorphoses result from the crossover from written to oral and vice versa. These metamorphoses are essentially due to the fact that writing is such a pale copy of speech in terms of expressive force. Crossover in the process of translation may take a number of forms. We shall mention four.

In the first type of crossover, the translator starts with an oral ST, and then uses a written transcript to compose a TT which is on paper, but suitable for oral performance. Song lyrics are typically translated in this way. In the second type of crossover, the translator starts with a written ST, considers how it might be performed orally, and then composes a TT which is on paper, but suitable for oral performance: this is generally how plays are translated. Third, the translator may start with a written script, try out the ST orally, and then produce a TT suitable either for silent reading, or for oral performance, or for both. Poetry is usually translated like this. In the fourth type, a translator starts with an oral ST and its transcript, and produces a TT for silent reading: this is how film subtitles are generally produced.

www.kaues.org

Consideration of the two factors we mentioned at the outset – the author's attitude to treatment of the subject matter, and whether the text is an oral or a written one – concentrates the translator's mind on four groups of vital strategic questions. (1) What are the salient features of the ST? What do these features imply about its purpose? What genre or genres do the features and purpose suggest it belongs to? (2) Does the ST have recognizable genre-specific characteristics that require special attention? If so, which of them should be retained in translation? (3) What TL genre(s) provide a match for the ST genre? What do existing specimens of these TL genres suggest regarding formulation of the TT? (4) What genre(s) should the TT ultimately be couched in, and what genre-specific features should it have?

Two words of caution are needed here. First, it is easy for student translators to begin their strategic considerations something like this: 'This text belongs to genre A, therefore it has characteristics x, y and z.' This is putting the cart before the horse. It is much more useful to identify the text's characteristics first, and then, on that basis, to assign it to a genre. This results in a more sensitive appraisal of the true purpose of the text, which in turn makes it easier to be flexible and to recognize cases where, as very often happens, the ST actually has a blend of features – it may be predominantly typical of one genre, but also have features from other genres or even other genre categories. So, for example, instruction manuals may vary in character between the empirical and the persuasive categories. Advertising commonly shares features with literary texts, as do religious and philosophical texts. The same is true of some empirical texts, such as Goethe's scientific work in verse, or the ألفية of ابن مالك (d. 1273), which is a pedagogical text on Arabic grammar arranged in the form of 1000 poetic verses. Religious texts often share features with persuasive texts. Many legal or administrative texts – contracts or memoranda of agreement, for instance – combine empirical and persuasive genre-features. Texts often contain quotations from texts that belong to other genres.

Such 'hybridization' in genre is common in journalism, and in parody and satire, which can make wholesale use of a mixture of features from various genre categories. Such blends may theoretically constitute sub-genres, but that is not our concern: our aim here is to encourage and enable students to isolate the salient features and the purpose of an ST, so that they can relate these to the purpose of the TT and thus be in a position to develop an appropriate translation strategy on the basis of these things.

The second word of caution is that it is absolutely essential for translators to be familiar with the characteristic features of the TL genre or genres that they decide correspond most closely to the ST genre(s). If in doubt, examine sample texts from the chosen TL genre before starting the translation. Professional translators tend to specialize in particular fields, and one of the first things they do is acquire an awareness of relevant TL genre characteristics.

www.kaues.org

PRACTICAL 13

Practical 13.1 Genre

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate this text for an English-language newspaper published in Kuwait to appear very shortly after the original article. The intended readership is English-speaking expatriate workers in Kuwait. The readership is naturally expected to have a general, practical knowledge of Kuwait and to be highly aware of the incident, but not to have any specialist expertise in the issues being discussed.

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Explain the decisions of detail which you made, especially those which have a bearing on genre.

Contextual information

This text is from the Kuwaiti newspaper, الوطن, 18 April 1988. It relates to an incident in 1988 when Iranian-backed gunmen hijacked a Kuwaiti aircraft and demanded the release of 17 pro-Iranian prisoners from a Kuwaiti jail.

ST

اختطاف الطائرة .. اختطاف العقل

بقلم: د. احمد الربعي

لا خيار امام الكويتيين سوى الوحدة والتلاحم في وجه الارهاب الاسود. وليس امامنا اختيار سوى رفض كل الشروط التي وضعها مختطفو الطائرة الكويتية ورفض مجرد مناقشة هذه الشروط..!! فالاستسلام للارهاب مرة يعني الاستسلام له كل مرة، وهو أمر لا نقبل حتى مناقشته .

نعرف الحزن الذي يلف عائلات المختطفين، نعرف معاناة الابناء الذين ينتظرون امهاتهم وأباءهم والذين كانوا يستعدون للذهاب الى المطار لاستقبال احبابهم، نعرف حجم المعاناة، بل ونعيشها جميعا، فكل المختطفين هم ابناؤنا وآباؤنا وامهاتنا ..!! كل بيوت الكويت تعيش المأساة اللاإنسانية التي خلقتها عملية الارهاب الاسود ضد الطائرة الكويتية ولكننا مع كل الحزن نحتاج الى شيء من الحزم والوعي بطبيعة المسألة. فأبناؤنا الذين اختطفوا يدفعون ثمنا لا بد ان ندفعه من اجل ان نستمر متمسكين بالقانون وباحترام القضاء وبحق المذنب في الدفاع عن نفسه . ومجرد التفكير بالتنازل للارهاب يعني تنازلاً

www.kaues.org

عن كل نظامنا القضائي وعن كل تقاليد الحضارة المعاصرة التي اقرها دستور بلادنا !! .

Practical 13.2 Genre

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate the text as a piece of literary writing for inclusion in an anthology of Modern Arabic short stories, aimed at an educated English-speaking audience with only a general knowledge of the Arab world.

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Explain the decisions of detail you made in producing your translation, paying particular attention to generic issues.

Contextual information

This is the beginning of a short story entitled الشيخ شيخة (إدريس n.d.*a*: 15) from the collection آخر الدنيا by يوسف إدريس.

ST

الشيخ شيخة

بلاد الله واسعة وكثيرة ، وكل بلدة فيها ما يكفيها .. كبار وصغار ، وصبيان وأناث ، أناس وعائلات ، ومسلمون وأقباط ، وملك واسع تنظمه قوانين وتقض مضاجعه قوانين ، وأحيانا يخرج للقاعدة شاذ ، كالحال في بلدنا الذي ينفرد دون بلاد الله بهذا الكائن الحي الذي يحيا فيه ، والذي لا يمكن وضعه مع أناس بلدنا وخلقها ، ولا يمكن وضعه كذلك مع حيواناتها . وأيضا ليس هو الحلقة المفقودة بينهما .. كائن قائم بذاته لا اسم له ، أحيانا ينادونه بالشيخ محمد وأحيانا بالشيخة فاطمة، ولكنها أحيان وللسهولة ليس إلا ، فالحقيقة أنه ظل بلا اسم ولا أب ولا أم، ولا أحد يعرف من أين جاء ولا من أورثه ذلك الجسد المتين البنيان .. أما أن له ملامح بشرية فقد كانت له ملامح ، كانت له عينان وأذنان وأنف ويمشي على ساقين .. ولكن المشكلة أن ملامحه تلك كانت تتخذ أوضاعا غير بشرية بالمرة ، فرقبته مثلا تميل على أحد كتفيه في وضع أفقي كالنبات حين تدوسه القدم في صغره فينمو زاحفا على الأرض يحاذيها ، وعيناه دائما عين منهما نصف مغلقة ، وعين مطبقة . ولم يحدث مرة أن ضيق هذه أو وسع تلك . وذراعاه تسقطان من كتفيه بطريقة تحس معها أنهما لا علاقة لها ببقية جسده ، كأنهما ذراعا جلباب مغسول ومعلق ليجف .

www.kaues.org

14
Translating technical texts

14. 1 INTRODUCTION

All texts can be characterized in terms of genre. Therefore there is no a priori reason for giving special attention to any one genre rather than any other. However, since most language students are not trained in a technical specialism, they are often in awe of more or less 'technical' texts. This is why we are devoting a whole chapter to the main translation issues they raise.

The term 'technical' is not confined to natural science and technology. Any specialist field has its own technical terms and its own genre-marking characteristics: a look at a hobbies magazine, a review of the rock scene, or the City pages and the sports section of the paper, is enough to confirm this. Texts in these and any other specialized fields are properly speaking 'technical' texts. It is simply to avoid repeating the cumbersome 'natural-scientific and technological' that we shall be applying the term 'technical' to texts written in the context of natural-scientific or technological disciplines.

14.2 LEXICAL PROBLEMS IN TECHNICAL TRANSLATION

By definition, technical texts tend to be relatively inaccessible to the non-specialist reader. There are both lexical and conceptual reasons for this inaccessibility. Lexical problems arise from the use of the following three types of ST terms:

1. Technical terms which are totally unfamiliar to the lay translator, because they are only used in technical contexts;
2. Technical terms which are familiar to the translator because they are also used in non-technical contexts, but which look as if they are being used in

www.kaues.org

some technically specialized way in the ST;

3. Technical terms which are familiar to the translator because they are also used in non-technical contexts, but which do not obviously look as if they are being used in some technically specialized way in the ST.

All three of these lexical reasons can be illustrated from the following text, which is taken from a Syrian medical textbook, with following English translation (adapted from Al-Muhammad 1993: 205–9). Relevant lexical items have been placed in curly brackets; the superscript number before the closing bracket refers to the type of problem (1–3), as identified above, and the symbol ø is used to indicate translation by omission:

ST

الاختبارات الجلدية

وهي ضرورية ومفيدة لدراسة وكشف بعض الإصابات الجلدية {الأرجية[1]}. يلجأ الى هذه الاختبارات لتعيين وتحديد المواد {المحسسة[1]} أو الضارة، كما هي الحال في أكزيما {التماس[2]} وخاصة {المهنية[2]} وفي {الشرى[1]} {المعاند[1]} وفي {الأرج[1]} الغذائي أو الدوائي وفي حالات {التحسس[1]} بـ{الجراثيم[3]} و{الفطور[2]} و{الخميرات[2]} ومفرزاتها.

التفاعلات الجلدية

وهي قائمة على اختبار {تحسس[2]} خلايا طبقات الجلد كلها. {البشروية[1]} و{الأدمية[1]} (خلايا {مالبيكي[1]} و{خلايا الأدمة[3]} و{المادة الاساسية[2]}).

طريقة التطبيق

يُنظَّف الجلد {بالأثير[3]} ويُنشَّف {يُخدَش[3]} بـ{نصيلة[1]} التلقيح «{فاكسينوستيل[1]}» شريطة ألا ينزف. ثم توضع المادة المراد اختبارها فوق {الخدش[3]} (كما هي الحال في لقاح الجدري) ويفضَّل أن يُجرى قريبًا من هذا {الخدش[3]} {شاهد[2]} خال من المادة المراد اختبارها. وتُقرأ النتيجة بعد ٢٤ أو ٤٨ ساعة.

TT

Skin tests

These tests are necessary for the study and investigation of some {allergic[1]} skin reactions. They are conducted in order to specify and diagnose the {allergenic[1]} or harmful substances, as for example in the case of {contact[2]} eczema, especially {occupational[2]}, in {chronic[2]} {urticaria[1]}, and in food or drug {allergies[1]}, or in {sensitivities[1]} to {bacteria[3]}, {fungi[2]}, or {yeasts[2]} and their products.

www.kaues.org

Cutaneous reactions
These reactions are built on the {sensitivity[1]} of all skin layers, i.e. both {epidermal[1]} and {dermal[1]} layers ({Malpighian[1] cells}, and {intradermal cells[3]}and the {basal cell layer[2]}).

Methodology
First the skin is cleaned with {spirit[3]} and dried, then a {scratch[3]} is made using a {ø[1]} {vaccinostyle[1]} so that no bleeding is caused. Then, the substance which is to be tested is applied to the {scratch[3]} (as in a smallpox vaccination). Simultaneously, a {control[2]} test should be carried out close to the area of the {scratch[3]}. The result is read after 24 or 48 hours.

There are a fair number of Type 1 lexical problems in the ST. Examples are:

ST	*TT*	*Additional notes*
الأرجية	allergic	
المحسسة	allergenic	
الشرى	urticaria	
المعاند	chronic	
الأرج	allergies	
التحسس	sensitivity	
البشروية	epidermal	Wehr gives بَشَرة as meaning 'outer skin, epidermis; cuticle; skin; complexion'; a translator might, therefore, be able to guess that بشروي is a technical term for 'epidermal' in this context.
الأدمية	dermal	Although أدمي is not given by Wehr, أدَم and أدَمة are given in the sense of 'skin'. The reference is to the layers that constitute the dermis (skin) itself.
مالبكي	Malpighian	A specialist term that can only be discovered from specialist sources.
نصيلة	ø	The phrase نصيلة التلقيح is used as a gloss, meaning the same as 'vaccinostyle'. نصيلة is not given in Wehr.
فاكسينوستيل	vaccinostyle	

Examples of Type 2 lexical problems are the following:

ST	*TT*	*Additional notes*
التماسّ	contact	Wehr gives تَماسّ as meaning '(mutual) contact'; 'contact eczema' is a technical term for eczema contracted through contact with certain substances, e.g. nickel, rubber.

www.kaues.org

المهنية	occupational	Wehr gives مهني as meaning 'professional, vocational'; while not strictly a technical term, 'occupational' seems a more appropriate adjective to apply to eczema contracted in a work environment.
الفطور	fungi	Both 'fungi' and 'mushrooms' are given by Wehr as translations of فطر. (Wehr does not in fact list the plural form فطور, but the translator could probably guess this.) The translator would need to be aware here, however, that the hyperonym 'fungi' is intended here, rather than the hyponym 'mushrooms'.
الخميرات	enzymes	'Leaven; ferment; barm, yeast; enzyme' are all given by Wehr as translations of خميرة. (Wehr does not in fact list the plural form خميرات, but the translator could probably guess this). The translator would need to be aware that 'yeasts' is intended here, rather than 'enzymes', for example.
المادة الأساسية	basal cell layer	'Basal cell layer' is a technical term to denote the deepest cell layer of the dermis.
شاهد	control	Wehr lists شاهد in its standard non-technical sense of 'witness', but not in the technical sense of 'control' (in an experiment). Cf. also خال من المادة المراد اختبارها, subsumed under sense of 'control test'.

Type 3 lexical problems are the most dangerous, because the translator can easily fail to recognize the term as a technical one, and mistakenly render it in its ordinary sense. The following terms, all found in Wehr, are actually used here in a technical sense which is not immediately apparent in the context.

ST	*TT*	*Additional note*
الجراثيم	bacteria	'Bacteria' is a technical term; 'germs' is an imprecise lay term.
خلايا الأدمة	intradermal cells	The gloss for أدمة given in Wehr, 'skin', could well mislead the translator here into thinking the term أدمة is being used in a standard non-technical way. (Although the

www.kaues.org

		astute translator should perhaps have guessed that this is a technical usage from the use of الأدمية as contrasted with البشروية earlier in the same sentence.)
الأثِير	spirit	Wehr gives أثير to mean 'ether'.
يخدش	scratch	Wehr gives خدش as meaning 'scratch, scratch mark; graze, abrasion'. The term is used here in the sense of 'scratch', a specific technique used in vaccination and skin tests.
الخدش	scratch	See previous note.

14.3 CONCEPTUAL PROBLEMS IN TECHNICAL TRANSLATION

Conceptual problems in technical translation arise from ignorance of underlying knowledge taken for granted by experts, but not understood by non-specialists and not explicit in the ST. Here are three examples from the Syrian medical text.

الاختبارات الجلدية	skin tests	The standard term in English is 'skin tests'. A form such as 'cutaneous tests' conveys the sense in English but is not the normal form used; it would suggest a translator who is not sure of the field.
الأرج الغذائي	food allergy	Wehr gives غذائي as meaning 'alimental, alimentary, nutritional, nutritious, nutritive'. A form such as 'nutritional allergy' is at best ambiguous, but would certainly suggest a non-specialist translator.
[الأرج] الدوائي	drug [allergy]	Wehr gives دوائي as meaning 'medicinal, medicative, curative' (دواء is listed as meaning 'remedy, medicament, medication, medicine, drug'). 'Medicinal/curative allergy' amounts to a contradiction in terms, and implies a translator ignorant of the field.

As these examples suggest, conceptual problems are the most intractable of all those that face the technical translator. Non-specialists are always likely to reach a conceptual impasse from which no amount of attention to syntax or vocabulary can rescue them. In that case they have only two options: to learn the concepts of the field in which they wish to translate, or work in

www.kaues.org

close consultation with experts. In practice, trainee translators generally do both these things, quickly becoming experts themselves with the help of specialist supervisors.

14.4 LEGALITY AND ACCURACY

These remarks about the need for consultation are not to be taken lightly. They raise the important question of the responsibility – and perhaps the legal liability – of the translator. There is a difference here between literary translation and technical translation. It is not that literary translators are not held responsible for their work, but the implications of mistranslation are generally less serious for them than for technical translators, where one mistake could cause financial damage or loss of life and limb. This is another respect in which technical translation is exemplary, bringing out extremely clearly a golden rule which is in fact essential to all translation: never be too proud or embarrassed to ask for help or advice.

The spectre of legal liability is a reminder that even the minutest error of detail on any level of textual variables is typically magnified in a technical text. A good example is the danger of confusing closely similar technical names in chemistry. Consider how similar are some of the prefixes and suffixes that can be attached to the root 'sulph', and how many possible permutations of them there are:

per- bi- de- hypo- hydro-	{ sulph }	-ate -ide -ite -onate

Obviously, the slightest error in affixation here will be a major factual error, whereas, in non-technical language, affixation may sometimes be a matter of style. For instance, there is generally little difference in practice between 'disbelieving' and 'unbelieving', or between 'inexcusable' and 'unexcusable', while 'dissociate' and 'disassociate' are synonyms of one another. In literary texts, the choice between affixes can often be based on euphony or style. But with technical terms in specialist texts of any kind, that temptation must be resisted absolutely.

Some parts of technical texts may be formulated in mathematical symbols. These normally need minimal effort in translation, although they cannot always be literally transcribed. Careful attention must be paid to any differences between SL and TL conventions. For example, where English has a decimal point in figures, Arabic has a comma.

www.kaues.org

The technical translator's paramount concerns, then, are accuracy and conformity with the requirements of genre. In so far as the requirements of genre imply style, register is also important: the wrong tonal register may alienate the reader and undermine confidence in the TT; the wrong social register may misrepresent a social persona that the ST author has been at pains to project.

The relationship between accuracy and style is not always straightforward, however. If an ST is badly written or ungrammatical, should these infelicities be reflected in the TT, or should they be ironed out? This is a general and controversial issue. In our view, translators are not in principle responsible for 'improving' defective STs. However, this is sometimes necessary with technical texts (as indeed with any purely informative text), because the crucial thing is factual accuracy. If there is any potentially misleading or dangerous ambiguity or obscurity in the ST, there is every reason to keep it out of the TT – if necessary after consultation with the author or an expert.

14.5 GENERIC FEATURES OF ENGLISH TECHNICAL TEXTS

Before embarking on the Practical, it will be useful to sharpen awareness of technical genres by noting some of the characteristics of technical texts in English. We shall take as an example text a British medical text on bacillary dysentery (Al-Muhammad 1993: 181–2).

> **Bacillary dysentery**
> The bacilli belong to the genus *Shigella* of which there are three main pathogenic groups, *dysenteriae*, *flexneri*, and *sonnei*, the first two having numerous serotypes. In Britain the majority of cases of bacillary dysentery are caused by *Shigella sonnei* although in recent years there has been a significant increase in imported infections caused by *Sh. flexneri* whereas sonnei dysentery has decreased.
>
> **Epidemiology**
> Bacillary dysentery is endemic all over the world. It occurs in epidemic form wherever there is a crowded population with poor sanitation, and thus has been a constant accompaniment of wars and natural catastrophes.
>
> Spread may occur by contaminated food or flies but contact through unwashed hands after defecation is by far the most important factor. Hence the modern provision of hand basins, disposable towels and hot air driers goes a long way towards the prevention of the faecal-oral spread of disease.
>
> Outbreaks occur in mental hospitals, residential schools and other closed institutions. The disease is notifiable in Britain.
>
> **Pathology**
> There is inflammation of the large bowel which may involve the lower part of the small intestine.

www.kaues.org

Sigmoidoscopy shows that the mucosa is red and swollen, the submucous veins are obscured and the mucopus is seen on the surface. Bleeding points appear readily at the touch of the endoscope. Ulcers may form.

Clinical features
There is great variety in severity. Sonne infections may be so mild as to escape detection and the patient remains ambulant with a few loose stools and perhaps a little colic. Flexner infections are usually more severe while those due to dysenteriae may be fulminating and cause death within 48 hours. In a moderately severe illness, the patient complains of diarrhoea, colicky abdominal pain and tenesmus.

The stools are usually small, and after the first few evacuations, contain blood and purulent exudate with little faecal material. There is frequently fever, with dehydration and weakness if the diarrhoea persists.

On examination there will be tenderness over the colon more easily elicited in the left iliac fossa. In sonne infection the patient may develop a febrile illness and diarrhoea may be mild or even absent; there is usually some headache and muscular aching. Arthritis or iritis may occasionally complicate bacillary dysentery as in Reiter's disease. Diagnosis depends on culture of faeces.

The following are typical features of technical texts in English:

1. The language is usually informative. Thus, although the *Bacillary dysentery* text deals with a rather nasty and potentially fatal disease, there is little in it which expresses the emotional feelings of the writer towards the disease. As Pinchuk notes, 'the controlled language of science is manipulated in the direction of insipidity and colourlessness' (Pinchuk 1977: 165). Perhaps the only phrase in the text with some emotional charge is 'a constant accompaniment of wars and natural catastrophes', in section 2. Here an emotional effect is achieved – whether deliberately or not – by the rhythm of the phrase, and alliteration and assonance.
2. An impersonal style is used. Accordingly, the following features are likely to be encountered:
   a. The subjects of sentences are likely to be abstract. Thus, in section 2 of the *Bacillary dysentery* text, the subjects of the sentences are: 'Bacillary dysentery', 'It' (used to refer back to 'Bacillary dysentery' in sentence 1), 'Spread', 'the modern provision', 'Outbreaks', 'The disease'.
   b. The passive is likely to be extensively used. Thus in section 1 of *Bacillary dysentery*, we find 'are caused by' and 'caused by'. In section 3, we find 'is seen' and 'are obscured'. There are also many examples of verbs which are passive-like in *Bacillary dysentery*, in that their subjects are not the agents (or 'doers') of an action, as is typical of subjects of active verbs in English. Examples in section 1 are 'belong to', 'has been'; in section 2 'occur(s)' (three times); in section 3 'involve', 'appear', 'may form'. In accounts of experiments or research

www.kaues.org

programmes, the passive is used extensively. The use of passive or passive-like verbs focuses attention on the effect or result rather than on the person performing the action.

4. Where texts involve procedures performed by human beings in particular, formulations of cause and effect are normal, reflecting the importance of the logic and development of such texts. Cause and effect formulations may include connectives such as 'consequently', 'hence' and 'thus', verbs such as 'cause', 'determine' and 'result in', and the use of 'by + -ing' to signal method. There are some examples in the *Bacillary dysentery* text: in section 1 'caused by', 'are caused by'; in section 2 'thus', 'hence'; and in section 4 'due to', 'cause'. However, in general, *Bacillary dysentery* follows a pattern more typical of purely descriptive technical texts, in which sentences begin with subjects, and relations between sentences are often not marked by any connectives.

   As a rule, technical translation into English requires economy of language, precision and clarity, and clear use of standard cohesion markers, such as 'moreover', 'likewise', 'however', etc.
5. Nominalization is common. There are numerous examples in the *Bacillary dysentery* text, including: in section 1 '[a significant] increase' (contrast the use of 'decreased' later in the same section); in section 2 'population', 'accompaniment', 'spread', 'provision', 'Outbreaks'. As Pinchuk notes, 'The nominalized style is easier to write and its impersonality avoids commitment to tense, unlike the conversational style' (Pinchuk 1977: 165).
6. Compound nouns are also a feature of many technical texts. Examples in the *Bacillary dysentery* text: in section 1 'sonnei dysentery'; in section 2 'hand basins', 'hot air driers' (cf. also 'oral-faecal spread'); in section 3 'bleeding points'; in section 4 'Sonne infections'.

14.6 INFORMATION SOURCES

Pinchuk (1977: 246–51) points out that before embarking on a translation it is important to ascertain whether the work has already been translated. He provides a list of organizations which have registers of available translations, including Aslib (The Association of Special Libraries and Information Bureaux). And of course technical translation, like translation in any genre, requires familiarity with ST and TL material of a similar type, to serve as a source of information and as a stylistic model. Translators may well need some time to find the information (e.g. concepts or lexis) they are seeking. Useful sources of information include monographs, abstracting and indexing journals, encyclopedias, standards and trade journals, theses, and dissertations. Most of these sources are available in paper form, but increasingly electronic sources, such as material on the World Wide Web, are coming to be used for

www.kaues.org

up-to-date technical information. Some organizations, like the European Commission, keep databases containing centrally agreed translations of technical expressions. These databases are continually added to, and translators are expected to conform to the agreed renderings, in the interests of organization-wide consistency and clarity. Other sources may be found in specific countries. An example is the Saudi-based BASIM (البنك العربي السعودي للمصطلحات).

An examination of technical translations reveals that, apart from the lexical, conceptual and stylistic problems outlined above, technical translation is not essentially different from most other sorts of prose translation: as long as specialist help can be called on, there is no reason why anyone should not confidently tackle technical translation in any field.

PRACTICAL 14

Practical 14.1 Translation of technical terms

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate this article for a pilot English-language version of العربي magazine, aimed mainly at expatriate English speakers working in the Middle East.

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Explain the decisions of detail which you made in producing your TT, especially those relating to technical questions.

Contextual information

The article, written by امين حامد مشعل and entitled مستقبل الارض, comes from a 1993 edition (no. 418) of the Kuwaiti magazine العربي, which is aimed at the general educated reader and covers cultural and scientific topics. This is not a piece of technical translation. However, the text contains some technical and semi-technical environmental terms, and therefore provides practice in dealing with lexical problems related to technical translation.

The Arabic text begins in mid-sentence. It is talking about an environmental programme drawn up at the 1992 earth summit in Rio de Janeiro in Brazil, designed to involve local communities in sustainable development. Begin your translation with a new sentence, starting 'This programme is designed to run [...]'. The phrase على أن which begins the second clause on line 1 of the text has the sense 'although', 'however'. The text is taken from Evans (1996: 13).

www.kaues.org

ST

[...] وذلك خلال الفترة ١٩٩٣ – ٢٠٠٠، على أن يمتد هذا البرنامج بعد ذلك للقرن الواحد والعشرين. ولذلك فقد اشتهرت تسميته بـ«جدول أعمال ٢١» أو «أجندة ٢١»، وهي عبارة عن خطة عمل تقع في ٨٠٠ صفحة للخطوات المطلوبة عملها تجاه المشاكل البيئية والتنموية الملحة التي تواجه الأرض، والتي تشمل على سبيل المثال ظاهرة تزايد الدفء العالمي، وإزالة الغابات، واضمحلال طبقة الاوزون فضلا عن مشاكل الفقر والتنمية في العالم. وكان من أهداف المؤتمر وضع حلول لهذه المشاكل والعمل على حماية وإدارة الموارد الطبيعية للأرض، وصون التنوع البيولوجي بها، وتشجيع استعمال التكنولوجيا البيولوجية التي لا تضر بالبيئة [...]

Practical 14.2 Technical translation

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate the text for English-speaking doctors who are working on a development project in Syria which involves practical in-service training of Syrian health workers. The Syrian health workers have studied the ST as part of their training, and the English doctors require an English translation in order to help them assess what the health workers know.

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Explain the decisions of detail which you made in producing your TT, concentrating on those relating to technical questions; you should also write brief notes on any expressions whose translation you are not sure about, explaining what the problem is.

(iv) After class discussion of the exercise, discuss the differences between your TT and that of an expert, which will be given you by your tutor.

Contextual information

This text is taken from a medical textbook used at the University of Damascus (from Al-Muhammad 1993: 233–5). You may find it useful to refer to the text entitled *Bacillary dysentery*, in § 14.5.

www.kaues.org

ST

الزحار العصوي

مرض إنتاني يمتاز تشريحيا بالتهاب الأمْعاء الغليظة يسببه عُصَيَّات من نوع «شيغلا» وتدخل الى الجسم بالطريق المعدي المعوي بواسطة الطعام والماء والأصابع الملوثة. وتنطرح الجراثيم بعدد وافر أثناء الدور الحاد للمرض مع البراز السائل. وقد يكون ذلك خلال دور النقاهة وحتى بعد شفاء المريض تماماً وقد يظهر الزحار بشكل وبائي حيث يتجمع الناس وتنعدم الشروط الصحية والنظافة. وتساعد شروط الطقس الحار في البلاد الاستوائية على انتشار المرض بواسطة الذباب.

الصفحة السريرية

آلام بطنية شديدة، ترفع حروري، زحير، ويظهر الاسهال خلال بضع ساعات من بدء المرض، ويكون البراز سائلاً باديْ الامر إلا أنه يصبح مائياً بسرعة، ويترافق بموادّ مخاطية وقيحية، وفي بعض الأحيان يكون مُدمّى. وقد يشتدّ الاسهال ويتكرّر ليحوي فقط مواد مخاطية دموية تسمى بـ«القشع الزحاري» وتسوء الحالة العامة إذا ما استمر الاسهال، وللمرض حالات خفيفة وشديدة. يتم التشخيص بفحص البراز، وتنظير المستقيم الذي يوضّح وجود وَذْمة والتهاب في المستقيم مع تقرحات واسعة متقطعة إنما سطحية.

www.kaues.org

15

Translating constitutional texts

15.1 DEFINITION

By a constitution we mean an agreed set of principles and rules by which an organization is run. Constitutional texts are thus a sub-type of legal or quasi-legal text, and include all kinds of constitutions, ranging from those of international organizations and states to those of sports and social clubs. They also include communiques, statements, etc. which have the general form of constitutions, as described below. Constitutional texts therefore offer an accessible introduction to some of the more general problems of legal translation.

15.2 GENERAL STRUCTURE

Typical constitutional texts can be divided into two parts: an optional preamble, followed by the main text.

15.2.1 Preamble

The preamble does not form part of the constitution as such, and therefore does not have the same legal status as the constitution itself. However, it presents the rationale for and/or situation of the proclamation of the constitution. The normal Arabic translation of 'Preamble' is المقدمة. It is common in English to have a preamble without a title line 'Preamble'. The Constitution of the United States, for example, begins 'WE THE PEOPLE OF THE UNITED STATES, IN ORDER TO FORM A MORE PERFECT UNION [...]'. The Constitution of India, by contrast, uses the title 'PREAMBLE'

www.kaues.org

followed by the opening statement, '*We, the People of India*, having solemnly resolved to constitute India into a *Sovereign Democratic Republic* [...]'.

Preambles often begin with a first-person plural subject 'We' followed by a parenthetical statement of who is making the constitution. The United States constitution, for example, has as its preamble:

> WE THE PEOPLE OF THE UNITED STATES, IN ORDER TO FORM A MORE PERFECT UNION, ESTABLISH JUSTICE, INSURE DOMESTIC TRANQUILITY, PROVIDE FOR THE COMMON DEFENSE, PROMOTE THE GENERAL WELFARE, AND SECURE THE BLESSINGS OF LIBERTY TO OURSELVES AND OUR POSTERITY, DO ORDAIN AND ESTABLISH THIS CONSTITUTION FOR THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

The preamble to the Indian Constitution is as follows:

> *We, the People of India*, having solemnly resolved to constitute India into a *Sovereign Democratic Republic* and to secure to all its citizens:
> *Justice*, social, economic and political;
> *Liberty* of thought, expression, belief, faith and worship;
> *Equality* of status and opportunity;
> and to promote among them all
> *Fraternity* assuring the dignity of the individual and the unity of the Nation;
> *In our Constituent Assembly* this twenty-sixth day of November, 1949, do *hereby Adopt, Enact and Give to Ourselves this Constitution.*

The Jordanian Constitution is introduced by the following (which is perhaps technically not to be regarded as a preamble, having rather the form of a royal decree commanding the putting into effect of the constitution: this is known in Arabic as a ديباجة):

نحن طلال الاول ملك المملكة الاردنية الهاشمية
بمقتضى المادة الخامسة والعشرين من الدستور وبناء
على ما قرره مجلسا الاعيان والنواب نصدق على
الدستور المعدل الآتي ونأمر بإصداره

The English translation of this reads:

We Talal the First
King of the Hashemite Kingdom of Jordan
In accordance with Article 25 of the Constitution,
and in pursuance of the resolution of
the Senate and House of Deputies,
do hereby give my assent to
this revised Constitution
and command that it be put into effect

www.kaues.org

All three of these texts employ a number of devices which are typical of preambles. The main verb plus other elements dependent on the main verb are placed at the end of the preamble, while the middle section of the preamble consists of subordinate phrases (in some cases subordinate clauses). Preambles typically involve forms of structural parallelism.

Thus, in the American constitution there is a series of verb-object (or verb-prepositional phrase) pairs in which the object is further defined (in most cases by an adjective, and in one case by a genitive 'of'-phrase): i.e. (i) 'form a more perfect union'; (ii) 'insure domestic tranquility'; (iii) 'provide for the common defense'; (iv) 'promote the general welfare'; (v) 'secure the blessings of liberty'.

Arabic preambles may also contain subordinate phrases, such as the phrases بمقتضى المادة الخامسة والعشرين من الدستور وبناء على ما قرره مجلسا الاعيان والنواب in the Jordanian example. Arabic materials of this kind may also contain combinations of subordinate clauses and complete sentences. The following is from a preamble to a Christian-Muslim summit in Lebanon at the start of the period of the Lebanese civil war:

كان من عناية الله على لبنان وعلى ابنائه ان وفق رؤساء الطوائف اللبنانية بعقد الاجتماع الاول من اجتماعاتهم في جلستين ، الصباحية في بكركي والمسائية في دار الفتوة الاسلامية.

{وقد تدارسوا المآسي الرهيبة} التي تسود البلاد والاخطار التي تهدد وحدتها واستقلالها وسلامة أبنائها وتعرض سلامة البلدان العربية الشقيقة والقضية الفلسطينية للخطر الكبير.

{ولاحظوا ان هذه المآسي} بدأت تأخذ في صورة متزايدة طابعا طائفيا فتحصل اعتداءات اثيمة على الابرياء وتجاوزات على الكنائس والمساجد وعلى رجال الدين باسم الدين والدين منها براء. ومن هنا فإن الخطر بات يهدد كيان لبنان وطابعه الحضاري المميز.

{وبعد البحث المسؤول في هذه الاوضاع} عقدوا العزم على متابعة اجتماعاتهم المشتركة في سائر بيوت الطوائف اللبنانية ووضعوا مخطط عمل وشكلوا هيئة للمتابعة واصدروا في نهاية اليوم الاول البيان الاتي:

As the material put in curly brackets indicates, the Arabic text utilizes a combination of main verbs (main clauses) and subordinate phrases to pick out the main points of importance in this 'preamble' section. The following are the start of main clauses: وقد تدارسوا المآسي الرهيبة (paragraph 2); ولاحظوا ان هذه المآسي (paragraph 3). The final paragraph, by contrast, begins with a subordinate phrase: وبعد البحث المسؤول في هذه الاوضاع (paragraph 4).

www.kaues.org

Here is a possible English translation of this extract:

> Through God's providential concern for Lebanon and its people, the leaders of the Lebanese confessional groups have been led to hold the first of their meetings in two sessions, a morning session in Bakirki and an afternoon session in the Islamic Dar Al-Futuwwa.
>
> {Having given careful consideration to the tragic events} which have befallen the country, and the dangers which not only jeopardize its unity and independence, and the well-being of its citizens, but also pose a grave threat to other Arab states and to the Palestinian cause:
>
> {Having noted that these events} have started to become increasingly sectarian in nature, that outrages have been perpetrated against innocent people, and that sacrilegious attacks have been carried out in the name of religion against churches and mosques and men of religion, thus threatening Lebanon's political structure and its unique cultural constitution:
>
> {Having discussed this situation in a responsible manner}, and {having determined to pursue their joint meetings in the centres of the various Lebanese confessional groups}, they do hereby draw up a plan of action and establish a monitoring committee, and at the end of their first day of meetings, issue the following statement:

The English translation involves greater use of parallel subordinate clauses than the Arabic original. The main verb phrase beginning paragraph 2 in the Arabic وقد تدارسوا المآسي الرهيبة is transferred into the English subordinate phrase 'Having given careful consideration to the tragic events' (paragraph 2). The main verb phrase beginning paragraph 3 in the Arabic ولاحظوا ان هذه المآسي is transferred into the English subordinate phrase 'Having noted that these events' (paragraph 3). The Arabic subordinate phrase beginning paragraph 4 وبعد البحث المسؤول is retained as a subordinate phrase 'Having discussed this situation in a responsible manner' (paragraph 4). However, the subsequent Arabic main verb phrase وعقدوا العزم على متابعة اجتماعاتهم المشتركة (paragraph 4) is also converted in the English translation into a subordinate phrase 'having determined to pursue their joint meetings', with the result that the verb of the main clause does not occur in the English translation until 'they do hereby draw up a plan of action', i.e. the translation of the Arabic ووضعوا مخطط عمل (paragraph 4). That is to say, from the second paragraph onwards everything before this in the English translation is some part of a subordinate clause; and the second to fourth paragraphs of the translation constitute three parallel subordinate clauses (with further forms of parallelism within each).

As the previous example suggests, it seems more necessary in English than in Arabic to maintain a structure in preambles either of the type:

1. SUBJECT – SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS – MAIN CLAUSE (as exemplified in the American Constitution)

or of the type:

www.kaues.org

2. SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS – MAIN CLAUSE (as exemplified in the English translation of بيان القمة المسيحية الاسلامية)

Arabic texts may have a preamble which involves a series of subordinate elements followed by a main clause. A good example is the following, which is the beginning of a proclamation issued by عزيز الاحدب the Commander of the Beirut Region and 'Provisional Military Ruler' of Lebanon on 11 March 1976.

{انقاذا لوحدة الجيش واعادة اللحمة الى العسكريين} و{انقاذا للوضع المتدهور في البلاد}.
و{لما كانت تحذيراتي قد ذهبت ادراج الرياح} ، {وحفاظا على المصلحة اللبنانية العليا} و{اعادة اللحمة الى الشعب اللبناني الكريم}، و{بوحي من ضميري واصالتي العسكرية} ، و{انطلاقا من مسؤوليتي امام الله والتاريخ} اقرر ما يأتي :

Here, each of the phrases in curly brackets is a subordinate (adverbial) phrase (only one of which, لما كانت تحذاراتي قد ذهبت ادراج الرياح, is a clause). This is followed at the end by the main verb اقرر, with its object ما يأتي.

It is also common, however, to find Arabic preambles which involve repeated use of complete sentences, frequently introduced by the emphatic particles قد (or لقد) followed by a perfect verb, or إنّ followed by a noun or pronoun. In such cases, the translator would almost certainly be forced to adopt a style in which the preamble consisted of a number of separate sentences, despite the typical preference for preambles in English to consist of a single sentence with numerous parallel subordinate clauses.

15.2.2 Main text

15.2.2.1 Subdivisions

The main text may be broken up into subdivisions. The largest subdivision is that of the 'Part'. This typically corresponds in Arabic to باب. In the Lebanese Constitution, for example, the Arabic الباب الأول – أحكام اساسية is translated into English as 'PART I – FUNDAMENTAL PROVISIONS'. Within each Part, there may be a number of Chapters; Chapter in English corresponds to فصل in Arabic. The Lebanese Constitution has as its first Chapter within its first Part الفصل الأول – في الدولة وأراضيها. This is translated into English as 'CHAPTER I – THE STATE AND ITS TERRITORY'. The basic unit of the main text is the Article. The first article of the Jordanian Constitution reads as follows:

www.kaues.org

المادة ١ – المملكة العربية الاردنية الهاشمية دولة عربية مستقلة ذات
سيادة ملكها لا يتجزأ ولا ينزل عن شيء منها ، والشعب
الاردني جزء من الامة العربية ونظام الحكم فيها نيابي ملكي
وراثي .

This is translated into English as:

1. The Hashemite Kingdom of Jordan is an independent Arab State. It is indivisible and no part of it may be ceded. The people of Jordan form part of the Arab nation. The form of Government shall be parliamentary with hereditary monarchy.

It is usual, as in this example, for the articles to be introduced as المادة ١ – (etc.). In English-language constitutions, however, the word 'Article' does not always appear, and the number of the article is followed by a full stop.

It is possible for articles themselves to have sub-clauses. These may also be introduced by numbers, as in the following example from the Jordanian Constitution.

المادة ٩ – ١ – لا يجوز ابعاد اردني من ديار المملكة.
٢ – لا يجوز أن يحظر على اردني الاقامة في جهة ما ولا ان
يلزم بالاقامة في مكان معين الا في الاحوال المبينة في
القانون .

This is translated into English as:

9. (i) No Jordanian shall be exiled from the territory of the Kingdom.
(ii) No Jordanian shall be prevented from residing at any place, or be compelled to reside in any specified place, except in the circumstances prescribed by law.

As this example shows, 'secondary' numbers in Arabic are typically translated into English as Roman numerals in round brackets (each of these numbers refers to what is known technically as a 'paragraph' in English, فقرة in Arabic).

Articles in Arabic may also contain further sub-clauses in addition to those labelled with numbers. The following is an example from the Jordanian Constitution.

المادة ٢٣ – ١ – العمل حق لجميع المواطنين وعلى الدولة ان توفره
للاردنيين بتوجيه الاقتصاد الوطني والنهوض به .
٢ – تحمي الدولة العمل وتضع له تشريعا يقوم على المبادئ
الآتية:

www.kaues.org

أ - اعطاء العامل أجراً يتناسب مع كمية عمله وكيفيته.
ب - تحديد ساعات العمل الاسبوعية ومنح العمال أيام راحة اسبوعية وسنوية مع الأجر .

This is translated into English as:

23. (i) It is the right of every citizen to work, and the State shall provide opportunities to work to all citizens by directing the national economy and raising its standard.
(ii) The State shall protect labour and enact a legislation therefore based on the following principles : –
(a) Every workman shall receive wages commensurate with the quantity and quality of his work.
(b) The number of hours of work per week shall be limited. Workmen shall be given weekly and annual days of rest with wages.

As this example shows, further sub-clauses in Arabic, labelled – أ, – ب etc., are typically translated into English as (a), (b), etc.

15.2.2.2 Salient linguistic features of the main text

In Arabic the standard verb tense in constitutions is the imperfect. The normal verb form in English, however, is 'shall + VERB'. So, in the previous extract from the Jordanian Constitution, the phrase تحمي الدولة العمل is translated as 'The State shall protect labour'. In fact, this principle is not always consistently applied. So, in the extract from the Jordanian Constitution, the Arabic العمل حق لجميع المواطنين is translated into English as 'It is the right of every citizen to work'.

In general, the use of the present tense in English suggests a description of what 'has always been', while the use of 'shall + VERB' can suggest a change of state. Accordingly, where stress is to be laid on the fixed and unchangeable nature of things, the present tense may also be used; e.g. 'Kuwait is a fully sovereign Arab State' (rather than 'Kuwait shall be a fully sovereign state'). Note also that the phrase لا يجوز is typically translated into English as 'shall not'. An example from Article 9 of the Jordanian Constitution, already quoted above, is .لا يجوز ابعاد اردني من ديار المملكة. This is translated into English as 'No Jordanian shall be exiled from the territory of the Kingdom.'. The word يجوز on its own in the positive, however, is typically translated as 'may'. Article 15 (iv) of the Jordanian Constitution reads as follows:

يجوز في حالة اعلان الاحكام العرفية أو الطوارئ ان يفرض القانون

www.kaues.org

على الصحف والنشرات والمؤلفات والاذاعة رقابة محدودة في الامور التي تتصل بالسلامة العامة وأغراض الدفاع الوطني .

This is translated into English as:

> In the event of the declaration of martial law or a state of emergency, a limited censorship on newspapers, pamphlets, books and broadcasts in matters affecting public safety or national defence may be imposed by law.

15.3 CONCLUDING REMARKS

Not all material which is 'constitutional' in a general sense will fit neatly into the patterns outlined above. While translators should respect the general conventions of constitutions in translating them, they must also be sensitive to cases where the text in question does not fit entirely into the standard format of constitutions, and must be prepared to give themselves sufficient freedom to deal effectively with translation problems which arise.

At the same time, it must be borne in mind that constitutional materials are a form of legal material. The translator must therefore ensure that the information is conveyed accurately and unambiguously from one language to the other. Accordingly, there may be occasions where it is necessary to sacrifice naturalness in the translation for the sake of retaining the details of the meaning. At the level of individual words, for example, this means that different terms having similar but distinct meanings in the ST must be translated by different terms in the TT. Thus, if the ST uses both خلاف and نزاع, it would normally be necessary to translate these by different English terms, even though considerations of TL idiomaticness might suggest that خلاف and نزاع both be translated by a single term, such as 'dispute'.

PRACTICAL 15

Practical 15.1 Constitutional translation

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate the extracts from the Kuwaiti constitution for use by the Kuwaiti government for official, legal purposes in dealing with the English-speaking world.

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Outline the decisions of detail which you made in producing your

www.kaues.org

translation.

Contextual information
All the material here is reproduced directly from the Kuwaiti constitution.

ST

دستور دولة الكويت

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

نحن عبد الله السالم الصباح أمير الكويت
رغبة في استكمال أسباب الحكم الديمقراطي لوطننا العزيز،
وإيمانا بدور هذا الوطن في ركب القومية العربية وخدمة السلام العالمي والحضارة الانسانية،
[...]
وبناء على ما قرره المجلس التأسيسي،
صدقنا على هذا الدستور وأصدرناه:

الباب الأول
الدولة ونظام الحكم

(مادة ١)

الكويت دولة عربية ذات سيادة تامة، ولا يجوز النزول عن سيادتها أو التخلي عن أي جزء من أراضيها.
وشعب الكويت جزء من الامة العربية.

[...]

(مادة ٤)

الكويت امارة وراثية في ذرية المغفور له مبارك الصباح.
ويعين ولي العهد خلال سنة على الاكثر من تولية الأمير، ويكون تعيينه بأمر أميري بناء على تزكية الأمير ومبايعة من مجلس الأمة تتم، في جلسة خاصة، بموافقة أغلبية الاعضاء الذين يتألف منهم المجلس.
وفي حالة عدم التعيين على النحو السابق يزكي الأمير لولاية العهد ثلاثة على الأقل من الذرية المذكورة فيبايع المجلس أحدهم وليا للعهد.
ويشترط في ولي العهد أن يكون رشيدا عاقلا وابنا شرعيا

www.kaues.org

لأبوين مسلمين.

[...]

(مادة ٥)

يبين القانون علم الدولة وشعارها وشاراتها وأوسمتها ونشيدها الوطني.

(مادة ٦)

نظام الحكم في الكويت ديمقراطي ، السيادة فيه للامة مصدر السلطة جميعا ، وتكون ممارسة السيادة على الوجه المبين في هذا الدستور .

Practical 15.2 Constitutional translation

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt. You are to translate the text on behalf of the League of Arab States for legal purposes in dealing with the English-speaking world.

(ii) Translate the text into English.

(iii) Outline the decisions of detail which you made in producing your translation.

Contextual information

All the material here is reproduced directly from the Charter of the League of Arab States (ميثاق جامعة الدول العربية).

ST

١ – لا يجوز الالتجاء إلى القوة لفض نزاع بين دولتين أو أكثر من دول الجامعة العربية فإذا نشب بينهما خلاف لا يتعلق باستقلال الدولة أو سيادتها أو سلامة أراضيها ولجأ المتنازعون إلى المجلس لفض هذا الخلاف كان قراره عندئذ نافذا ملزما

٢ – يتوسط المجلس في الخلاف الذي يخشى منه وقوع حرب بين دولة من دول الجامعة وبين أية دولة أخرى من دول الجامعة أو غيرها للتوفيق بينهما وتصدر قرارات التحكيم والقرارات الخاصة بالتوسط بأغلبية الآراء

www.kaues.org

٣ – إذا وقع اعتداء من دولة على دولة من أعضاء الجامعة أو خشي وقوعه فللدولة المعتدى عليها أو المهددة بالاعتداء أن تطلب دعوة المجلس للانعقاد فورا ويقرر المجلس التدابير اللازمة لدفع هذا الاعتداء ويصدر القرار بالإجماع فإذا كان الاعتداء من إحدى دول الجامعة لا يدخل في حساب الإجماع رأي الدولة المعتدية

٤ – ما يقرره المجلس بالإجماع يكون ملزما لجميع الدول المشتركة في الجامعة ، وما يقرره المجلس بالأكثرية يكون ملزما لمن يقبله

www.kaues.org

16
Translating consumer-oriented texts

16.1 INTRODUCTION

We have stressed that all texts, including translations, are produced for a purpose. The purpose of the TT is always a major factor to be taken into account in deciding a strategy. This truth is particularly clear in translating what can broadly be classed as consumer-oriented texts. This, together with the fact that many translators earn their living with these sorts of text, is why we are giving them a chapter to themselves.

By 'consumer-oriented texts', we mean texts which either try to persuade the public to buy something, or tell purchasers how to use what they have bought, or advise on commodities that might be bought or courses of action that might be taken. This range of texts most obviously includes advertisements, but it also includes things like tourist brochures, public notices, information leaflets, user manuals, consumer or hobby magazines, recipe books, CD booklets, and so on – even a lot of propaganda can be classified under this heading.

16.2 TOURIST MATERIAL

A good example of the problems involved in translating consumer-oriented texts is provided by tourist material. In fact there are often quite clear differences between tourist material in English and that in Arabic.

www.kaues.org

16.2.1 English-language tourist material

Here for class discussion is an excerpt from a British tourist brochure advertising the Costa Blanca in Spain. Typical features worth discussing are register, the choice of adjectives and adverbs, and sentence structure.

> Sunshine, bright lights and superb sandy beaches, blue-green seas, orange groves and picturesque villages, mountains, old fortresses and starry evenings – all part of the Costa Blanca's charm.
>
> The weather is exceptional. In spring it's warm and sunny and the colours of citrus fruits, flowers and blossom splash the countryside. In summer it's gloriously hot and in autumn the balmy days merge slowly into one another. This is perhaps why the Costa Blanca has become so incredibly popular with holidaymakers.

16.2.2 Arabic tourist material

Compare the English text with the following extract from a tourist brochure, and an English translation, both published by the Yemeni General Authority of Tourism (title of Arabic version: الجوف – مارب – شبوة, and of English version: 'Al-Jouf – Marib – Shabwa) (Republic of Yemen, General Authority of Tourism 1997: 2, 3):

ST

الزائر العزيز

لقد كرست هذه النشرة السياحية للتعريف بثلاث محافظات يمنية تقع جميعها في إطار النطاق الصحراوي الواقع في الزاوية الداخلية بين المرتفعات اليمنية الغربية والجنوبية المعروفة تاريخياً بمفازة صيهد واليوم رملة السبعتين.

وهو موطن الحضارات اليمنية القديمة التي بدأ ازدهارها منذ مطلع الألف الأول قبل الميلاد على ضفاف الوديان.

يسود هذا النطاق مناخ قاري حار جاف صيفاً بارد شتاءً.

كما يسود بعض اطرافها مظاهر الحياة البدوية. وفي هذا الجزء من الجمهورية اليمنية تقوم العديد من الشركات باعمال التنقيب وانتاج النفط الذي سوف تسهم عائداته في تنمية البلاد ورفع مستوى معيشة السكان ان شاء الله.

www.kaues.org

TT
Dear Visitor,

This touristic publication is devoted to introduce to you three Yemeni provinces, which are all situated in the geographical scope, lying in the inner angle of the coastal mountain ranges of Yemen, which was called by mediaeval Arab geographers as the 'Sayhad desert and today as Ramlat al-Sabaatain'.

It is the abode of the Ancient Yemeni Civilizations which started to flourish since the beginning of the first millennium BC, along the banks of the valleys. The tropical climate prevails this area, i.e., it is hot and dry in summer but cold in winter.

Some parts of it are dominated by nomadic life. In this part of the Republic of Yemen, many companies carry out drilling works and oil production, which by the will of Allah, will contribute to the development of the country and the upgrading of the standard of living.

This English translation obviously suffers from a number of linguistic and stylistic problems; here is a more idiomatic version:

Revised TT
Dear Visitor,

This tourist brochure aims to introduce you to three Yemeni provinces all of which lie within the inland desert region between the southern and western Yemeni highlands. This area was known historically as the Sayhad Desert and today is called Ramlat al-Sabaatain.

This is the home of the ancient civilizations of Yemen which flourished at the beginning of the first millennium BC on the banks of the river valleys. The region enjoys a continental climate – hot and dry in summer, and cold in winter.

In some areas the local people follow a Bedouin life-style. In this part of the Republic of Yemen, a number of companies are engaged in oil-drilling and oil-production. It is to be hoped that the revenues from these activities will contribute to the development of the country and the raising of living standards.

The revised English translation deals with most of the obvious problems in the official English translation. However, the general style is rather formal for a tourist brochure. Even the opening words, 'Dear Visitor', while not impossible in a British tourist brochure, seem a little out of place; they perhaps suggest an official notice from a hotel to its clients, rather than a text which will entice visitors to explore.

Similarly, the start of the first main paragraph, 'This tourist brochure aims

www.kaues.org

to introduce you to [...]' is more reminiscent of the initial 'Abstract' section of an academic article (e.g. 'This paper deals with a number of current problems in plant morphology [...]') than of an English-language tourist publication.

In the second paragraph, the second sentence 'The region enjoys a continental climate – hot and dry in summer, and cold in winter' is almost technical in tone compared with the description of the weather in the *Costa Blanca* text.

Closely related to the generally formal tone of the Arabic brochure is its rather academic subject matter. British tourist brochures do sometimes contain historical information – 'This is the home of the ancient civilizations of Yemen [...]' might not be out of place in a British tourist brochure. However, it is less likely that a British tourist brochure would devote significant space to oil-exploration and production and the implications of these for national development, as is done in the third and final paragraph here.

The use of the phrase ان شاء الله at the end of the paragraph also raises an interesting cultural issue. The official English translation contains the exotic 'by the will of Allah', a form of expression which seems quite alien to the genre of the tourist brochure in English. Accordingly, this has been rendered as 'It is to be hoped that' in the idiomatic English version – with, of course, a significant translation loss, since it presumably involves a clear distortion of the original intention of the writer of the ST. This example is a reminder of how important it is for the translator to consider carefully the central feature of cultural differences between the SL public and the TL public.

16.3 CULTURAL STEREOTYPING

Different cultures, then, value different things, and have different taboos. In addition, there is also evidence that different cultures stereotype consumers differently. There may be a tendency in American advertising, for example, to hector or hustle or patronize the consumer more than in some European cultures; and Japanese advertisements are well known for taking an indirect, and in many cases quite surreal, approach to the products which they are trying to sell.

In this light, consider the following announcement for a photography competition, from *Golden Falcon*/الصقر الذهبي, the inflight magazine of Gulf Air (Karkouti 2000: 38, 41). This appears in both English and Arabic versions in the magazine. Judging from the fact that the author is named as Jo Mapp in the English version, the English version appears to be the ST and the Arabic the TT. The two texts should be compared and discussed in class. Something to concentrate on particularly is the differences in tone between the texts, and how these differences are created.

www.kaues.org

Competition
It's your shot
Your assignment

by Picture Editor Jo Mapp

Have you ever looked at a photograph taken in a magazine and thought to yourself 'I could do that'? Well here's your chance. We want you to send us a photograph taken by yourself – a photograph that you think would be worthy of publishing in *Golden Falcon* or featuring on the front cover. And, when our judges have selected the best entry, that's exactly what we will do – publish it in the magazine or feature it on the cover. Simply read the guidelines set out by our photography expert – and get shooting.

We would like the photograph you send to have some kind of relevance to the theme of travel and tourism.

مسابقة أفضل صورة

إنها فرصتك .. لا تفوتها. هل تشعر بأن لديك موهبة في التصوير الفوتغرافي .. هل سبق ورأيت صورة في احدى المجلات وقلت لنفسك: نعم أستطيع التقاط مثلها .إذن، ها نحن نتيح لك فرصة لاختبار موهبتك التي قد تكون البداية في انطلاقك كمصور صحفي محترف .. وما عليك إلا أن تلتقط صورة تستحق أن تنشر في أحد أعداد «الصقر الذهبي»، أو ربما تجد طريقها للنشر على الغلاف. بعد إرسال الصور إلينا وانتهاء لجنة التحكيم من فرزها سيتم نشر الصور الفائزة.

ولكن تريث قليلا قبل أن تنطلق لالتقاط الصور إذ نرجو منك أن تقرأ التوجيهات أدناه التي أعدها مدير التصوير في مؤسستنا:

١ - يجب أن يكون موضوع الصورة له علاقة مباشرة بالسياحة والسفر.

In part, the reformulations in the Arabic TT reflect the nature of Standard Arabic. Because of diglossia and the contrast with colloquial Arabic, Standard Arabic can be regarded as an intrinsically formal language. The conventions of usage in Arabic require that a written announcement of a photography competition in a magazine should be made in Standard Arabic. Thus an Arabic text of this nature is bound to be more formal than an English text written in a fairly intimate style.

Over and above differences related to diglossia, however, there are clear culturally-related differences between the ST and the TT. The tendency towards

www.kaues.org

greater distance between writer and reader, with the writer adopting at times a markedly authoritative tone, seems to reflect a general cultural preference in Arabic, and is not a direct or inevitable result of diglossia.

There are other ways in which consumer-oriented texts may vary between cultures. For instance, certain sorts of consumer may be treated differently in different cultures: in one culture the average consumer of a certain type of product may, for example, be regarded as having more specialist knowledge than the average consumer of the same type of product in another culture. An example of this is found in a later part of the photo-competition text which we have just been discussing. The English ST has four guidelines (of which we have reproduced only the first in our version, beginning 'We would like the photo you send [...]'). The third one of these reads: 'If you are aiming to feature your photograph on the cover then it needs to fit the A4 format of the magazine'. This guideline is simply omitted from the Arabic TT; the most likely reason for this seems to be that although A4 paper is used in some parts of the Middle East, the typical Arab reader is felt to be less knowledgeable in this area than the typical English reader, and is not expected to know what A4 paper is. Therefore the guideline (in this specific form at least) is not worth putting into the Arabic TT.

16.4 GENRE-MIXING IN CONSUMER-ORIENTED TEXTS

Material within a given genre may also vary culturally in other ways. Take the average recipe book. On the face of things, this may seem to belong to the category of empirical genres, for it appears to classify cooking techniques in a descriptively systematic manner, to offer factual and objective accounts of the contents and appearances of dishes, as well as of their preparation. In itself, this almost makes recipe books sound like scientific texts. But this does not account for a number of features, in English at least, of recipe books; the fact that they are rarely written in a technically and scientifically neutral style; the fact that their use of tonal style is often calculated to draw the reader into a comfortable, possibly flattering, relationship; the fact that they have a transparently helpful organization, beyond what could be expected of the most indulgent scientific textbook; and the fact that recipe books are often lavishly illustrated with glossy pictures. Such features indicate a consumer-oriented purpose in recipe books that contain them, and are well worth looking out for when translating certain kinds of 'commercial' ST. Even if not directly consumer-oriented to the sale of particular foodstuffs, most recipe books are, at the very least, specimens of a hybrid genre characterized by the dual purpose of description and persuasion.

Choosing a register for a consumer-oriented TT can be problematic in itself. For instance, there may be little in common between the groups of consumers aimed at by the ST and the TT respectively. In any case, any TL

www.kaues.org

genre selected as a prototype for the TT is likely to provide specimens in widely divergent styles and registers, leaving the translator with a number of possible models: the decisive question is that of the purpose and audience of the TT.

PRACTICAL 16

Practical 16.1 Translation of consumer-oriented texts

Assignment
Read the following extract from an article in *Golden Falcon*/الصقر الذهبي (Karkouti 2000: 42–3), the inflight magazine of Gulf Air, together with its Arabic translation, which appears in the same magazine. The article, which is designed to interest readers in the touristic virtues of Morocco, is entitled 'Discover Morocco with Gulf Air' in the English ST, and حلقوا مع «طيران الخليج» لاكتشاف المغرب in the Arabic TT. The extract is taken from a section which deals with Fez.

Using the same general procedure for detailing differences as you used for discussing the photo-competition text in § 16.3:

(i) Identify the places where the TT differs significantly from the ST.
(ii) Comment on the differences, accounting for them – where possible – in terms of the following categories:
  (a) *tone* (tonal register)
  (b) *culture* (especially identification with cultural heritage in contemporary Arab culture)
  (c) *religion* (i.e. religious sensibilities)
  (d) *sensitivity* (i.e. avoidance of sensitive or taboo subjects, other than religion)

Some examples of changes may fit more than one category. Where they do, you may mark them as belonging to two or more categories. You may feel that other categories can be added to those listed under (ii) above; feel free to add these. You may also find changes which do not fit easily into any category. If you do, list these as uncategorized.

www.kaues.org

ST

Fez has a lot to be proud of. It is the place where the great 14th-century historian and traveller Ibn Khaldoun lived and its centrepiece is the grand Karaouine mosque, reputedly one of the world's oldest universities. The city has built on these venerable origins by organizing a series of festivals throughout the year. Music, painting and cooking become the focus of scholarly debates, conferences and informal discussions about the place of artistry in the modern world. There's a terrific enthusiasm for the subjects and those curious to know more about Fez and its heritage travel from around the globe crossing the usual boundaries that keep people apart.

These special cultural programmes take place in the warren of tiled courtyards and narrow alleyways that make up the heart and the head of this fascinating city. Heart and head because Fez is both a sort of forerunner of Oxford and Cambridge, the centre where intellectual rigour and scientific endeavour was pioneered and then fostered, but also its heart for it is here that Moulay Idriss founder and patron saint of Fez (and also founder of Morocco's first royal dynasty) is buried and pilgrims from all over Morocco come to his shrine. Additionally there are over 3,000 mosques and *medrasas* or religious schools within its dark, maze-like streets.

TT

ان كانت مدينة فاس تفخر بأشياء تميز تاريخها وحضارتها، فإنها تفخر على وجه الخصوص بعلاقتها بالمؤرخ وعالم الاجتماع العربي الشهير، صاحب «المقدمة» ابن خلدون، كما انها تفخر بكونها موطن جامعة القرويين، اقدم الجامعات في العالم. وتكاد مدينة فاس تعيش على امتداد العام حالة احتفال مفتوح، إذ تشهد أيامها المتعاقبة، وفصولها المختلفة احتفالات ومهرجانات متنوعة، منها ما يخص الازياء، والموسيقى، والفنون الشعبية، وحتى فنون الطبخ، وفي فاس ما يكفي من الحضارة العريقة والثقافة الرفيعة، اللتين تجذبان الزوار والراغبين في معرفة تراثها وحضارتها من كل بقاع العالم، ومن شتى الاجناس والاعراق والاديان. وعادة ما تنظم في المدينة لقاءات ثقافية، تعقد في افنية يزين جدرانها زخارف من السيراميك «الزليج»، تحكي بعضا من تاريخ البلاد وتعكس وجها من هويتها. وتبحث هذه الندوات والملتقيات مختلف المواضيع العلمية والادبية والفنية والاجتماعية. وتجمع مدينة فاس بين كونها مقصدا لطلاب العلم والثقافة، تماماً كما هي مدينتا كامبريدج واكسفورد في بريطانيا، وكونها مقصدا روحيا، إذ يحج الناس الى مقام المولى ادريس مؤسس مدينة فاس، متوسلين البركات، وطالبين الشفاعة. وعلاوة على ذلك تزخر فاس بأكثر من 3000 مسجد ومدرسة للتعليم الاساسي والديني [...]

www.kaues.org

Practical 16.2 Translation of consumer-oriented texts

Assignment

(i) Discuss the strategic decisions that you have to take before starting detailed translation of the following text, and outline and justify the strategy you adopt.
(ii) Translate the text into English.
(iii) Explain the decisions of detail which you made in producing your translation.

Contextual information

This recipe is one of a set of recipe-cards produced in Tunisia, and entitled أكلات تونسية. The recipe is on one side of the card, and the picture and list of ingredients on the other (the picture is not reproduced here, and the list of ingredients has been placed above the recipe in conformity with the normal presentation in British recipe books). Your brief is to translate the recipe as part of an English-language version of this set of recipe-cards, which is intended to sell mainly to English-speaking tourists visiting Tunisia on holiday.

This text provides a good illustration of the fact that cookery writing is a form of technical writing. If you are a regular user of cookery books, you will probably find it fairly easy to find appropriate TT equivalents for ST terms, weights and measures used here. If you are not, you will need to consult some English-language cookery books in order to try and work out appropriate TT equivalents.

The text contains a number of terms which are specific to Tunisia. Some of these present challenges which are probably solvable in context; we have left these for you to try and work out for yourself. Others may be more difficult. These are glossed as follows:

د ق abbreviation for دقيقة

فل This usage is obscure. Native Arabic speakers whom we have asked suggested either that it is a brand name, or that it is فُل meaning 'Arabian jasmine'. In the latter case, one might translate مقرونة فلّ as 'jasmine-scented macaroni'. It is probably safer to omit it in the TT.

م.أ. abbreviation for ملعقة أكل, i.e. what is known in English as a dessert spoon.

هريسة Harissa is 'a very strong, peppery preserve [...] It should be added with caution' (Roden 1970: 159).

دسل abbreviation for دسيلتر (from French *décilitre*).

رفس This means 'mix' in Tunisian Arabic (rather than 'kick', as is normal for Standard Arabic).

www.kaues.org

ST

مقرونة في الكوشة

مدة التهيئة: 20 د ق
مدة الاعداد: ساعة ونصف
مقومات لاربعة اشخاص

500 غ مقرونة فل
500 غ لحم عجل هبرة
4 بيض
4 بطاطا
1 بصل حجم متوسط
1/2 فص ثوم
3 م.أ. معجون طماطم
1/2 م.أ. هريسة
1/2 م.أ. فلفل احمر مرحي
قطعة جبن فريار
1 دسل زيت زيتون

الاعداد:

يحمى الزيت ويوضع فيه البصل مقطعا والثوم مهروسا واللحم متبلا بالملح والفلفل الاسود. ينضج قليلا، نضيف الفلفل الاحمر والطماطم والهريسة محلولا في مقدار كأس من الماء.

يترك للطهي على نار متوسطة حتى الغليان والى ان تخمشر (تخثر) الصلصة. يستخرج من فوق النار ويترك ليبرد.

نضيف جبن القرويار مقطوعا قطعا صغيرة والجبن المرحي وقطع بيضتين مسلوقتين والبطاطة المسلوقة وبيضتين طازجتين ونرفس الخليط.

نطهي المقرونة في الماء والملح مدة 10 دقائق ونتركها تنضب من مائها.

في طيف صالح للفرن نسوي طبقات من المقرونة تتخللها طبقات من الخليط وندخل في الفرن ذي نار متوسطة مدة 15 دقيقة.

www.kaues.org

17
Revising and editing TTs

17.1 INTRODUCTION

Throughout this book, we have considered translation sometimes as a process, and sometimes as a product (TT). The assessment of existing TTs has been an important feature in practicals, even before we started discussing the question of genre. In this chapter, we turn our attention to the final stage of translation as a process, where the proposed TT is actually examined as a product.

Any form of post-translation process is intrinsically an operation carried out in writing on a pre-existent text. There are two basic kinds of operation to be carried out on a preliminary TT. The first involves checking for accuracy; this we shall refer to as **revision**. The second involves the 'polishing' of the TT after the revision process; this we shall refer to as **editing**. It is worth distinguishing between these two operations, since they correspond to the phases which professional translators standardly go through in bringing their work up to an acceptable standard for delivery to a client. However, the two operations overlap to some extent: it may not always be clear whether TT peculiarities are errors or just features of style; and in any case, what is theoretically an edit may well occur to the reviser/editor during the revising stage.

As elsewhere in this book, therefore, the guidelines given here are meant to provide a framework which allows the apprentice translator to adopt a coherent approach to the process of translation. They are not meant to be applied in such a way that they hinder the translator by putting obstacles in the way of creative problem-solving.

www.kaues.org

17.2 REVISION

The main task during the revision stage is checking the TT for adherence to the ST in terms of accuracy: the reviser focuses on errors, omissions, additions, inconsistencies, names and titles, figures and tables, etc. Errors of accuracy can be relatively minor, such as spelling mistakes or punctuation, or lexical and phrasal errors. However, they can also include more complex errors such as ungrammatical constructions, or obscure, ambiguous or misleading configurations on the sentential and discourse levels. At the revision or checking stage, greater emphasis is usually placed on accuracy than on terminology. The objectivity of the reviser should ensure that any ambiguities or unclear phrasings are dealt with before passing on to the editing stage.

The following extract, which is taken from a bilingual Arabic/English tourist brochure about the island of Socotra off the southern coast of mainland Yemen, is a good example of an English TT which requires basic revision of this type (Republic of Yemen, Ministry of Culture and Tourism n.d.: ٣, 3):

ST

٤- الأودية:
يخترق السهول العديد من الأودية التي يصب بعضها شمال الجزيرة والبعض الآخر جنوبها وأهمها وادي (دي عزرو) الذي يقطع الجزيرة من الشمال الى الجنوب، بالإضافة الى الأودية التي تتبع من جبال (حجهر) المتميزة بمياهها الجارية على مدار العام.

Published TT (unrevised)

4–The Wadis (Valleys):
The plains are intersspersed by many vallies .Some of which pour at the northern part of the Island and some of which pouer at its southern part and the most important of which is Azroo Valley which intersects the Island from north to south in addition to the valleys springing out from the Hajhar Mountainous Range which are characterized for their running water all along the year.

This TT contains three spelling errors ('intersspersed', 'vallies', 'pouer'). There are also errors of capitalization and punctuation ('Island' should be 'island' (two occurrences); 'vallies .Some' should be 'valleys. Some'; 'Valley' in the second sentence should probably be 'valley', 'Mountainous Range' should be 'mountain range'; see also subsequent discussion). There are a number of basic lexical and phrasal errors: 'interspersed by' would be better as 'interspersed with'; 'pour at' could be 'flow out at' (two occurrences); 'springing out' could be 'leading out', 'characterized for' could be

www.kaues.org

'characterized by'; 'all along the year' could be 'throughout the year'. Finally, 'Azroo' should probably be 'the Di Azroo' (or 'the Dee Azroo', etc. depending on what form of transliteration is adopted), given that the Arabic has دي عزرو and that there are no standard English forms for Socotran names of a type which might lead to the 'dropping' of elements within names.

Taken together, these proposed changes to the TT would yield the following:

> **4–The Wadis (Valleys):**
> The plains are interspersed with many valleys. Some of which flow out at the northern part of the island and some of which flow out at its southern part and the most important of which is the Di Azroo valley which intersects the island from north to south in addition to the valleys leading out from the Hajhar mountain range which are characterized by their running water throughout the year.

Somewhat more difficult to deal with are problems relating to the discourse and sentential levels. The most obvious of these is the element 'Some of which [...] and some of which [...] and the most important of which [...] throughout the year'. Such a sentence would only be plausible in an informal context. The relative formality of the present piece of writing rules this out. This element can be converted easily enough into a contextually acceptable English sentence by replacing the first 'which' with 'these' and the second and third with 'them', giving a second sentence, incorporating also previously discussed changes, as follows:

> Some of these flow out at the northern part of the island and some of them flow out at its southern part and the most important of them is the Di Azroo valley which intersects the island from north to south in addition to the valleys leading out from the Hajhar mountain range which are characterized by their running water throughout the year.

However, this still leaves a number of other problems on the sentential and discourse levels. The most obvious is the lack of commas after 'Di Azroo valley' and 'mountain range': in each case, the relative clause is a describing clause, not a defining one, and thus requires a comma before it. Also notable is the use of 'and' in the phrase 'and the most important of them'. In Arabic, it is perfectly reasonable in this context to use the coordinating conjunction و, following a previous use of the coordinating و in the phrase والبعض الآخر. However, in English, such piling up of coordinated clauses is typically avoided (cf. Ch. 9.2.5). A common means of dealing with this problem is to start a new sentence in English. With some additional changes to the English wording, this gives a TT for the main part of the text as follows:

www.kaues.org

> Some of these flow out at the northern part of the island and some of them flow out at its southern part. The most important of these is the Di Azroo valley, which intersects the island from north to south in addition to the valleys leading out from the Hajhar mountain range, which are characterized by their running water throughout the year.

The final sentence of this version, however, is still rather odd. The main reason for this is that it involves multiple subordinate elements: the relative clause beginning 'which intersects' followed by the subordinating phrase 'in addition to', followed by a further relative clause, beginning 'which are characterized'. Arabic seems to tolerate such multiple subordination more readily than English (cf. Ch. 9.2.4). One solution to this problem would be to change the subordinating 'in addition to' to the coordinating 'and', with the concomitant change of 'The most important of these is' to 'The most important of these are' to make the verb agree with the plural subject in the new version. This would give a final sentence in the English TT as follows:

> The most important of these are the Di Azroo valley, which intersects the island from north to south, and the valleys leading out from the Hajhar mountain range, which are characterized by their running water throughout the year.

We shall return to this text later, when we consider the issue of editing.

So far we have considered accuracy in relation to linguistic features of various kinds. However, accuracy also has a factual aspect: it is not only the language of the TT which may be wrong or unsuitable, the concepts themselves may have been distorted in transmission. The TT is the sum not only of a translator's knowledge of the two linguistic systems concerned and the ability to interface and apply them, but also of knowledge of the subject matter in question. Thus, a translator may be linguistically equipped to tackle a text on computer software, but not have the expertise necessary to make the right terminological and practical decisions, thereby undermining the TT's register and lexis and, ultimately, its quality and authoritativeness.

In this light, consider the following from the same brochure about the island of Socotra discussed above (Republic of Yemen, Ministry of Culture and Tourism n.d.: ٧, 7). This section is discussing caves on Socotra:

ST

تشكلت من عوامل التعرية «الجيومائية» حيث تعمل المياه الجوفية أثناء تحركها على إذابة الكلس من الصخور وترسيبها في سقف المغارة مشكلة أعمدة نازلة كبيرة وفي قاع المغارة أعمدة أخرى صاعدة تلتقي أحيانا فترسم لوحات بديعة الالوان، غاية في الجمال.

www.kaues.org

> *TT*
> They are formed by the erosion factors (Geo-hydro) for the underground water during its movement dissolves the Lime from the rocks and precipitates it on the roof of the grotto forming big perpendicular columns and on the ground of the grotto other climbing columns that meet sometimes and draw wonderful colored pictures of extreme beauty.

Leaving aside the linguistic problems in this TT, the text is marred, and made somewhat obscure, by the fact that the translator has failed to identify the correct technical equivalent for الجيومائية 'hydrogeological'. He or she has also failed to identify the standard English terms 'stalactite[s]' (for أعمدة نازلة) and 'stalagmite[s]' (for أعمدة صاعدة).

17.3 EDITING

The second stage and final stage of the post-translation process, that of editing, focuses on the end-user of the TT, and attempts to achieve the 'optimum orientation of the translated text to the requirements of the target readership' (Graham 1983: 104).

There are no hard and fast rules for editing, though critical factors are certainly appearance, appeal, impact, harmony, taste, register and style. If revision is concerned with the 'bare bones' of the TT, the editing process will perform 'remedial surgery' (Graham 1983: 103), which should consist of 'upgrading the terminology, clarifying obscurities, reinforcing the impact, honing the emotive appeal to suit the target reader'. A final 'cosmetic' stage should be to ensure that the appearance and layout of the TT respect the requirements as stated by the client.

With particularly difficult texts, it is sometimes worth doing the revision process itself in two phases. During the first phase, the editor may focus entirely on the TT, considering it from the point of view of style, terminology, etc. as if it were an original English text. During the second and final stage, the TT may be compared again with the ST, to check that concern with style has not led to unacceptable translation loss.

A knotty issue is always that of style, as style and language-use obviously vary from one translator to another. Thus, care must be taken that edits are only made to items which are in some way incorrect or unsuitable, not those which are merely phrased differently from the way the translator/reviser would phrase them. For example, in everyday English there is little difference between 'shall' and 'will' used in the first person; and in a text containing direct speech, there would be little point in changing 'I shall go out later' to 'I will go out later', unless there was a particular contextual reason to do so. In legal English, by contrast, there is an enormous difference between 'will' and 'shall' used in the third person, particularly in the context of contracts and agreements. Thus, if the TT of a contract contained the words 'The

www.kaues.org

contractor *will* complete the work by August 10th' instead of '*shall* complete', the reviser would have to intervene: the former TT implies that it is a foregone conclusion that the work will be completed by August 10th, whereas the latter makes it a legal requirement for the contractor to finish the work by the deadline stipulated.

In the light of the foregoing, consider the version of the short text dealing with the valleys of Socotra, which we revised above. The revisions which we carried out above yielded the following, as yet unedited, TT. The edited version should not read like an academic description of Socotra, but should be accessible to the average intelligent English-speaking reader. The edited TT should be discussed in class; you may well want to improve it with edits of your own.

Unedited TT

4–The Wadis (Valleys):
The plains are interspersed with many valleys. Some of these flow out at the northern part of the island and some of them flow out at its southern part. The most important of these are the Di Azroo valley, which intersects the island from north to south, and the valleys leading out from the Hajhar mountain range, which are characterized by their running water throughout the year.

Edited TT

4–The Wadis (Valleys):
Running through the plains are many river valleys, some of which flow into the sea in the north, others in the south. The most important of these are the Di Azroo valley, which cuts across the island from north to south, and the valleys leading out from the Hajhar mountain range, the rivers of which run throughout the year.

Some texts are passed on to an editor before publication, and here the translator or reviser will often play no further part: in reality, it is unlikely that they will be consulted about changes to the TT. An editor may wish to prune what are considered to be irrelevancies from the TT, or to reduce the length of the text due to typographical or impagination constraints. Proof-reading marks are used by revisers and editors for amending and editing translations, which means marking the TT on the text and in the left-hand margin. Using the standard proof-reading marks makes it easier for a secretary, typesetter, or editor to understand what is being edited, and how.

In effect, the editor is responsible to the translator for any changes made to the TT, whether or not the translator is consulted about them. If the TT is subsequently judged defective in some way by readers, it is the translator and no one else who will automatically be held responsible. As John Graham wisely points out, 'This is why the translator has to accept that his work

www.kaues.org

ought to be checked and, if need be, revised and edited in the interest of the consumer. There is no need for him to fear the verdict or comments of the checker, reviser or editor unless he knows that he has handed in a poor job and then he deserves to be afraid. The checking, revising and editing functions are a safeguard of quality to the user of the translation and the target reader and, at the same time, a safety net for the translator' (Graham 1983: 105).

It should be remembered that revision and editing are part of the 'quality control' procedure that all translators should implement on completing their translating (or during and after translating, depending on how the translator works). Revision and editing are not only activities carried out by third parties on TTs, though this is standard practice nowadays on the part of work-providers. It is essential that translators have their own system for self-assessment of the work, and that even when completing a rush job careful reading and checking is carried out to repair errors and omissions (cf. Anderson and Avery 1995: 26).

PRACTICAL 17

Practical 17.1 Revising and editing

Assignment

(i) Taking no more than forty-five minutes, produce a revised TT of the unrevised English TT given below. In order to make this process practical, do not attempt to write down any decisions of detail while you are doing the revisions. Instead, simply add superscript numbers for the revision notes at this stage, and write the accompanying notes for (ii) when you have done the revisions themselves.

(ii) Explain the decisions of detail which you made in producing your revised TT.

(iii) Exchange revised TTs with another student and then, taking no more than twenty minutes, produce a final edited version of the other student's revised TT. In order to make this process practical, do not attempt to write down any decisions of detail while you are doing the edits. Instead, simply add superscript numbers for the editing notes at this stage, and write the accompanying notes for (iv) when you have done the edits themselves.

(iv) Explain the decisions of detail which you made in producing your edited TT.

Contextual information

The Yemeni Ministry of Culture and Tourism is developing a programme to attract more Western tourists to the country. As part of this it has decided to produce new and more appealing versions of its tourist literature. You have

www.kaues.org

been employed by the Ministry to revise and edit some of its existing tourist brochures. These include the bilingual Arabic/English brochure on the island of Socotra which we looked at in §§ 17.2 and 17.3, which also contains the following text (from Republic of Yemen, Ministry of Culture and Tourism n.d.: ١, 1).

ST

سقطرى جزيرة السعادة

ترجع شهرة سقطرى وأهميتها التاريخية الى بداية ازدهار تجارة السلع المقدسة ونشاط الطريق التجاري القديم (المشهور بطريق اللبان). إذ كانت الجزيرة أحد الأماكن الرئيسية لإنتاج تلك السلع الهامة بالإضافة الى كونها المخزن الخلفي لدعم اقتصاد مملكة حضرموت (ملك بلاد اللبان)، وفي تلك العصور القديمة اشتهرت جزيرة سقطرى بإنتاج (الند) وهو صنف من البخور وبالصبر السوقطري كأجود انواع الصبر. وزادت أهميتها، وتردد ذكرها وذاع صيتها حتى تجاوز حدود المكان الى شعوب حضارات العالم القديم التي كانت تنظر الى السلع المقدسة (البخور، المر، الصبر، اللبان ومختلف الطيوب) نظرة تقديس وكانوا يسمون الأرض التي تنتج هذه السلع (الأرض المقدسة) أو (أرض الآله) ولهذا سميت جزيرة سقطرى عند قدماء اليونان والرومان بـ(جزيرة السعادة) وبسبب صعوبة الوصول اليها في الماضي نُسج حولها عدد من القصص والأساطير.

وهي اليوم مثار اهتمام الباحثين المتخصصين في مناطق المحميات الطبيعية النادرة، فسقطرى واحدة من أهم تلك المحميات الطبيعية الكونية.

Unrevised TT

Socotra The Island of Happiness

The fame and historic importance of socotra dates back to the beginning of holy commodities trade prosperity and the activity of the old trade route which is much better known as Frankincense, Myrrh and Ladanum Route for the Island was one of the main producers of such essential commodities in addition to its being the back reserve for the support of Yemeni ancient Hadramawt Civilization along the first millennium B.C. when the king of Hadhramawt was named King of Frankincense, Myrrh & Ladanum. In those old days Socotra Island became famous for the production of Incense Sticks (a kind of incense) and Socotra Glue as the best quality glue. The Island became even more important and was widely known to furthermost places of ancient civilizations who used to consider

www.kaues.org

those holy commodities e.g. incense, myrhh, Ladanum, glue and other perfumes as hallowed not only this but named the land producing them as the Holy Land or The Land of The Gods. This is why Socotra Island was named by ancient Greeks and Romans as the Happiness Island. Due to the dificulty to reach it in the past. Many stories and legends have been woven in respect thereto. Today it is the focus of specialist researchers in the field of rare protected natural areas for Socotra Island is considered one of the most important Worldwide Protected Natural Areas.

Practical 17.2 Revising and editing

Assignment
You are working for the *Jordan Weekly Herald*, an English-language newspaper aimed at English-speaking expatriates in Jordan. Your task is to revise and edit a draft English version of the Arabic text الأردن .. على العهد into idiomatic English for a section in your newspaper which provides translations of material from the Arabic-language Jordanian press. The Arabic text is given first below, followed by the draft English translation which you are to revise and edit. You may find you need to make significant changes in order to make your version accord with typical features of English newspaper editorials. These changes should not, however, remove any significant information given in the original Arabic text.

(i) Taking no more than forty minutes, produce a revised TT of the unrevised English TT given below. In order to make this process practical, do not attempt to write down any decisions of detail while you are doing the revisions. Instead, simply add superscript numbers for the revision notes at this stage, and write the accompanying notes for (ii) when you have done the revisions themselves.
(ii) Explain the decisions of detail which you made in producing your revised TT.
(iii) Exchange revised TTs with another student and then, taking no more than twenty-five minutes, produce a final edited version of the other student's revised TT. In order to make this process practical, do not attempt to write down any decisions of detail while you are doing the edits. Instead, simply add superscript numbers for the editing notes at this stage, and write the accompanying notes for (iv) when you have done the edits themselves.
(iv) Explain the decisions of detail which you made in producing your edited TT.

www.kaues.org

Contextual information
This text is the beginning of a main editorial from the Jordanian newspaper الرأي, 12 December 1988.

ST

الأردن .. على العهد

في حديث الحسين، الذي بثته هيئة الإذاعة البريطانية، اخيرا، اكد جلالته على ان العلاقة الاردنية الفلسطينية مميزة وخاصة وان الاردن في جميع الاحوال لم يتخل عن أبناء فلسطين ولن يتخلى عنهم، او عن واجبه نحوهم، الى ان يستعيدوا حقوقهم الكاملة، على ترابهم الوطني. وجاء هذا الحديث تعبيرا عن التأييد المستمر للانتفاضة، وهي تدخل عامها الثاني .. ودفاعا عن مشروعيتها، ودعوة للضمير العالمي، ليترجم تعاطفه معها، الى عمل يعجل عقد المؤتمر الدولي ليتسنى تنفيذ الحل الحقيقي، الذي يعيد السلام والاستقرار الى المنطقة ..

وآثر الحسين، ان ينبه مجددا الى ان الصراع الناشب في المنطقة لا يهددها وحدها .. وانما يهدد السلام العالمي .. وكان جلالته، قد وجه التحذير ذاته، غير مرة، خلال الاحاديث التي افضى بها .. من قبل الى عدد من الصحف والاذاعات العالمية ..

وغني عن القول، ان هذا كله، هو تجسيد للالتزام القومي الذي يتمسك به الاردن .. والذي يأخذ مداه، من خلال تنقية الاجواء العربية، والعمل الجاد على حشد الطاقات العربية .. وقد تبدى هذا العمل اوضح ما يكون في المسعى الذي يقوم به جلالته، لاقامة كيان عربي يضم الدول العربية شرقي البحر المتوسط .. والذي من شأنه ان يبعث الجبهة الشرقية ويتيح للعرب ان يمارسوا الخيارات المناسبة لاستعادة حقوقهم وارساء السلام العادل والشامل في منطقتهم.

www.kaues.org

Unrevised TT

Jordan .. keeps its promise

In his recent speech broadcast by the BBC, his Majesty King Hussein of Jordan affirmed that Jordanian-Palestinian relations are very special since Jordan has not abandoned and will not abandon the Palestinian people until they are granted their full rights on their own national territory. The king's speech came as an expression of Jordan's continuing support for the uprising which is entering its second year, a defence for its legitimacy and a call to the conscience of the international community to translate its sympathy for the uprising into urgent action to convene an international conference that leads to a genuine solution and the restoration of peace and stability in the region.

King Hussein took the opportunity to repeat his warning once again that the ongoing conflict does not just threaten the region alone but that it threatens the whole world. King Hussein has given the same warning repeatedly on previous occasions to a number of international newspapers, radio stations, and T.V. networks.

Needless to say, all this underlines Jordan's steadfast commitment to the Arab nation, whose goal is to clear the air in the Arab world, and to take serious steps to mobilize Arab resources. This is demonstrated with the utmost clarity by the king's endeavour to establish an Arab entity comprising the East Mediterranean Arab countries with the aim of reviving the eastern front and providing Arabs with the appropriate choices to restore their rights and to establish a just and comprehensive peace in the region.

FACULTY OF ARTS AND HUMANITIES WWW.KAUES.ORG

www.kaues.org

18
Summary and conclusion

The only conclusion necessary to *Thinking Arabic Translation* is a summing up of what the translator is supposed to be thinking *about*. The first thing to remember is that, whatever revision or editing the TT has undergone, it is the translator who is ultimately responsible for it. 'Thinking' translation implies a clear-sighted acceptance of this responsibility, but it also implies reducing the element of chance in how the TT will be received. If responsibility entails making decisions, applying the method presented in this book will enable the translator to make them intelligently and imaginatively enough to be confident of what the overall impact of the TT will be. This is why we have stressed throughout the course the need for a clearly formulated initial strategy and for clearly formulated decisions of detail rationally linked to the strategy.

One thing we hope to have shown is that no strategy can be assumed a priori. Formulating an appropriate strategy means assessing the salient features of a particular ST and of the particular circumstances in which it is to be translated. The crucial question then is: 'How do I decide which features are salient?' What we have tried to do is equip the student translator with a way of answering this question, whatever the nature of the ST. For our purposes, the salient features of a text can be said to be its most *relevant* ones, those that have significant expressive function. Devising a strategy means prioritizing the cultural, formal, semantic, stylistic, and genre-related properties of the ST according to two things: their relative textual relevance, and the amount of attention they should receive in translation. The aim is to deal with translation loss in as rational and systematic a way as possible. This implies being prepared, if necessary, to lose features that have relatively little textual relevance in a given ST (e.g. alliteration in a technical text on mining), sacrificing less relevant textual details to more relevant ones. And, of course, it implies using compensation to restore features of high textual relevance

www.kaues.org

that cannot be more directly rendered (e.g. a play on words in a literary text).

'Textual relevance' is thus a qualitative measure of how far particular properties of a text are responsible for its overall impact. Textually relevant features are those that stand out as making the text what it is. Since it is the translator who decides what is textually relevant, the decision is inescapably subjective. But not necessarily damagingly so. A fairly objective test of textual relevance is to imagine that a particular textual feature is omitted from the text and to assess what difference this would make to the overall impact of the text. If the answer is 'little or none', the property in question has little textual relevance. But if omitting it would imply a loss in either the genre-representative or the individual character of the text, then it has high textual relevance.

Developing a translation strategy by assessing textual relevance in an ST entails scanning the text for every *kind* of feature that might be relevant to producing an appropriate TT. For this scanning to be effective, it is vital to have in mind a systematic set of questions to ask of the ST. These questions correspond to the check-list of kinds of textual features introduced in the schema of textual matrices at the end of the Introduction to this book. The successive chapters of *Thinking Arabic Translation* tackle the sorts of translation issue lying behind the questions that need to be asked of texts. The idea is that the translator learns to ask the questions systematically, one after the other. As students working through the book will have found, it only takes a bit of practice to be able to do this very quickly and efficiently.

Some comments are called for on aspects of the relation between the schema of textual matrices and the book you have read. First, the 'cultural' matrix is different in focus from the others. Unlike the others, it does not list types of features that may *in themselves* be salient in the ST before the translator starts forming a strategy. Corresponding to Chapter 3, it lists types of features whose relevance can only be decided when the translator starts to form a strategy. That is, it draws attention to features that force the translator to choose between source-culture and target-culture elements. As such, it does invite the translator to assess how far the culture-specificity of ST features is textually relevant – this is why we have included it in the schema of textual matrices.

The other matrices are more straightforward reminders of what sorts of thing to look for when asking what the relevant features of a text are. Chapters 5, 6 and 11 correspond to the semantic matrix, introducing translation issues raised by the denotative, connotative and metaphorical properties of texts. Chapters 7–10 correspond to the formal matrix; the translation issues addressed here are the ones most typically raised by formal features of the texts. Chapter 12 corresponds to the varietal matrix; the questions to ask here concern language variety and its translation implications. Chapter 13, corresponding to the genre matrix, gives a set of parameters to apply in identifying textual genre preparatory to translation. (As is explained in the Introduction, and

www.kaues.org

stressed throughout the course, genre is a primary factor in deciding a strategy, but can itself only be determined after the other salient features of the ST have been identified. Hence its position following discussion of these other salient features rather than at the beginning of the course.) Chapter 14–16 then give a brief sample of the many sub-genres from which professional translators will normally choose their speciality.

Some vital topics in this book do not figure as such in the schema of matrices. This is because they either apply universally from top to bottom of the schema, or concern a translation operation, not a textual feature. Grammatical transposition, for example, is introduced in Chapter 2, but is of central relevance in every chapter and every practical. There is a case to be made for including it in the cultural matrix, but it is so all-pervasive that it is not useful to identify it as a discrete element in the matrix.

Another absolutely crucial topic, introduced as such in Chapter 4 but everywhere relevant, is compensation. More than anything else, successful compensation exemplifies the combination of imagination and rigour that is the mark of a good translator. However, even though compensation very often involves cultural and/or grammatical transposition, it is a translation operation, not a textual feature. So too is revising, which is introduced as such in Chapter 17, but is a vital stage in the translation process and figures in a number of chapters and practicals.

One pre-eminent translation issue is neither a textual feature nor a translation operation. This is the translation brief – why the text is being translated, on whose behalf, and for what audience. As we suggest in Chapter 13, it is useful, for practical translation needs, to see the communicative purpose of a text as very closely linked with its genre. Genre, of course, *is* a textual feature, and as such figures at the head of the schema at the end of the Introduction. The reason why it is placed at the top is precisely that it shares a prime importance with communicative purpose: the translation *process* will result in a translation *product*, a text having specific textual features, and produced in order to meet a communicative demand. This demand, formulated by the work-provider, is the translation brief. As the brief is neither a process nor a textual feature, it does not have a chapter to itself. But it has decisive importance, and that is why we have everywhere stressed its role as a parameter in assessing the relevance of ST and TT textual features, and why, in practicals, you have been asked to produce your TTs as if in response to a specific commission.

It should be remembered that the schema of matrices can be used to analyse any text, not just an ST. It can be applied to draft TTs, their features being systematically compared with those of the ST so as to see which details will be acceptable in the final version. Published TTs can also be evaluated in the same way. But whatever the text that is analysed by this method, never forget that the watchword is *thinking* translation. This course encourages a methodical approach based on reasoned analysis of textual

www.kaues.org

features and the translation problems they pose. But 'methodical' is not synonymous with 'mechanical' or 'automatic'. As we said in the Introduction, good translators know what they are doing: for thinking translation, there has to be a thinker, an individual person using flair and rigour to take creative, responsible decisions.

To sum up, then, we have tried to do two things in this course. First, to help you ask and answer the strategic questions we listed in Ch. 1.1: 'What is the message content of this particular ST? What are its salient linguistic features? What are its principal effects? What genre does it belong to and what audience is it aimed at? What are the functions and intended audience of my translation? What are the implications of these factors? If a choice has to be made among them, which ones should be given priority? And second, to help you use intelligent, creative techniques for the translation operation, the battle with the problems of syntax, lexis, etc. that has to be fought in translating particular expressions in their particular context.

Finally, having completed the course, you may wish to find out about becoming a professional translator. An excellent book giving advice for aspiring and practising translators is Samuellson-Brown (1993). A good place to find companies which offer in-house training and posts is the Institute of Translating and Interpreting (ITI) Bulletin, published every two months. The ITI offers membership, gained by examination and experience, which is valuable if you are thinking about progressing to freelance work. An equally valuable qualification is the Diploma in Translation of the Institute of Linguists (IoL); the examination for this is held every November, and a number of institutions offer preparatory courses for it, whether on site or by distance learning. For details of the services provided by these bodies, and the categories of membership they offer, you can visit their websites:

The Institute of Translation and Interpreting: www.ITI.org.uk
The Institute of Linguists: www.iol.org.uk

If you decide that you do want a career in translation, remember that you need to be enthusiastic and determined. Freelancing in particular can be precarious to begin with. Work flow is usually erratic, at least until you become established and have several work-providers. But once you are established, you will be unlikely to want to return to a routine job, as the independence of freelancing makes for an interesting, varied and stimulating occupation. May the loss be with you!

www.kaues.org

Glossary

This glossary contains a list of all key terms used in the book. These are picked out in the main text in bold when they first occur. Where terms are a major topic of a chapter or section in the book, the glossary also includes a reference to this chapter or section immediately after the term.

addition see **translation by addition**

affective meaning (Ch. 6.4) a type of **connotative meaning**, affective meaning is the emotive effect worked on the addressee by using one particular **linguistic expression** rather than others that might have been used to express the same literal message.

alliteration (Ch. 7.1.1) the recurrence of the same sound or sound-cluster at the beginning of two or more words occurring near or next to one another; not to be confused with **onomatopoeia**.

allusive meaning (Ch. 6.5) a type of **connotative meaning**; in a given **linguistic expression**, allusive meaning consists in invoking the meaning of an entire saying or quotation in which that expression figures. NB If a saying or quotation appears in full, that is a case of *citation*, e.g. 'The darling buds of May are just beautiful this year'; *allusion* occurs where only part of the saying or quotation is used, but that part evokes the meaning of the entire saying or quotation: e.g. 'Brrr ... No darling buds yet awhile, I'm afraid'.

anaphora see **grammatical anaphora** and **rhetorical anaphora**

associative meaning (Ch. 6.3) the **connotative meaning** of a **linguistic expression** which takes the form of attributing to the referent certain

www.kaues.org

stereotypically expected properties culturally associated with that referent.

assonance (Ch. 7.1.1) the recurrence of a sound or sound-cluster within words occurring near or next to one another; not to be confused with **onomatopoeia**.

attitudinal meaning (Ch. 6.2) the **connnotative meaning** of a **linguistic expression** which takes the form of implicitly conveying a commonly held attitude or value judgement in respect of the referent of the expression.

back-translation translation of a **TT** back into the **SL**; the resulting text will almost certainly not be identical to the original **ST**.

background information (Ch. 9.2.3) see **backgrounding**.

backgrounding (Ch. 9.2.3) the conveying in a sentence of background information, i.e. information which is not central to the overall topic of a particular section of **text**. Background information is normally conveyed through the use of subordinate clauses.

calque (Ch. 3.3) a form of **cultural transposition** whereby a **TT** expression is closely modelled on the grammatical structure of the corresponding **ST** expression; a calque is like a moment of **exoticism**, although exoticism proper is a feature of whole texts or sections of texts. NB Calque is different from **cultural borrowing**, which imports the ST expression verbatim into the TT.

code-switching (Ch. 12.5) the alternating use of two or more recognizably different language variants (varieties of the same language, or different languages) within the same **text**.

cognitive meaning see **denotative meaning**

coherence (adj. **coherent**) (Ch. 10.2.1) the tacit, yet intellectually discernible, thematic or affective development that characterizes a **text**, as distinct from a random sequence of unrelated sentences.

cohesion (adj. **cohesive**) (Ch. 10.2.1) the explicit and transparent linking of sentences and larger sections of **text** by the use of overt linguistic devices, such as conjunctions or **grammatical anaphora**, that act as 'signposts' for the **coherence** of the text.

collocative meaning (Ch. 6.6) the **connotative meaning** lent to a **linguistic expression** by the meaning of some other expression with which it

www.kaues.org

frequently collocates; e.g. 'intercourse' almost invariably acquires a connotation of 'sex' from the common collocation 'sexual intercourse'. Collocative meaning is thus the 'echo' of expressions that partner a given expression in commonly used phrases.

communicative translation (Ch. 2.1.4, 3.6) a mode of **free translation** whereby **ST** expressions are replaced with their contextually/situationally appropriate cultural equivalents in the **TL**; i.e. the **TL** uses situationally apt target culture equivalents in preference to **literal translation**.

compensation (Ch. 4) a technique of reducing **translation loss**; where any conventional translation, however **literal** or **free**, would entail an unacceptable translation loss, this loss is mitigated by deliberately introducing a less acceptable one, important **ST** effects being approximated in the **TT** through means other than those used in the ST. NB Unlike an unavoidable standard **grammatical transposition**, for example, compensation is not forced on the translator by the constraints of **TL** structure – it is a free, conscious, careful, ad hoc choice.

compensation by splitting (Ch. 4.2) **compensation** that involves dividing up a feature carried in a relatively shorter stretch of the **ST** and spreading it over a relatively longer stretch of the **TT**; an ad hoc choice, not a grammatical constraint.

compensation in kind (Ch. 4.2) **compensation** that involves using a different kind of textual effect in the **TT** from the one used in the corresponding part of the **ST**; an ad hoc choice, not a grammatical constraint; most compensation is compensation in kind, whatever other features it has.

compensation in place (Ch. 4.2) **compensation** which involves a **TT** textual effect occurring at a different place, relative to the other features in the TT context, from the corresponding textual effect in the **ST** context; an ad hoc choice, not a grammatical constraint.

connective (Ch. 10.2.1) an expression that links two sentences together (or, by extension, that links two clauses together), by making plain the relationship between those two sentences (or clauses).

connotation see **connotative meaning**.

connotative meaning (or **connotation**) (Ch. 6) the implicit overtones that a **linguistic expression** carries over and above its **denotative meaning**. NB The *overall meaning* of an expression is a compound of its literal meaning plus these overtones and its contextual nuances.

www.kaues.org

cultural borrowing (Ch. 3.5) taking over an **SL** expression verbatim from the **ST** into the **TT**; the borrowed term may remain unaltered in form, or it may undergo some degree of **transliteration**. NB Cultural borrowing differs from **calque** and **exoticism**, which do not use the **ST** expression verbatim, but adapt it into the **TL**, however minimally.

cultural transplantation (Ch. 3.4) the highest degree of **cultural transposition**, involving the wholesale deletion of source-culture details mentioned in the **ST** and their replacement with target-culture details in the **TT**.

cultural transposition (Ch. 3) any departure from **literal translation** that involves replacing **SL**-specific features with **TL**-specific features, thereby to some extent reducing the foreignness of the **TT**.

decisions of detail translation decisions taken in respect of specific problems of **lexis**, **syntax**, etc.; decisions of detail are taken in the light of previously taken **strategic decisions**, although they may well in their turn lead the translator to refine the original **strategy**.

denotative meaning (Ch. 5) the conventional range of referential meaning attributed to a **linguistic expression**. NB The *overall meaning* of an expression in context is compounded of this denotative meaning plus any **connotative meanings** and contextual nuances that the expression has.

dialect (Ch. 12.4) a language variety with non-standard features of accent, vocabulary, **syntax**, and **sentence** formation characteristic of the regional provenance of its users.

diglossia (Ch 12.4.1) a situation where two very different varieties of a language co-occur throughout a community of speakers, each having a distinct range of social functions. The coexistence of Standard Arabic (فصحى) and colloquial Arabic (عامية) is an example of diglossia.

discourse level (Ch. 10.2) the level of **textual variables** on which whole **texts** or sections of text are considered as **coherent** or **cohesive** entities.

editing (Ch. 17.3) the final 'polishing' of a **TT**, following **revision**, and focusing on matching TT style and presentation to the expectations of the target readership.

exegetic translation (Ch. 1.3) a style of translation in which the **TT** expresses and comments on additional details that are not explicitly conveyed in the **ST**; i.e. the TT is an explication, and usually an expansion, of the

www.kaues.org

contents of the ST.

exoticism (Ch. 3.2) the lowest degree of **cultural transposition**, importing linguistic and cultural features wholesale from the **ST** into the **TT** with minimal adaptation; exoticism generally involves multiple **calques**. NB Exoticism is different from **cultural borrowing**, which does not adapt ST material into the **TL**, but quotes it verbatim.

foreground information see **foregrounding**.

foregrounding (Ch. 9.2.3) the conveying in a sentence of foreground information, i.e. information which is central to the overall topic of a particular section of **text**. Foreground information is normally conveyed through the use of main clauses.

free translation (Ch. 2.1.3) a style of translation in which there is only a global correspondence between units of the **ST** and units of the **TT** – e.g. a rough sentence-to-sentence correspondence, or an even looser correspondence in terms of even larger sections of **text**.

generalization see **generalizing translation**.

generalizing translation (or **generalization**) (Ch. 5.1.3) rendering an ST expression by a **TL hyperonym**, e.g. translating خـــال as 'uncle'. The **denotative meaning** of the **TT** expression is wider and less specific than that of the corresponding ST expression; i.e. a generalizing translation omits detail that is explicitly present in the literal meaning of the ST expression.

genre (or **text-type**) (Chapter 13) a category to which, in a given culture, a given **text** is seen to belong and within which it is seen to share a type of communicative purpose with other texts; that is, the text is seen to be more or less typical of the genre.

gist translation (Ch. 1.3) a style of translation in which the **TT** expresses only the gist of the **ST**; i.e. the TT is at the same time a synopsis of the ST.

grammatical anaphora (Ch. 10.2.1) the replacement of previously used **linguistic expressions** by simpler and less specific expressions (such as pronouns) having the same contextual referent; e.g. 'I dropped the bottle, and *it* broke'.

grammatical level (Ch. 8.2) the level of **textual variables** on which are

www.kaues.org

considered words, the decomposition of inflected, derived and compound words into their **morphological** constituent parts, and the **syntactic** arrangement of words into phrases and **sentences**.

grammatical transposition translating an **ST** expression having a given grammatical structure by a **TT** expression having a different grammatical structure containing different parts of speech in a different arrangement.

hyperonym or **superordinate** (Ch. 5.1.2) a linguistic expression whose **denotative meaning** includes, but is wider and less specific than, the range of denotative meaning of another expression, e.g. 'vehicle' is a hyperonym of 'car'.

hyperonymy-hyponymy (Ch. 5.1.2) the semantic relationship between a **hyperonym** and a **hyponym**; a lesser degree of semantic equivalence than **synonymy**.

hyponym (Ch. 5.1.2) a **linguistic expression** whose **denotative meaning** is included in, but is narrower and more specific than, the range of denotative meaning of another expression; e.g. 'lorry' is a hyponym of 'vehicle'.

idiom a fixed expression whose meaning cannot be deduced from the **denotative meanings** of the words that constitute it; e.g. 'football's a *different kettle of fish*', 'that's not my *cup of tea*', 'she's so *stuck up*'.

idiomatic an idiomatic expression is one that is unremarkable, 'natural', 'normal', completely acceptable in a given language. NB 'Idiomatic' is not synonymous with **idiomizing**.

idiomizing translation a relatively **free translation** which respects the **ST** message content, but typically uses **TL idioms** or phonic and rhythmic patterns to give an easy read, even if this means sacrificing some semantic details or nuances of tone. NB 'Idiomizing' is not synonymous with **idiomatic**.

inter-semiotic translation translating from one semiotic system (i.e. system for communication) into another.

interlinear translation (Ch. 2.1.1) a style of translation in which the **TT** provides a literal rendering for each successive meaningful unit of the **ST** (including affixes) and arranges these units in the order of their occurrence in the ST, regardless of the conventional grammatical order of units in the **TL**.

www.kaues.org

intertextual level (Ch. 10.3) the level of **textual variables** on which **texts** are considered as bearing significant external relationships to other texts, e.g. by allusion or imitation, or by virtue of **genre** membership.

intralingual translation (Ch. 1.3) the re-expression of a message conveyed in a particular form of words in a given language by means of another form of words in the same language.

lexical item repetition (Ch. 8.2.4.1) Repetition of a the same lexical item (word) in close proximity.

lexicalized metaphor (Ch. 11.2.1) a metaphor whose meaning is relatively fixed, and which can therefore be given a dictionary definition.

lexis (adj. **lexical**) the totality of the words in a given language.

linguistic expression a self-contained and meaningful item in a given language, such as a word, a phrase, or a **sentence**.

literal meaning see **denotative meaning**

literal translation (Ch. 2.1.2) an **SL**-oriented, word-for-word, style of translation in which the **denotative meaning** of all words in the **ST** is taken as if straight from the dictionary, but the conventions of **TL** grammar are respected.

metaphor (Ch. 11) a figure of speech in which two things (or ideas or emotions) are likened to one another by being fused together into a new, non-denotative compound, e.g. 'the army is a rampart against invasion', 'the red, red rose of my love', 'he blew a fuse'; metaphor is thus different from *simile*, in which the two things are compared, but not fused together, e.g. 'the army is like a rampart against invasion', 'my love is like a red, red rose', 'it was as if he were an electrical installation with a fuse that blew'.

morphology (adj. **morphological**) (Ch. 8.2) the branch of grammar that concerns the arrangement of basic grammatical elements, *morphemes*, into words.

non-lexicalized metaphor (Ch. 11.2.1) a metaphor whose range of potential meanings is not definable, and which cannot therefore be given a dictionary definition.

omission see **translation by omission**

www.kaues.org

onomatopoeia (Ch. 7.1.2) a word whose phonic form imitates a sound; not to be confused with **alliteration** or **assonance**.

parallelism (Ch. 5.2.1) the use in close proximity of two or more words or phrases which bear a semantic relationship to one another, such as **synonymy**, **hyperonymy-hyponymy**, or membership of the same **semantic field**.

partial overlap see **partially overlapping translation**.

partially overlapping translation (or **partial overlap**) (Ch. 5.1.4) rendering an **ST** expression by a **TL** expression whose range of **denotative meanings** overlaps only partially with that of the ST expression, e.g. translating أستاذة as 'lecturer'; i.e. the denotative meaning of the **TT** expression both *adds* some detail not explicit in the denotative meaning of the ST expression (she works in a university, not in a school) and *omits* some other detail that *is* explicit in the denotative meaning of the ST expression (she is female); partially overlapping translation thus simultaneously combines elements of **generalizing translation** and **particularizing translation**.

particularization see **particularizing translation**.

particularizing translation (or **particularization**) (Ch. 5.1.3) rendering an **ST** expression by a **TL hyponym**; e.g. translating ساعة as 'watch'. The **denotative meaning** of the **TT** expression is narrower and more specific than that of the corresponding ST expression; i.e. a particularizing translation adds detail to the TT that is not explicitly expressed in the ST.

pattern repetition (Ch. 8.2.3.1) the repetition of the same pattern (فَعَل, فاعل, مَفْعُول, فُعْل, مَفْعَلة, etc.) in two or more words in close proximity, as in أفكار وأحلام 'thoughts and dreams'.

phonic/graphic level (Ch. 7.1) the level of **textual variables** on which is considered the patterned organization of sound-segments (phonemes) in speech, or of letters (graphemes) in writing.

phrase repetition (Ch. 8.2.4.2) Repetition of a the same phrase in close proximity.

polysemy a situation in which a lexical item has a range of different and distinct meanings or senses, e.g. *plain* = (i) 'clear', (ii) 'unadorned', (iii) 'tract of flat country'. A large proportion of a language's vocabulary is traditionally regarded as polysemic (or polysemous).

www.kaues.org

propositional meaning see **denotative meaning**

prosodic level (Ch. 7.2) the level of **textual variables** on which are considered 'metrically' patterned stretches of speech within which syllables have varying degrees of *prominence* (e.g. through stress and vowel-differentiation), varying degrees of *pace* (e.g. through length and tempo), and varying qualities of *pitch*.

reflected meaning (Ch. 6.7) the **connotative meaning** given to a **linguistic expression** by the fact either that the form used calls to mind another **denotative meaning** of the same word or phrase (in which case reflected meaning is a function of **polysemy**), or that the form used calls to mind another denotative meaning of another word or phrase which is the same or similar in form (in which case reflected meaning is a function of *homonymy*, or near-homonymy); i.e. reflected meaning is the 'echo' of another denotative meaning whose form sounds or is spelt the same or nearly the same as the form in question.

register see **social register** and **tonal register**.

rephrasing (Ch. 1.3) the exact rendering of the message content of a given **ST** in a **TT** that is radically different in form, but *neither* adds details which are *not* explicitly conveyed by the ST, *nor* omits details that *are* explicitly conveyed in it; perfect rephrasing is rarely achieved.

revision (Ch. 17.2) checking a **TT** against the **ST**; compare **editing**.

rheme see **theme**

rhetorical anaphora (Ch. 10.2.1) the repetition for rhetorical effect of a word or words at the beginning of successive or closely associated clauses or phrases.

rhyme (Ch. 7.1.1) rhyme occurs when, in two or more words, the last stressed vowel and all the sounds that follow it are identical and in the same order.

root repetition (Ch. 8.2.3.2) repetition of the same root in two or more words in close proximity, as in التنظير والتحليل.

semantic distancing (Ch. 5.2) relaying both elements of an ST phrase involving **synonyms** or near-synonyms by different words in the TL, but choosing TL words whose meanings are more obviously distinct than those of their ST counterparts. An example is 'astonishes and alarms' in the translation of يدهشه ويذهله as 'it astonishes and alarms him'.

www.kaues.org

semantic field (Ch. 5.2.1) an area of meaning which is recognized as being fairly discrete; e.g. the semantic field of terms describing agricultural machinery.

semantic repetition (Ch. 5.2) the repetition of **synonyms** or near-synonyms in close proximity. Semantic repetition is used in Arabic for emphasis and other purposes.

sentence (Ch. 9.1) a complete, self-contained linguistic unit capable of acting as a vehicle for communication; over and above the basic grammatical units that it contains, a sentence must have sense-conferring properties of intonation or punctuation in English (although in Arabic some writing is without punctuation). It may in addition contain features of word order etc. which contribute to the overall meaning, or 'force', of the sentence.

sentential level (Ch. 9.1) the level of **textual variables** on which **sentences** are considered.

SL see **source language**.

social register (Ch. 12.2.2.) a style of speaking/writing from which relatively detailed stereotypical information about the social identity of the speaker/writer can be inferred.

sociolect (Ch. 12.3) a language variety with features of accent, vocabulary, **syntax** and **sentence**-formation characteristic of the class and other social affiliations of it users.

source language (or **SL**) the language in which the **ST** is expressed.

source text (or **ST**) the **text** requiring translation.

ST see **source text**.

strategic decisions the initial decisions that constitute the translator's **strategy**; strategic decisions are taken, in the light of the nature of the **ST** and the requirements of the **TT**, as to which ST properties should have priority in translation; **decisions of detail** are taken in the light of these strategic decisions.

strategy the translator's overall 'game-plan', consisting of decisions taken before starting to translate in detail – e.g. whether and when to give **denotative meaning** a higher priority than style, to address a lay readership

www.kaues.org

or a specialist one, to maximize or minimize foreignness in the **TT**, to use formal language or slang, prose or verse, etc.

suffix repetition (Ch. 8.2.3.3) repetition of the same suffix at the end of words in close proximity. An example is the repetition of ـات in: أرض النبوءات والرسالات والخرافات والمخابرات.

superordinate see **hyperonym**

synonym (Ch. 5.1.1) a **linguistic expression** that has exactly the same range of **denotative meaning** as one of more other linguistic expressions.

synonymy (Ch. 5.1.1) the semantic relationship between **synonyms**; synonymy is the highest degree of semantic equivalence.

syntax (adj. **syntactic**) (Ch. 8.2) the branch of grammar that concerns the arrangement of words into phrases, and – with the addition of features of intonation, punctuation and word order – into **sentences**.

target language (or **TL**) the language into which the **ST** is to be translated.

target text (or **TT**) the **text** which is a translation of the **ST**.

text any stretch of speech or writing produced in a given language (or mixture of languages – cf. **code-switching**) and assumed to make a **coherent** whole on the **discourse level**.

text-type see **genre**.

textual variables all the demonstrable features contained in a **text**, and which could (in another text) have been different; i.e. each textual variable constitutes a genuine *option* in the text.

theme (and **rheme**) (Ch. 9.2.2) the organization of phrases and **sentences**, mainly through word ordering, into elements which have greater or lesser degrees of predictability.

TL see **target language**.

tonal register (Ch. 12.2.1) a style of speaking/writing adopted as a means of conveying an affective attitude of the speaker/writer to the addressee. The **connotative meaning** of a feature of tonal register is an **affective meaning**, conveyed by the choice of one out of a range of expressions capable of conveying a particular literal message; e.g. 'Excuse me, please' vs 'Shift your butt'.

www.kaues.org

translation by addition (Ch. 2.2.1.2) the addition to the **TT** of something which does not occur in the **ST**.

translation by omission (Ch. 2.2.1.1) the omission from the **TT** of something which occurs in the **ST**.

translation loss (Ch. 2.2.1) any feature of incomplete replication of the **ST** in the **TT**; translation loss is therefore not limited to the omission of ST features in the TT; where the TT has features not present in the ST, the addition of these also counts as translation loss. In any given TT, translation loss is inevitable on most levels of **textual variables**, and likely on all. NB The translation losses in the TT are only significant in so far as they prevent the successful implementation of the translator's **strategy** for the TT.

transliteration (Ch. 3.7) the use of **TL** spelling conventions for the written representation of SL expressions.

TT see **target text**.

www.kaues.org

References

English-language references

Abrams, M.H. 1985. *A Glossary of Literary Terms*. 6th edn. Fort Worth and London: Harcourt Brace Jovanovich.

Al-Hilali, T. and Khan, M.M. 1997. *Interpretation of the Meanings of the Noble Quran in the English Language*. Riyadh: مكتبة الدار.

Al-Jubouri, A. 1984. 'The role of repetition in Arabic argumentative discourse', in Swales, H. and Mustafa, H. (eds.) *English for Specific Purposes in the Arab World*. University of Aston Language Studies Unit.

Al-Muhammad, M. 1993. *Patterns of Cohesion in Medical Textbook Discourse in Arabic and English*. PhD thesis: University of Surrey.

Anderson, A. and Avery, C. 1995. 'Checking comes in from the cold', *ITI Bulletin*, February 1995.

Badawi, E. and Hinds, M.J. 1986. *A Dictionary of Egyptian Arabic*. Beirut: Librairie du Liban.

Baker, M. 1992. *In Other Words*. London: Routledge.

Beeston, A.F.L. 1970. *The Arabic Language Today*. London: Hutchinson.

Boothby, D. 1996. *Translation of magazine article on tourism in Morocco*. BA translation project: University of Durham.

Brown, C. 1996. *Translation of extracts from مدينة البغي by عيسى بشارة* BA translation project: University of Durham.

Calderbank, T. 1990. *Translation Strategies for an Arabic Political Argumentative Text*. Unpublished MA dissertation: University of Salford.

Conduit, N. 1998. *Translation of الانتخابات البريطانية* (from العالم magazine, May 1997). BA translation project: University of Durham.

Crystal, D. 1991. *A Dictionary of Linguistics and Phonetics*. Oxford: Blackwell.

Dickins, J. and Watson, J.C.E. 1999. *Standard Arabic: An Advanced Course*.

www.kaues.org

Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

Dickson, J. 1999. *Translation of three speeches by* جمال عبد الناصر (n.d. In قال الرئيس. Cairo: دار الهلال). BA translation project: University of Durham.

Egyptian General Petroleum Corporation (الهيئة المصرية العامة للبترول). October 1999. *Petroleum*. Cairo.

Eid, M. and Holes, C. (eds). 1993. *Perspectives on Arabic linguistics V*. Current Issues in Linguistic Theory, 101. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.

El-Serafi, I. 1994. *Translation of* السكان .. عقبة ام مورد *by* عبد الرحمن زكي ابراهيم (from العربي magazine, no. 420, November 1993). BA translation project: University of Durham.

Evans, J. 1996. *Translation of* مستقبل الارض *by* امين حامد مشعل (from العربي magazine, no. 418, September 1993). BA translation project: University of Durham.

Evans, P. 1994. *Translation of* معهد الدراسات النغمية ومستقبل الموسيقى العراقية *by* قاسم حسين (n.d. In دراسات في الموسيقى العراقية. Beirut: المؤسسة العربية للدراسات والنشر). BA translation project: University of Durham.

Flacke, M. 1999. *Translation of* مجابهة العدو ... معيار استعادة مصر الصهيوني *by* إنعام رعد (from شؤون فلسطينية magazine, no. 127, 1982). BA translation project: University of Durham.

Flood, J. (ed.). 1983. *Understanding Reading Comprehension*. Delaware: International Reading Association.

Foreman, D. 1996. *Translation of* السيد ومراته في مصر *by* بيرم التونسي. BA translation project: University of Durham.

Goatly, A. 1997. *The Language of Metaphors*. London: Routledge.

Graham, J.D. 1983. 'Checking, revision and editing', in C. Picken (ed.) *The Translator's Handbook*. London: Aslib.

Halliday, M.A.K. and Hasan, R. 1976. *Cohesion in English*. London: Longman.

Hasan, R. 1983. 'Coherence and cohesive harmony', in Flood, J. (ed.) *Understanding Reading Comprehension*. Delaware: International Reading Association.

Hatim, B. 1997. *Communication across Cultures: Translation Theory and Text Linguistics*. Exeter: University of Exeter Press.

Hatim, B. and Mason, I. 1990. *Discourse and the Translator*. London: Longman.

Hatim, B. and Mason, I. 1997. *The Translator as Communicator*. London: Longman.

Hervey, S.G.J. 1992. 'Registering registers', *Lingua*, 86.

Hervey, S.G.J. and Higgins, I. 1992. *Thinking Translation: A Course in*

www.kaues.org

Translation Method: French to English. London: Routledge.
Hetherington, M. 1996. *Translation of* لعبة الضفادع والعقارب في عواصم الشرق الاوسط *by* عادل حمودة (from روز اليوسف magazine, no. 3521, 1995). BA translation project: University of Durham.
Hitti, Y.K. and Al-Khatib, A. 1989. *Hitti's New Medical Dictionary*. Beirut: Librairie du Liban.
Holes, C. 1993. 'The uses of variation: a study of the political speeches of Gamal Abd Al-Nasir', in Eid, M. and Holes, C. (eds) *Perspectives on Arabic Linguistics V*. Current Issues in Linguistic Theory, 101. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
Holes, C. 1995. *Modern Arabic: Structures, Functions and Varieties*. London and New York: Longman.
Hollander, J. 1981. *Rhyme's Reason: A Guide to English Verse*. New Haven and London: Yale University Press.
Holmes, J.S. 1988. *Translated!* Amsterdam: Rodopi.
Hourani, A. 1991. *A History of the Arab Peoples*. London: Faber and Faber.
Humphrys, S. 1999. *Translation of extract from* العسكر والحكم في البلدان العربية *by* فؤاد اسحاق الخوري (1990. Beirut: Al-Saqi Books). BA translation project: University of Durham.

Ibn Khaldûn. [1958] 1967. *The Muqaddima: an Introduction to History* (3 vols), Rosenthal, F. (trans.). (Bollingen Series XLIII). Princeton: Princeton University Press.
Irwin, R. 1999. *Night and Horses and the Desert: The Penguin Anthology of Classical Arabic Literature*. Harmondsworth: Penguin Books.
Ives, S. 1999. *Translation of* غارات حلف الاطلسي ستستمر اسابيع ولن تتوقف خلال «الفصح» *and* مدينة الموت (from الشرق الاوسط 2 April 1999). BA translation project: University of Durham.

Jakobson, R. 1971. *Selected Writings*, vol. II. The Hague: Mouton.
Johnstone, B. 1991. *Repetition in Arabic: Paradigms, Syntagms and the Ecology of Language*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.
Jones, L. 1999. *Translation of* الحاج رئيسا للكتائب بفارق ٧ أصوات (from النهار newspaper, 2 March 1999). BA translation project: University of Durham.

Karkouti, M. (ed.). 2000. *Golden Falcon/*الصقر الذهبي (Inflight magazine of Gulf Air), September 2000. Bahrain: Gulf Air Publicity and Promotions Dept.
Keats, J. 1958. *The Poetical Works of John Keats*, Garrod, H.W. (ed.). 2nd edn. London and New York: Longman.
Khayat, M.H. et al. 1983. *The Unified Medical Dictionary: English–Arabic–French*. Switzerland: Medlevant AG.

www.kaues.org

Lane, A. 1994. *Translation of extracts from البخلاء by الجاحظ*. BA translation project: University of Durham.
Leech, G. 1981. *Semantics*. Harmondsworth: Pelican Books.
Leith, D. 1983. *A Social History of English*. London: Routledge, Kegan and Paul.
Lynn, J. and Jay, A. 1990. *The Complete Yes Minister*. London etc.: Guild Publishing.

Meissner, J.M. and Starkey, P. (eds.) 1998. *Encyclopedia of Arabic Literature* (2 vols). London: Routledge.
Merchant, A. 2000. *Translation of صلابة حجر .. ورقة بشر – أكراد العراق .. الى اين* (from العربي magazine, no. 494, March 2000). BA translation project: University of Durham.
Monteil, V. 1960. *L'arabe moderne*. Paris: Klincksieck.
Montgomery, A. 1994. *Translation of نخلة على الجدول by الطيب صالح* (1953. Beirut: دار العودة). BA translation project: University of Durham.

Neubert, A. and Shreve, G.M. 1992. *Translation as Text*. Kent, Ohio: The Kent State University Press.
Newmark, P. 1981. *Approaches to Translation*. Oxford: Pergamon.
Newmark, P. 1988. *A Textbook of Translation*. New York: Prentice Hall International.
Nicholson, R.A. 1987. *Translations of Eastern Poetry and Prose*. London: Curzon Press; New Jersey: Humanities Press.
Nida, E. 1964. *Toward a Science of Translating*. Leiden: Brill.

Pennington, S. 1999. *Translation of المسلمون في أمريكا وتأثيرهم في المستقبل by الحاج داود الحاوي* (from العربي magazine, no. 470, January 1998). BA translation project: University of Durham.
Pinchuk, 1977. *Scientific and Technical Translation*. London: Andre Deutsch.

Reiss, K. [1977] 1989. 'Text-types, translation types and translation assessment', in Chesterman, A. (ed.) *Readings in Translation Theory*. Helsinki: Finn Lectura.
Republic of Yemen, Ministry of Culture and Tourism. 1997. Arabic version: الجوف – مارب – شبوة; English version: *Al-Jouf–Marib–Shabwa*. Sana'a: General Authority of Tourism.
Republic of Yemen, Ministry of Culture and Tourism. N.d. .. سقطرى جزيرة السعادة / *Socotra: the Island of Happiness*. Sana'a: General Authority of Tourism.
Roden, C. 1970. *A Book of Middle Eastern Food*. Harmondsworth: Penguin Books.
Rodwell, J.M. 1909. *The Koran*. London: Dent.
Rolph, D. 1995. *Translation of الى بيروت الانثى مع حبي by نزار قباني*.

www.kaues.org

(In الاعمال الشعرية الكاملة, vol II. 1981. Beirut: منشورات نزار قباني). BA translation project: University of Durham.

Samuellson-Brown, G. 1993. *A Practical Guide for Translators*. Clevedon, Bristol PA, Adelaide SA: Multilingual Matters.

Sekine, F. 1996. *Clause Combining in Contextual Grammar in English*. PhD thesis: University of Birmingham.

Snell-Hornby, M. 1988. *Translation Studies: An Integrated Approach*. Amsterdam: John Benjamins.

Sperber, D. and Wilson, D. 1986. *Relevance: Communication and Cognition*. Oxford: Blackwell.

St John, J. 1999. *Translation of حقل البنفسج and النار والماء by زكريا تامر* (1973. In دمشق الحرائق. Damascus: دار الانوار). BA translation project: University of Durham.

Stabler, H. 1999. *Translation of تعريب التعليم في نهايات القرن العشرين by يعقوب احمد الشراح* (from العربي magazine, no. 483, February 1999). BA translation project: University of Durham.

Stoetzer, W. 1998. 'Prosody', in Meissner, J.M. and Starkey, P. (eds) *Encyclopedia of Arabic Literature* (2 vols.). London: Routledge.

Swales, H. and Mustafa, H. (eds.) 1984. *English for Specific Purposes in the Arab World*. University of Aston Language Studies Unit.

Toury, G. 1980. *In Search of a Theory of Translation*. Tel Aviv: The Porter Institute for Poetics and Semiotics.

Tunnicliffe, S. 1994. *Translation of الخيول and ذلك الرجل وتلك المرأة by عبد الرحمن مجيد الربيعي* (1976. Tunis). BA translation project: University of Durham.

Turner, C. 1997. *The Quran: A New Interpretation*. Richmond: Curzon.

Wehr, H. 1974. *A Dictionary of Modern Written Arabic*, Cowan, J.M. (ed.). 3rd edn. Beirut: Librairie du Liban.

Arabic-language references

ادريس, يوسف. 1954. مشوار (short story), in *أرخص ليالي* (collection). Cairo: مكتبة مصر.

ادريس, يوسف.1971. الرحلة (short story), in بيت من لحم (collection) Cairo: مكتبة مصر.

ادريس, يوسف. N.d.*a*. الشيخ شيخة (short story), in *آخر الدنيا* (collection). Cairo: مكتبة مصر.

ادريس, يوسف. N.d.*b* طبلية من السماء (short story) in حادثة شرف (collection). Cairo: مكتبة مصر.

www.kaues.org

أكلات تونسية .. ٢٤ طريقة إعداد. N.d. Hamamat: مطبعة الخليج.
الأسد, ناصر الدين. 1997. نحن والآخر. Amman: المؤسسة العربية للدراسات والنشر.
الرأي (newspaper). 12 December 1988. الأردن .. على العهد. Amman.
العالم (magazine). May 1997. الانتخابات البريطانية. London.
المنجد في اللغة والإعلام. 1996. Beirut: دار الشرق.
المهدوي, طارق اسماعيل. 1986. الاخوان المسلمون على مذبح المناورة. Beirut: دار آزال
الوطن (newspaper). February 1988. تغيير الحكومة المصرية Kuwait.
الوطن (newspaper). 18 April 1988. اختطاف الطائرة .. اختطاف العقل. Kuwait.
امين, مصطفى. 21 September 1982. فكرة, in الشرق الأوسط (newspaper). London.
امين, مصطفى. 6 November 1995. فكرة, in الشرق الأوسط (newspaper). London.

تامر, زكريا. 1973. حقل البنفسج and النار والماء (short stories) in دمشق الحرائق (collection). Damascus: دار الانوار.

حسن, يوسف فضل. 1986. الشلوخ. Khartoum: Khartoum University Press.
حمودة, عادل. 4 December 1995. لعبة الضفادع والعقارب في عواصم الشرق الاوسط, in روز اليوسف (magazine), no. 3521. Cairo.

صالح, الطيب. N.d. عرس الزين. Beirut: دار العودة.
صالح, الطيب. 1953. نخلة على جدول. Beirut: دار العودة.

عبد الرحمن, أسعد. 1990. السياسة الأمريكية تجاه فلسطين, in الرأي (newspaper). Amman.
عبد الناصر, جمال. N.d. كفاحنا للقومية العربية (speech), in قال الرئيس. Cairo: دار الهلال.

قباني, نزار. 1981. الأعمال الشعرية الكاملة. Beirut: منشورات نزار قباني
قطب, سيد. 1990. معالم في الطريق. Cairo–Beirut: دار الشروق.

مشعل, حامد امين. 1993. مستقبل الارض In العربي (magazine), no. 418. Kuwait.

www.kaues.org

Index

Bold type denotes a term that figures in the glossary, and the page where it is first discussed.

LATIN-SCRIPT

Abrams, M.H. 146
accent, regional 166, 235, 241
accentuation *see* stress
addition, *see* **translation by addition**
advertisement, advertising 179, 207, 210; *see also* persuasive genres
affective meaning 69, 70, 163, 232, 242
alliteration 21, 44, 74, 81–4, 92, 96, 97, 105, 106, 108, 191, 228, 232, 239
allusion 70–1, 141–2, 232
allusive meaning 70–71, 232
anapest, anapestic 89
anaphora *see* **grammatical anaphora, rhetorical anaphora**
Anderson, A. 223
association 66, 68–9, 97
associative meaning 68–9, 232
assonance 44, 74, **81**–4, 92, 96, 97, 105, 106–7, 108, 191, 232, 239
attitudinal meaning 66–8, 233
Avery, C. 223
back-translation 20, 233
background, backgrounding 23, 74, 114, 119–21, 233
Baker, M. 116, 128, 175
balanced (ST/TL) translation 17–18, 25–6, 35
brief *see* translation brief
calque 29, **31**, 42, 99, 233, 235, 236
code-switching 169–72, 173, 233, 242
cognitive meaning *see* **denotative meaning**
coherence, coherent 43, 127, **128**–38, 233, 235, 242
cohesion, cohesive 23, 100, 105, 109, 111, 127, **128**–38, 233, 235
collocation 71–2, 74
collocative meaning 43, **71**–2, 233
communicative translation 17, 18, 29, 35, 42, 49, 234
compensation 2, 3, 31, **40**–51, 58, 83–4, 85, 141, 151, 168, 170, 172, 228, 230, 234
compensation by splitting 47, 48, 234
compensation in kind 44–5, 46, 47, 48, 172, 234
compensation in place 45, 48, 172, 234

www.kaues.org

connective 59, 87–8, 128–9, 131–6, 142–4, 192, 234
connotation 10, 41, 43, 66–76, 78, 92, 97, 168, 178
connotative meaning 2, 44, 52, 66–76, 84, 146, 229, 232, 233, 234, 235, 240, 242
constitutional translation 2, 198–206
consumer-oriented texts 2, 3, 207–16; *see also* persuasive genres
context, contextual 7, 9, 16–17, 19–25, 30, 32, 35–6, 40–44, 48–9, 52, 54, 56–9, 67, 69, 72–4, 81, 82–6, 92, 97, 99–100, 102, 106, 108, 115, 120–2, 129, 147–50, 152–3, 155, 157–8, 165–8, 170, 178–9, 184–7, 219, 221, 231
coordination 120, 124, 134, 219, 220
crossover (between oral and written genres) 180
Crystal, D. 166
cultural borrowing 29, **32**–4, 99, 166, 233, 235, 236
cultural transplantation 29, **32**, 46, 168, 235
cultural transposition 23, **29**–39, 230, 233, 235, 236

dactyl, dactylic 89
dead metaphor 149, 150, 156, 157, 159
decisions of detail (defined) **7**, 235, 241
denotative meaning 2, 10, 34, 43, 44, **52**–65, 66–7, 70, 72, 78, 84, 92, 96, 97, 101, 146, 229, 234, 235, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242
dialect 2, 4, 5, 85, 97, 114, **166**–72, 235
Dickins, J. 4, 59, 99, 103, 108, 116, 119, 134, 135, 140
diglossia **167**–9, 211–12, 235
discourse level 23, 79, **127**–38, 218, 219, 235, 242
drama 180

editing 2, **217**, 220, 221–3, 235, 240
emphasis 74, 105, 106, 107, 108, 118, 241
empirical genres 133, 164, 179, 181, 212; *see also* scientific text, technical text
equivalence, equivalent effect18–21; *see also* semantic equivalence
exegetic translation **9**–12, 40, 41, 235
exoticism **29**–30, 31, 32, 36, 92, 100, 233, 235, 236
extended metaphor 155–8, 159

faithful translation 17–18
film 180
foot (metrical) 89–92
foreign, foreignness 29–39, 242; *see also* **exoticism**
foreground, foregrounding 74, 114, 119, **120**–1, 134, 236
formal properties of texts *see* **textual variables**
free translation **16**–18, 234, 236, 237
free verse 91, 92
function of text *see* purpose of ST or TT
function of textual features 83, 91, 165, 168, 181; *see also* purpose, communicative

generalization *see* **generalizing translation**
generalizing translation **56**–57, 58–9, 236, 239
genre 2, 3, 6, 131, 134, 139–40, 164, **175**–83, 184, 190, 192, 212, 213, 228, 229, 230, 231, 236, 238
gist translation **8**, 12, 13, 236
Goatly, A. 148
Graham, J.D. 221, 222–3
grammatical anaphora 59, **129**, 233, 236
grammatical level 46, 79, 96–112, 236
grammatical transposition **16**, 43, 49, 60, 96, 101, 104, 123,

www.kaues.org

124, 230, 234, 237
graphic features *see* **phonic/graphic level**
graphic level *see* **phonic/graphic level**

Halliday, M.A.K. 128
Hasan, R. 128, 134
Hatim, B. 23, 175, 176
Hervey, S. 162, 175
Holes, C. 170–1, 173
Hollander, J. 89
Holmes, J.S. 18
homonymy 21, 240
Hourani, A. 139
Hymes, D. 175
hyperonym, superordinate 48, **55**–7, 62, 236, 237
hyperonymy-hyponymy 54, **55**–7, 237, 239
hyponym 55–7, 62, 237, 239

iamb, iambic 89, 92
idiom 18, 106, 237
idiomatic 11, **18**, 31, 43, 100, 101, 157, 159, 172, 177, 203, 210, 237
idiomizing translation 17–**18**, 67, 237
informative texts *see* empirical genres
Institute of Linguists 231
Institute of Translation and Interpreting 231
inter-semiotic translation 7–8, 237
interlinear translation 15–16, 17, 18, 237
intersentential 127–38; *see also* **discourse level**
intertextual level, intertextuality 70, 79, 138, **139**–42, 238
intonation 86, 87, 88, 114–116, 241, 242
intralingual translation 8–10, 12, 238
Irwin, R. 139, 140
ITI *see* Institute of Translation and Interpreting

Jakobson, R. 7, 8

Keats, J. 82–3, 89, 96, 113, 127, 141

language variety 3, 23, 162–74, 229, 235, 241
Leech, G. 148
legal translation 3, 181, 196, 203
levels of textual variables *see* **textual variables**
lexical item repetition 77, 105, 106, **108**–11, 112, 128, 129, 130–1, 238
lexicalized metaphor 147–50, 238
lexis, lexical 7, 22, **97**, 113, 166, 184–8, 218, 231, 235, 238; *see also* **connotative meaning, denotative meaning**
linguistic expression (defined) 238, 240, 242
literal meaning *see* **denotative meaning**
literal translation 10, **16**–18, 25–6, 35, 43, 44, 49, 234, 235, 238
literary genres *see* literary texts
literary texts 81–92, 100, 134, 164, 178, 181, 189
literary translation *see* literary texts
loan-words 21–2

main clause, main element 74, 120–3, 134, 138, 198, 199, 200, 236
Mason, I. 175, 176
matrices *see* textual matrices
metaphor 1, 2, 3, 17, 25, 43, 72, 73, 74, 106, 107, 146, **147**–61, 177, 229, 238; *see also* conventionalized, dead, extended, **lexicalized**, mixed, **non-lexicalized**, original, recent *and* stock metaphor
metaphor downtoning 58–60
metre, metrical 89–92, 240
metric structure of speech *see* **prosodic level**
mixed metaphor 155–8
Monteil, V. 65
morphology, morphological 74,

www.kaues.org

96, 98, 100–8, 237

names 35–6
Neubert, A. 175
Newmark, P. 17, 146, 149, 155
Nicholson, R.A. 139–40
Nida, E. 18, 19
non-lexicalized metaphor **147**–50, 152–5, 157, 238

omission *see* **translation by omission**
onomatopoeia **85**–6, 178, 232, 239
oral text (*vs* written text) 80–95, 97, 115–6, 162, 177, 179–80
original metaphor 149, 150, 152

paragraphing (for coherence) 138
parallelism *see* **semantic parallelism**
partial overlap *see* **partially overlapping translation**
partially overlapping translation 57, **58**–9, 239
particularization *see* **particularizing translation**
particularizing translation **56**–7, 58–9, 239
pattern repetition 77, 84, **100**–3, 239
pentameter 89, 92
persuasive genres 63, 179, 181; *see also* advertising
philosophical genres 179, 181
phonic features 78, 113; *see also* **phonic/graphic level**
phonic/graphic level 21, 46, 79, **80**–6, 92, 239
phrase repetition 105, 106, **108**, 111–12, 129, 131, 239
Pinchuk, I. 191, 192
pitch 86, 240
poetry, poetic 15, 81–94, 106, 108, 170, 177, 180; *see also* verse
polysemy 72–3, 178, 239, 240
Pompadour, Mme de 141
prosodic features 114–16; *see also* **prosodic level**
prosodic level 21, 77, 79, **86**–92, 240
proverb 17, 31, 35, 40
punctuation 115–6, 127, 134, 136, 218, 241, 242
purpose, communicative 86, 87, 113, 129, 176, 230; *see also* function of textual features
purpose of ST or TT 2, 3, 6, 16, 41, 165, 176, 181, 231

quotation 141, 181
Quran 11, 141

recent metaphor 149, 152
reflected meaning **72**–3, 240
register 2, 45, 78, 92, 162, 168, 169, 170, 190, 212, 213, 221; *see also* **social register**, **tonal register**
Reiss, K. 175
religious genres 178–9, 181
rephrasing **10**, 12, 240
revision, revising 2, **217**, 218–21, 230, 235, 240
rheme 74, 114, **116**–19, 121–3, 128, 138; *see also* **theme**
rhetorical anaphora 74, 105, 111, **129**, 131, 240
rhyme 21, 44, 74, **81**–4, 90, 92, 139–40, 240
rhythm, rhythmic 44, 86, 89–90, 191
root repetition 77, 100, **103**–8, 109, 128, 131, 240

Samuellson-Brown, G. 231
scientific text 2, 82, 179, 184, 212; *see also* empirical genres, technical text
semantic distancing **60**, 101, 240
semantic equivalence 34, 52–63, 242
semantic field **62**, 100, 155, 239, 241
semantic parallelism 1, **62**–3, 74, 84, 103, 106–7, 159, 177, 239
semantic repetition 10, **59**–63, 74, 101–2, 241
sentence 23, 78, 98, **113**–26, 127, 128, 131, 136–7, 166, 208, 219, 234, 235, 237, 238, 241, 242
sentential level 78, 79, 96,

www.kaues.org

113–26, 127, 129, 218, 219, 241
Shreve, G.M. 175
simile 148, 151, 154, 238
SL *see* **source language**
Snell-Hornby, M. 18, 175
social register 163–5, 166, 190, 241
sociolect 2, **165**–6, 168, 169, 170, 241
sound-symbolism 82–4, 178
source language (defined) **6**, 241
source text (defined) **6**, 241
Sperber, D. 73
spoken text, *see* oral text
ST *see* **source text**
stanza 89, 92
stereotype, stereotyping 68, 163–4, 210, 233
stock metaphor 149, 150–1, 153–4, 156, 157, 158
stock phrase 106–7; *see also* **idiom**, proverb, stock metaphor
Stoetzer, W. 89
strategic decisions (defined) **6**, 241
strategy 6, 7, 31, 84, 228, 229, 235, 241, 243
stress 86, 87, 114–16, 117, 118
style, stylistic 2, 3, 60, 100, 101, 105, 109, 111, 134, 155, 162–4, 166, 170–1, 178, 189, 190–3, 200, 209, 211–13, 217, 221, 228, 241
subordinate clause, subordinate element 74, 99, 119, 121–3, 128, 134, 138, 198, 199, 200, 220
suffix 100, 108, 189, 242
suffix repetition 100, **108**, 242
superordinate *see* **hyperonym**
syllable 90–1, 240
synonym, synonymous 21, **53**, 62, 67, 68, 100–2, 189, 240, 242
synonymy 52, **53**–4, 97, 237, 239, 242
syntax, syntactic 31, 44, **96**, 98, 166, 188, 231, 235, 237, 241, 242

target language (defined) **6**, 242
target text (defined) **6**, 242
technical text 2, 3, 81, 82, 179, 184–95, 228; *see also* empirical genres
text (defined) **6**, 241, 242
text-type *see* **genre**
textual matrices 3, **5**, 79, 229
textual restructuring (for coherence) 137–8, 236
textual variables 2, 3, 77, **78**–9, 96, 178, 180, 189, 235, 236, 238, 239, 241, 242, 243
theme 74, 114, **116**–9, 121–3, 128, 138, 242; *see also* **rheme**
TL *see* **target language**
tonal register 163, 164–5, 172, 190, 242; *see also* **register**
translation brief 2–3, 230
translation by addition 24, 243
translation by omission 23–4, 185, 243
translation loss 21–5, 29, 31, 41–4, 46, 47, 49, 54, 56, 77–9, 80, 82, 83, 86, 87, 92, 96, 97, 100, 151, 168, 172, 176, 177, 210, 221, 228, 229, 243
transliteration 32, 35–6, 235, 243
trochee, trochaic 89
TT *see* **target text**

verse, versification 77, 88–92
voice stress *see* stress

Watson, J.C.E. 59, 99, 103, 108, 116, 119, 135, 140
Wilson, D. 73
written text (vs oral text) 80, 86, 97, 115–16, 162, 177, 179–80

www.kaues.org

ARABIC

ابن خلدون 131–2, 214
ابن مالك 181
ادريس, يوسف 36, 37, 40–4, 51, 76, 85, 141, 183; *see also* الرحلة, الشيخ شيخة, شيء يجنن, لغة طبلية من السماء, مشوار, الآي أي
أكلات تونسية (recipe cards) 215
الإخوان المسلمون على مذبح المناورة (book) 141, 142; *see also* المهدوي
الأسد, ناصر الدين 112
بيرم التونسي 46
الجاحظ 30
الحريري, القاسم بن علي 139
الحكم والعسكر في البلدان العربية (book) 47, 74
الخيول (short story) 86
الرأي (newspaper) 159, 226
الربعي, احمد 182
الربيعي, محمد عبد المجيد 86
الرحلة (short story) 176; *see also* إدريس
السيد ومراته في مصر (play) 46
الشافعي, محمد بن إدريس 90, 93
الشرق الأوسط (newspaper) 50, 62, 158, 176
الشلوخ (book) 38
الشيخ شيخة (short story) 183; *see also* إدريس
الطبري, محمد بن جرير 6
العالم (magazine) 25
العربي (magazine) 75, 144, 163, 169, 193
القدس العربي (newspaper) 98
المقامة الدمشقية 139–40
المنجد في اللغة والإعلام 4
المهدوي, طارق اسماعيل 109, 141, 142; *see also* الإخوان المسلمون على مذبح المناورة
النار والماء (short story) 27, 32, 45, 122; *see also* تامر
النهار (newspaper) 75
الوطن (newspaper) 13, 182
امين, مصطفى 50, 62, 158, 176

بشارة, عيسى 24, 47, 70, 135, 161; *see also* مدينة البغي

تامر, زكريا 27, 32, 45, 122, 134; *see also* النار والماء, حقل البنفسج

حسن, يوسف فضل 38
حقل البنفسج (short story) 134; *see also* تامر
حمودة, عادل 125; *see also* روز اليوسف

روز اليوسف (magazine) 75, 108, 111, 125

سجع (writing form) 84, 139–40

شيء يجنن (short story) 141; *see also* إدريس

صالح, الطيب 44, 95, 124, 126,

www.kaues.org

156; *see also* عرس الزين,
نخلة على الجدول

ضيف, شوقي 65

طبلية من السماء (short story)
51; *see also* إدريس

عبد الرحمن, أسعد 159
عبد الناصر, جمال 129–31, 154,
170–2, 173
عرس الزين (short story) 95, 100,
124, 156; *see also* صالح

قباني, نزار 67, 72, 97
قصيدة (verse form) 78, **90**–2
قطب, سيد 64
قيس بن الملوح 32

لغة الآي أي (short story) 85; *see*
also إدريس

مدينة البغي (novel) 24, 47, 70,
82, 135, 161
مشعل, امين حامد 193
مشوار (short story) 37, 40–4; *see*
also إدريس
معالم في الطريق (book) 64
معلقة لبيد (poem) 15–16, 20
مقامة (genre) **139**–40

نحن والآخر (book) 112
نخلة على الجدول (short story)
44, 126; *see also* صالح

www.kaues.org

Thinking Arabic Translation is a comprehensive practical course in translation for advanced students of Arabic, which focuses on methods of improving translation quality whilst giving clear explanations of the theoretical issues involved.

Based on detailed analysis of translation problems, *Thinking Arabic Translation* features original material taken from a wide range of sources, including:

* Journalism and politics
* Legal and technical texts
* Literary and consumer-oriented texts

A variety of translation issues are addressed, including:

* Cultural differences
* Register and dialect
* Genre
* Metaphor
* Revision and editing

Thinking Arabic Translation has been fully and successfully piloted at the University of Durham, and provides an excellent foundation for those considering a career in translation.

Sándor Hervey was Reader in Linguistics and Ian Higgins was Senior Lecturer in French at the University of St. Andrews. James Dickins is Lecturer in Arabic at the University of Durham.

A Tutor's Handbook for this course, giving guidance on teaching methods and assessment, is also available.

Arabic/Translation Studies

Routledge
Taylor & Francis Group

Printed in Great Britain
www.routledge.com

www.kaues.org

ISBN 0-415-25065-X

9 780415 250658